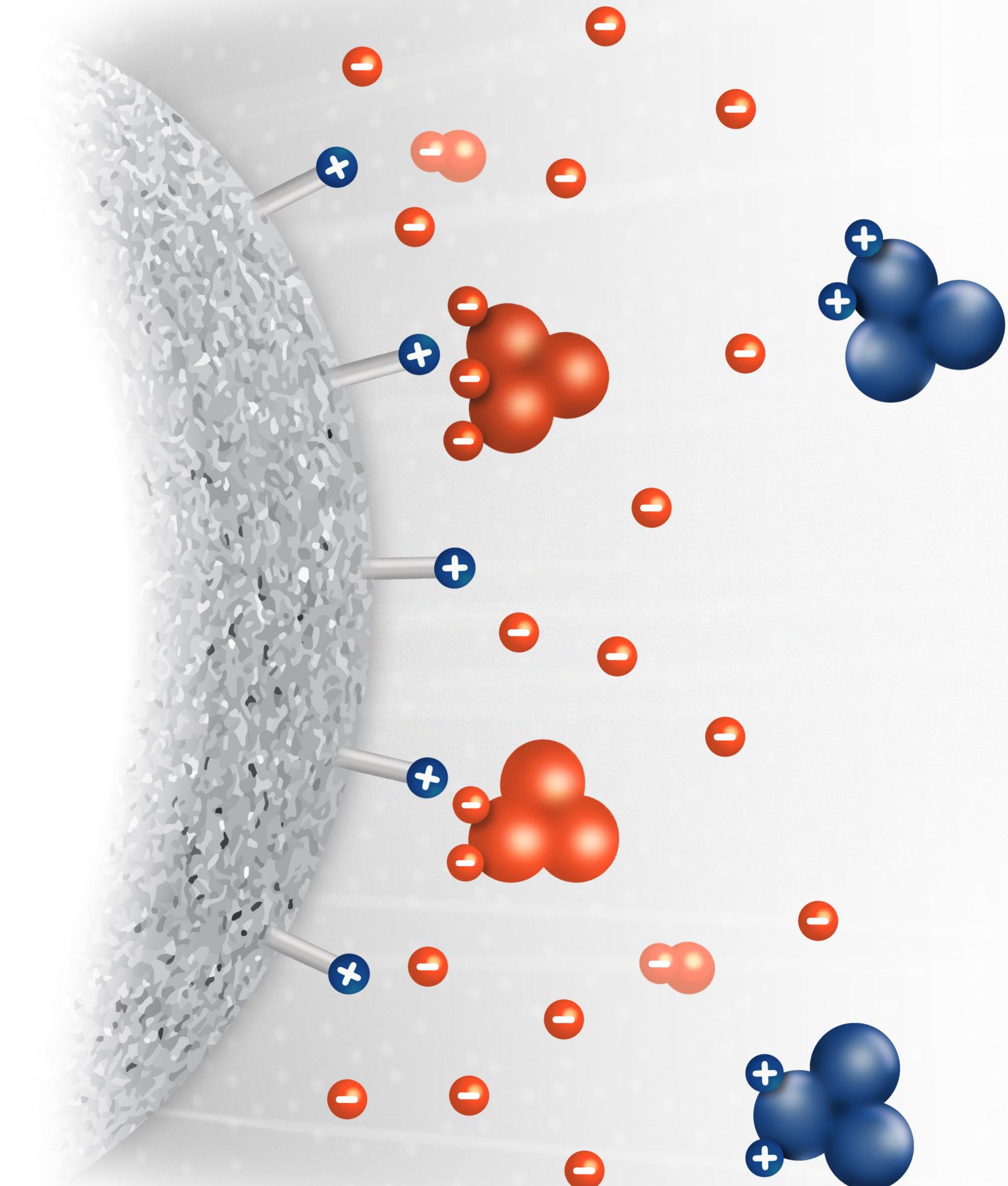


# Ion exchange chromatography



# Contents

## 01

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
Symbols	5
Common acronyms and abbreviations	5
<b>Principles of ion exchange</b>	<b>7</b>
Net surface charge and pH	8
Steps in an IEX separation	9
• Equilibration	9
• Sample application and wash	9
• Elution	9
• Regeneration	9
Resolution	11
• Efficiency	12
• Selectivity	14
Components of IEX media	16
• Matrix	16
• Functional groups	18
Binding capacity and recovery	20
Chromatofocusing	20

## 02

<b>Ion exchange in practice</b>	<b>21</b>
Introduction	22
Selecting chromatography media	22
• Capture	22
• Intermediate purification	22
• Polishing	22
• Fast IEX media selection and method development	24
Practical considerations for IEX separation	25
• Buffer pH and ionic strength	25
• Anion or cation exchanger	26
• Strong or weak ion exchangers	27
• Buffer selection and preparation	28
• Flow rates	30
• Flow control	30

## 03

Steps in an IEX separation	31	SOURCE: high-throughput, high-resolution purification, and easy scale-up	61
• Column and media preparation	31	• Media characteristics	62
• Sample preparation	32	• Purification options	62
• Sample application and wash	32	• Purification examples	64
• Sample load	33	• Performing a separation	67
• Elution of target protein	34	• Cleaning	69
• Linear gradient elution	34	• Chemical stability	69
• Step elution	36	• Storage	69
• pH elution	37	Sepharose High Performance: purification with high resolution	70
• Regeneration and re-equilibration	37	• Media characteristics	70
Detergents, denaturing agents and other additives	38	• Purification options	71
Analysis of results and further steps	40	• Purification examples	72
Scaling-up	40	• Performing a separation	74
Equipment selection	41	• Cleaning	75
Care of IEX media	41	• Chemical stability	76
Troubleshooting	42	• Storage	76
 		Sepharose Fast Flow: purification with good resolution and easy scale-up	77
<b>Ion exchange chromatography media</b>	<b>47</b>	• Media characteristics	78
Introduction	48	• Purification options	78
MiniBeads: purification or analysis of microgram to milligram quantities with high resolution	48	• Purification examples	81
• Media characteristics	48	• Performing a separation	84
• Purification options	49	• Cleaning	86
• Purification examples	50	• Chemical stability	86
• Performing a separation	51	• Storage	86
• Cleaning	52	Sepharose XL: for selected proteins that require very high binding capacity to increase productivity, easy scale-up	87
• Chemical stability	53	• Media characteristics	87
• Storage	53	• Purification options	88
MonoBeads: purification of milligram quantities with high resolution	54	• Purification examples	89
• Media characteristics	55	• Performing a separation	91
• Purification options	55	• Cleaning	93
• Purification examples	57	• Chemical stability	93
• Performing a separation	58	• Storage	93
• Cleaning	59	Sepharose Big Beads: purification from crude,	94
• Chemical stability	60		
• Storage	60		

viscous samples at large scale		131
• Media characteristics	95	
• Performing a separation	96	
• Cleaning	96	
• Chemical stability	97	
• Storage	97	
Capto: high-flow media with high resolution	98	
• Media characteristics	99	
• Purification options	99	
• Purification examples	102	
• Intermediate purification of insulin	103	
• Polishing of MAb	104	
<b>04 Ion exchange in a Purification Strategy (C<sub>IPP</sub>)</b>	<b>108</b>	
Applying C <sub>IPP</sub>	110	
Selection and combination of purification techniques	111	
Ion exchange as a capture step	114	
Capture using Sepharose Q XL	115	
Ion exchange for intermediate purification	116	
Ion exchange as a polishing step	118	
Alternative techniques for polishing	119	
<b>05 Large-scale purification</b>	<b>120</b>	
BioProcess media for IEX	121	
• Capture purification	123	
• Polishing purification	124	
Prepacked, disposable solutions speed up the downstream process	127	
Custom Designed Media	127	
<b>06 Appendix</b>	<b>128</b>	
<b>Appendix 1 Sample preparation</b>	<b>129</b>	
Sample stability	129	
Sample clarification	130	
• Centrifugation	130	
• Filtration	130	
• Desalting	131	
Specific sample preparation steps	132	
• Fractional precipitation	132	
• Ammonium sulfate precipitation	134	
• Resolubilization of protein precipitates	135	
Buffer exchange and desalting	136	
Removal of lipoproteins	137	
Removal of phenol red	138	
Removal of low molecular weight contaminants	138	
<b>Appendix 2 Nonvolatile and volatile buffer systems</b>	<b>139</b>	
Nonvolatile buffers for anion exchange chromatography	139	
Nonvolatile buffers for cation exchange chromatography	140	
Volatile buffer systems	140	
<b>Appendix 3 Column packing and preparation</b>	<b>141</b>	
Column selection	143	
Column packing and efficiency	143	
<b>Appendix 4 Selection of purification equipment</b>	<b>144</b>	
<b>Appendix 5 Converting from flow velocity to volumetric flow rates</b>	<b>146</b>	
From flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rate (mL/min)	146	
From volumetric flow rate (mL/min) to flow velocity (cm/h)	146	
From volumetric flow rate (mL/min) to using a syringe	146	
<b>Appendix 6 Conversion data: proteins, column pressures</b>	<b>147</b>	
Proteins	147	
Column pressures	147	
<b>Appendix 7 Table of amino acids</b>	<b>148</b>	
<b>Appendix 8 Analytical assays during purification</b>	<b>149</b>	
Total protein determination	149	
Purity determination	149	
Functional assays	150	
Detection and assay of tagged proteins	150	
<b>Appendix 9 Storage of biological samples</b>	<b>151</b>	
General recommendations	151	
Specific recommendations for purified proteins	151	
<b>Appendix 10 Column cleaning</b>	<b>152</b>	
Removing precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins	152	
• To remove precipitated proteins	152	
• To remove lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins	153	
Extended cleaning procedures	153	
<b>Appendix 11 Media selection</b>	<b>154</b>	
Selection of media for automated purification	154	
Selection of media for manual purification	155	
Using PD-10 columns for media selection and method development	156	
<b>Product index</b>	<b>157</b>	
<b>Related literature</b>	<b>159</b>	
<b>Ordering information</b>	<b>160</b>	
<b>Accessories and spare parts</b>	<b>162</b>	

# Introduction

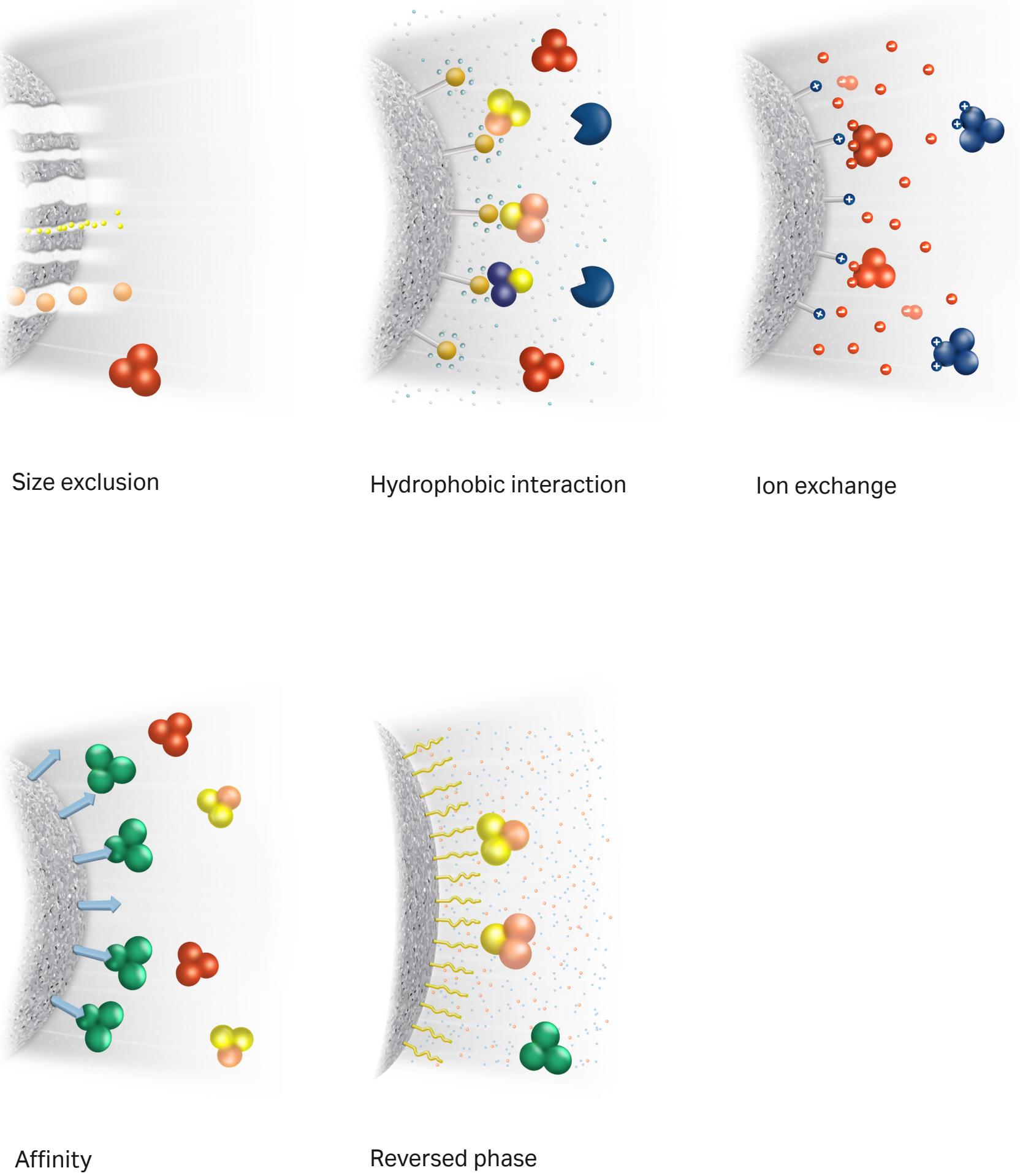
Biomolecules are purified using chromatography techniques that separate them according to differences in their specific properties, as shown in Figure I.1. Ion exchange chromatography (IEX) separates biomolecules according to differences in their net surface charge.

Property	Technique
Charge	Ion exchange chromatography (IEX)
Size	Size exclusion chromatography (SEC), also called gel filtration (GF)
Hydrophobicity	Hydrophobic interaction chromatography (HIC), Reversed phase chromatography (RPC)
Biorecognition (ligand specificity)	Affinity chromatography (AC)

IEX for the separation of biomolecules was introduced in the 1960s and continues to play a major role in the separation and purification of biomolecules. Today, IEX is one of the most frequently used techniques for purification of proteins, peptides, nucleic acids, and other charged biomolecules, offering high resolution and group separations with high loading capacity. The technique is capable of separating molecular species that have only minor differences in their charge properties, for example two proteins differing by one charged amino acid. These features make IEX well suited for capture, intermediate purification, or polishing steps in a purification protocol and the technique is used from microscale purification and analysis through to purification of kilograms of product.

This handbook describes both theoretical and practical principles of the technique, the chromatography media (resins) available and how to select them, application examples, and detailed instructions for the most commonly performed procedures. Practical information, with many tips and hints drawn from over 50 yr of experience in chromatography purification, guides beginners and experts towards obtaining optimal results from the latest chromatography media.

Cytiva's business offers a wide variety of prepacked columns and ready-to-use chromatography media. A range of handbooks ensure that purification with any chromatographic technique becomes a simple and efficient procedure at most scales and in most laboratories.



**Fig I.1.** Separation principles in chromatographic purification.

## Symbols

-  This symbol indicates general advice on how to improve procedures or recommends measures to take in specific situations
-  This symbol indicates where special care should be taken
-  Highlights chemicals, buffers, and equipment
-  Outline of experimental protocol

## Common acronyms and abbreviations

A <sub>280</sub>	UV absorbance at specified wavelength (in this example, 280 nm)	EGTA	ethylene glycol-O, O'-bis-[2-amino-ethyl]-N,N,N',N'-tetraacetic acid
AC	affinity chromatography	ELISA	enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
AIEX	anion exchange chromatography	F(ab') <sub>2</sub> fragment	fragment with two antigen binding sites, obtained by pepsin digestion
APMSF	4-aminophenyl-methylsulfonyl fluoride	Fab	fragment antigen binding fragment obtained by papain digestion
AU	absorbance units	Fc	fragment crystallizable fragment obtained by papain digestion
BSA	bovine serum albumin	Fv	fragment unstable fragment containing the antigen binding domain
cGMP	current good manufacturing practice	GF	gel filtration; also called size exclusion chromatography
CF	chromatofocusing	GST	glutathione S-transferase
CHO	Chinese hamster ovary	HCP	host cell protein
CIEX	cation exchange chromatography	HIC	hydrophobic interaction chromatography
CIP	cleaning-in-place	HMW	high molecular weight
CIPP	capture, intermediate purification, polishing	HSA	human serum albumin
CV	column volume	IEX	ion exchange chromatography
Dab	domain antibody, the smallest functional entity of an antibody	IgA, IgG etc.	different classes of immunoglobulin
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid	IMAC	Immobilized metal ion affinity chromatography
DNase	deoxyribonuclease	LC-MS	liquid chromatography–mass spectrometry
DOC	deoxycholate	LMW	low molecular weight
DoE	design of experiments	MAb	monoclonal antibody
DS	desalting (group separation by size exclusion chromatography; buffer exchange)		
EDTA	ethylene diaminetetraacetic acid		

MPa	megaPascal	TCEP	tris(2-carboxyethyl) phosphine hydrochloride
M <sub>r</sub>	relative molecular weight	TFA	Trifluoroacetic acid
MS	mass spectrometry	Tris	tris-(hydroxymethyl)-aminomethane
n	native, as in nProtein A	UV	ultraviolet
NC	nitrocellulose	v/v	volume to volume
NHS	N-hydroxysuccinimide	w/v	weight to volume
PAGE	polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis		
PBS	phosphate buffered saline		
PEG	polyethylene glycol		
pl	isoelectric point, the pH at which a protein has zero net surface charge		
PMSF	phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride		
psi	pounds per square inch		
PVDF	polyvinylidene fluoride		
PVP	polyvinylpyrrolidine		
r	recombinant, as in rProtein A		
RNA	ribonucleic acid		
RNase	ribonuclease		
RPC	reversed phase chromatography		
scFv	single chain Fv fragment		
SDS	sodium dodecyl sulfate		
SDS-PAGE	sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis		
SEC	size exclusion chromatography		

## Principles and methodology handbooks from Cytiva

Cytiva offers a wide range of handbooks that provides practical tips and in-depth information about common methodologies used in the lab. Visit [cytiva.com/handbooks](https://cytiva.com/handbooks) to view the complete list and download your copies today.

01

# Principles of ion exchange

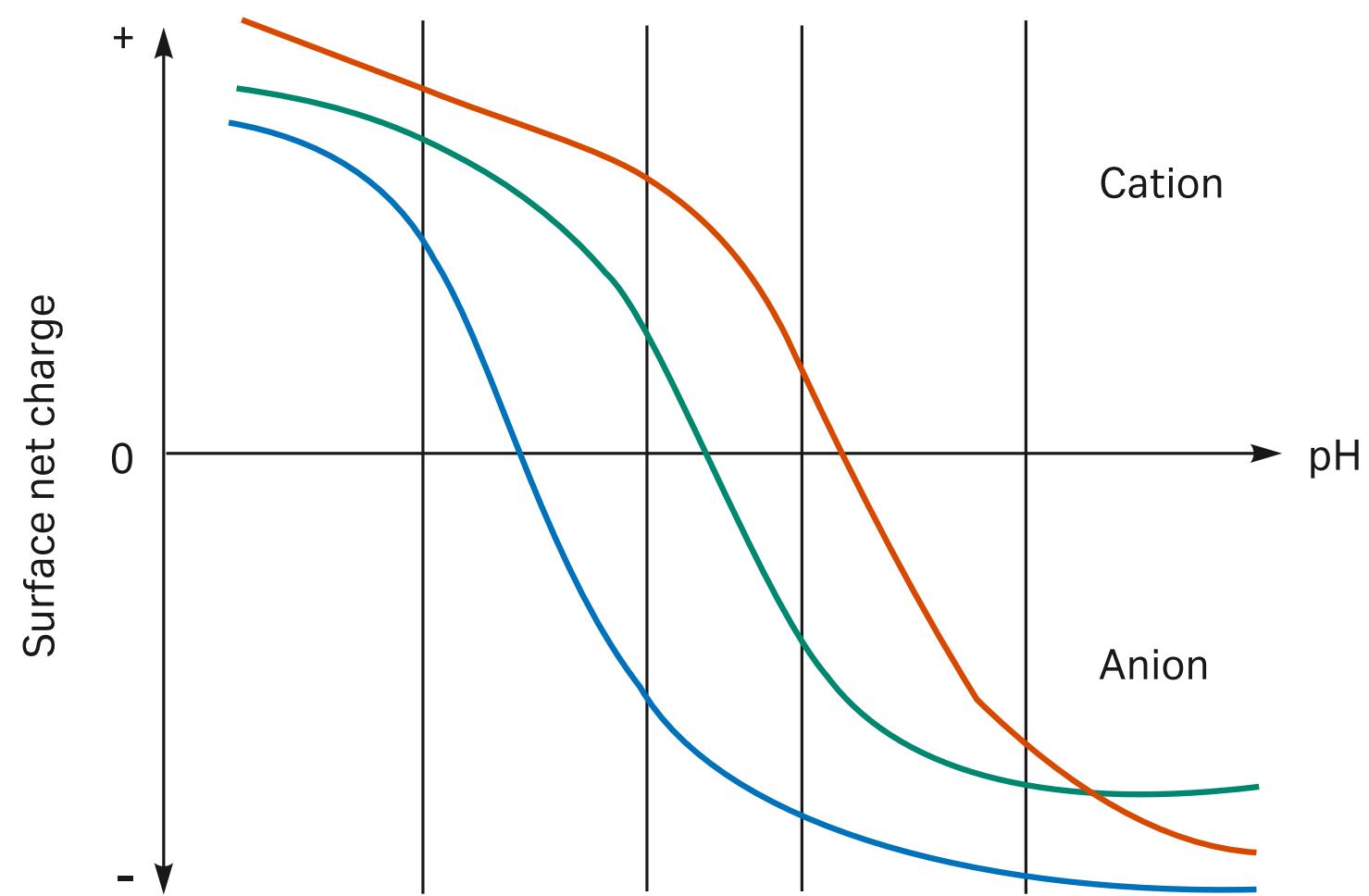
This chapter provides a general introduction to the theoretical principles that underlie every ion exchange separation. An understanding of these principles will enable the separation power of ion exchange chromatography (IEX) to be fully appreciated. Practical aspects of performing a separation are covered in Chapter 2.

## Net surface charge and pH

IEX separates molecules on the basis of differences in their *net surface charge*. Molecules vary considerably in their charge properties and will exhibit different degrees of interaction with charged chromatography media according to differences in their overall charge, charge density, and surface charge distribution. The charged groups within a molecule that contribute to the net surface charge possess different  $pK_a$  values (acid ionization constant) depending on their structure and chemical microenvironment.

Since all molecules with ionizable groups can be titrated, their net surface charge is highly pH dependent. In the case of proteins, which are built up of many different amino acids containing weak acidic and basic groups, net surface charge will change gradually as the pH of the environment changes, that is, proteins are *amphoteric*. Each protein has its own unique *net charge versus pH relationship* which can be visualized as a *titration curve*. This curve reflects how the overall net charge of the protein changes according to the pH of the surroundings. Figure 1.1 illustrates several theoretical protein titration curves (these curves can be generated using a combination of isoelectric focusing and electrophoresis, but with modern solutions for rapid method development, actual titration curves are rarely used).

IEX takes advantage of the fact that the relationship between net surface charge and pH is unique for a specific protein. In an IEX separation, *reversible interactions* between *charged molecules* and *oppositely charged* IEX media are controlled in order to favor binding or elution of specific molecules and achieve separation. A protein that has no net charge at a pH equivalent to its *isoelectric point (pl)* will not interact with a charged medium. However, at a pH above its pl, a protein will bind to a positively charged medium or *anion exchanger* and, at a pH below its pl, a protein will bind to a negatively charged medium or *cation exchanger*. In addition to the ion-exchange interaction, other types of binding can occur, but these effects are very small and mainly due to van der Waals forces and nonpolar interactions.



**Fig 1.1.** Theoretical protein titration curves, showing how net surface charge varies with pH.

## Steps in an IEX separation

An IEX medium comprises a matrix of spherical particles substituted with ionic groups that are negatively or positively charged. The matrix is usually porous to give a high internal surface area. The medium is packed into a column to form a packed bed. The bed is then equilibrated with buffer which fills the pores of the matrix and the space in between the particles.

### Equilibration

The first step is the equilibration of the stationary phase to the desired start conditions. When equilibrium is reached, all stationary phase charged groups are bound with exchangeable counterions, such as chloride or sodium. The pH and ionic strength of the start buffer are selected to ensure that, when sample is loaded, proteins of interest bind to the medium and as many impurities as possible do not bind.

### Sample application and wash

The second step is sample application and wash. The goal in this step is to bind the target molecule(s) and wash out all unbound material. The sample buffer should have the same pH and ionic strength as the start buffer in order to bind all charged target proteins. Oppositely charged proteins bind to ionic groups of the IEX medium, becoming concentrated on the column. Uncharged proteins, or those with the same charge as the ionic group, pass through the column at the same speed as the flow of buffer, eluting during or just after sample application, depending on the total volume of sample loaded.

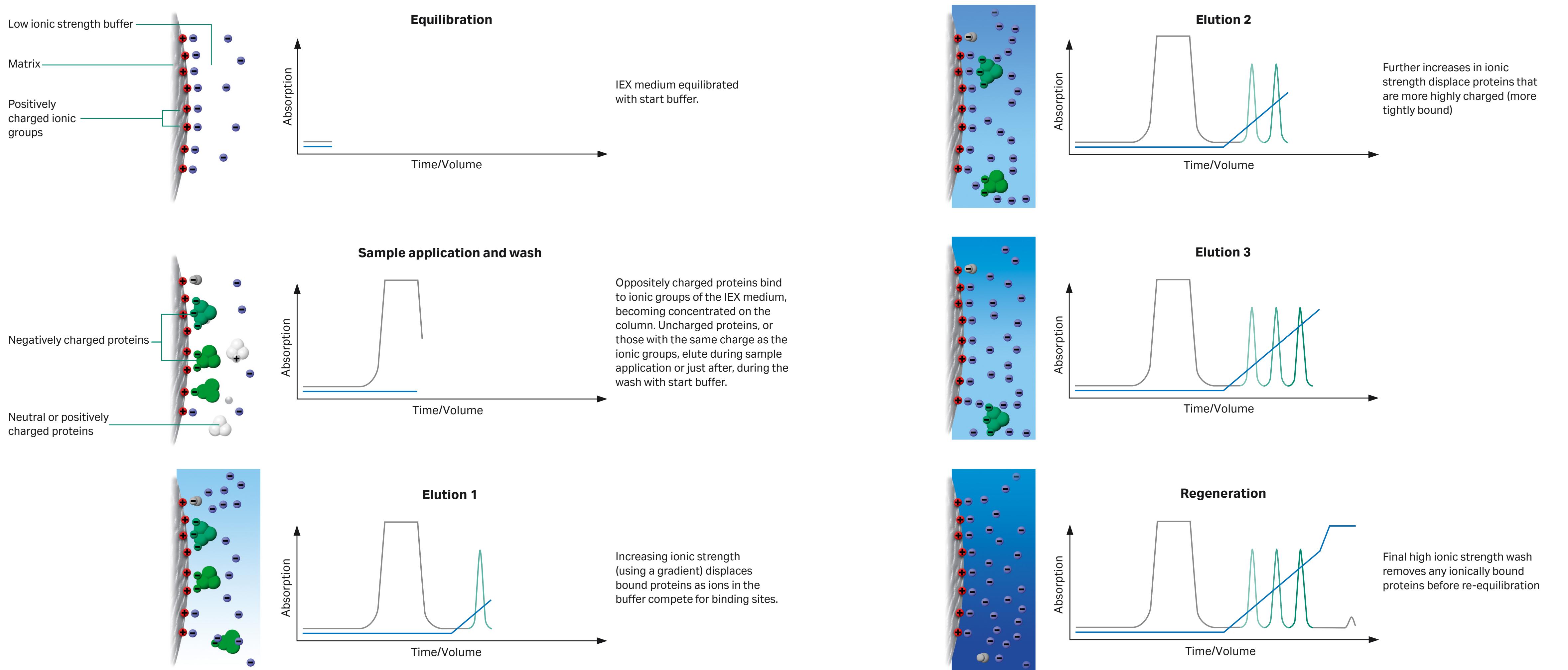
### Elution

When all the sample has been loaded and the column washed with start buffer so that all nonbinding proteins have passed through the column, conditions are altered in order to elute the bound proteins. Most frequently, proteins are eluted by increasing the ionic strength (salt concentration) of the buffer or, occasionally, by changing the pH. As ionic strength increases the salt ions (typically  $\text{Na}^+$  or  $\text{Cl}^-$ ) compete with the bound components for charges on the surface of the medium and one or more of the bound species begin to elute and move down the column. The proteins with the lowest net charge at the selected pH will be the first ones eluted from the column as ionic strength increases. Similarly, the proteins with the highest charge at a certain pH will be most strongly retained and will be eluted last. The higher the net charge of the protein, the higher the ionic strength that is needed for elution. By controlling changes in ionic strength using different forms of gradient, proteins are eluted differently in a purified, concentrated form.

### Regeneration

A final wash with high ionic strength buffer regenerates the column and removes any molecules still bound. This ensures that the full capacity of the stationary phase is available for the next run. The column is then re-equilibrated in start buffer before starting the next run.

The above describes a typical IEX separation. Alternatively, conditions can be chosen to maximize the binding of contaminants to allow the target protein(s) to first pass through the column to be collected.



**Fig 1.2.** Principles of an anion exchange separation.

## Resolution

The resolution of an IEX separation is a combination of the degree of separation between the peaks eluted from the column (the selectivity of the medium), the ability of the column to produce narrow, symmetrical peaks (efficiency) and, of course, the amount (mass) of sample applied. These factors are influenced by practical issues such as matrix properties, binding and elution conditions, column packing, and flow rates which are covered in detail in Chapter 2, *Ion exchange in practice*.

Resolution ( $R_s$ ) is defined as the distance between peak maxima compared with the average base width of the two peaks.  $R_s$  can be determined from a chromatogram, as shown in Figure 1.3.

Elution volumes and peak widths are measured with the same units to give a dimensionless resolution value.  $R_s$  gives a measure of the relative separation between two peaks and can be used to determine if further optimization of the chromatographic procedure is necessary. If  $R_s = 1.0$  (Fig 1.4) then 98% purity has been achieved at 98% of peak recovery, provided the peaks are symmetrical and approximately equal in size. Baseline resolution requires that  $R_s \geq 1.5$ . At this value, peak purity is 100%.

 A single, well-resolved peak is not necessarily a pure substance, but might represent a series of components that could not be separated under the chosen elution conditions.

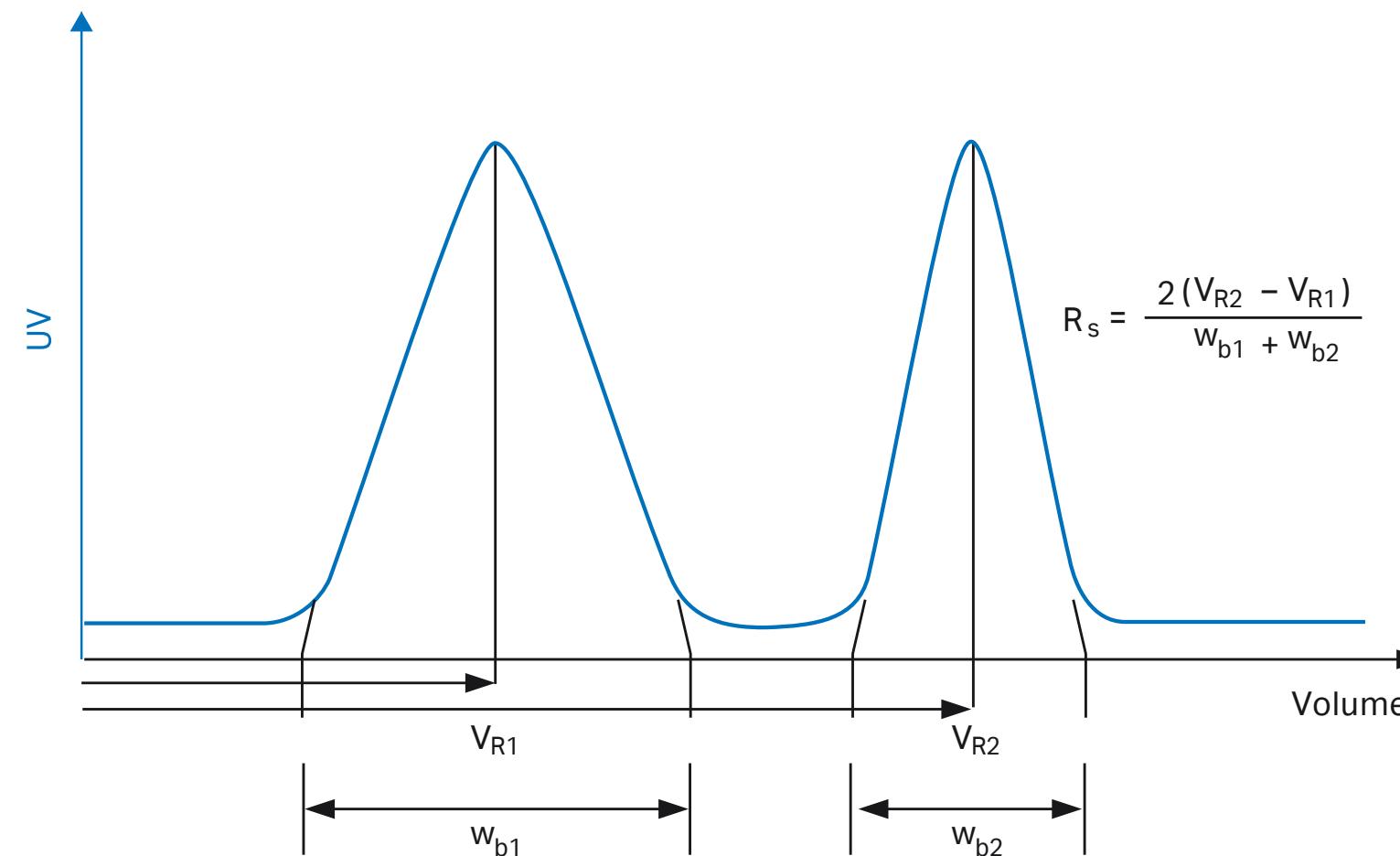


Fig 1.3. Determination of the resolution ( $R_s$ ) between two peaks.

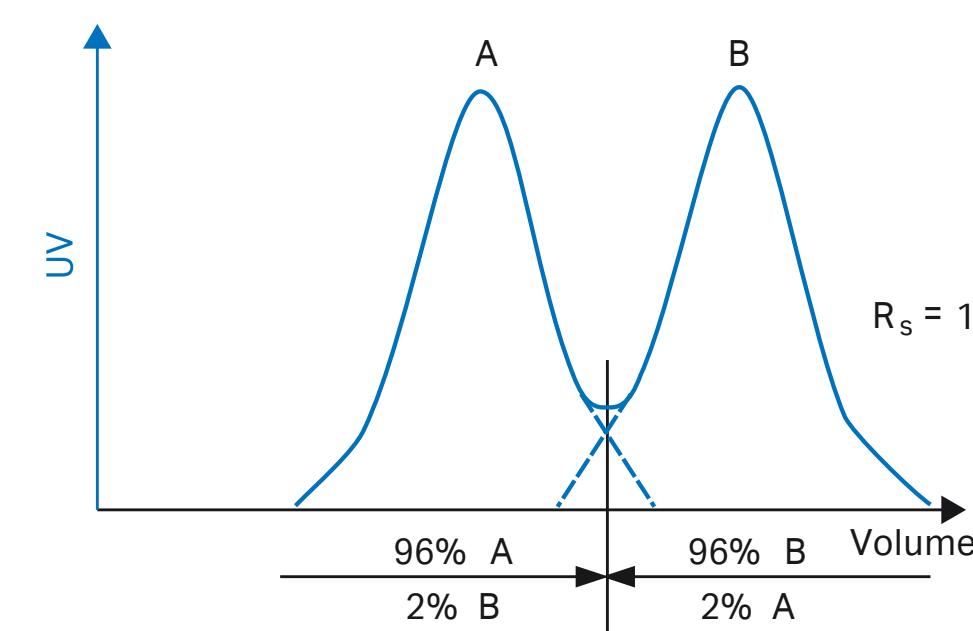
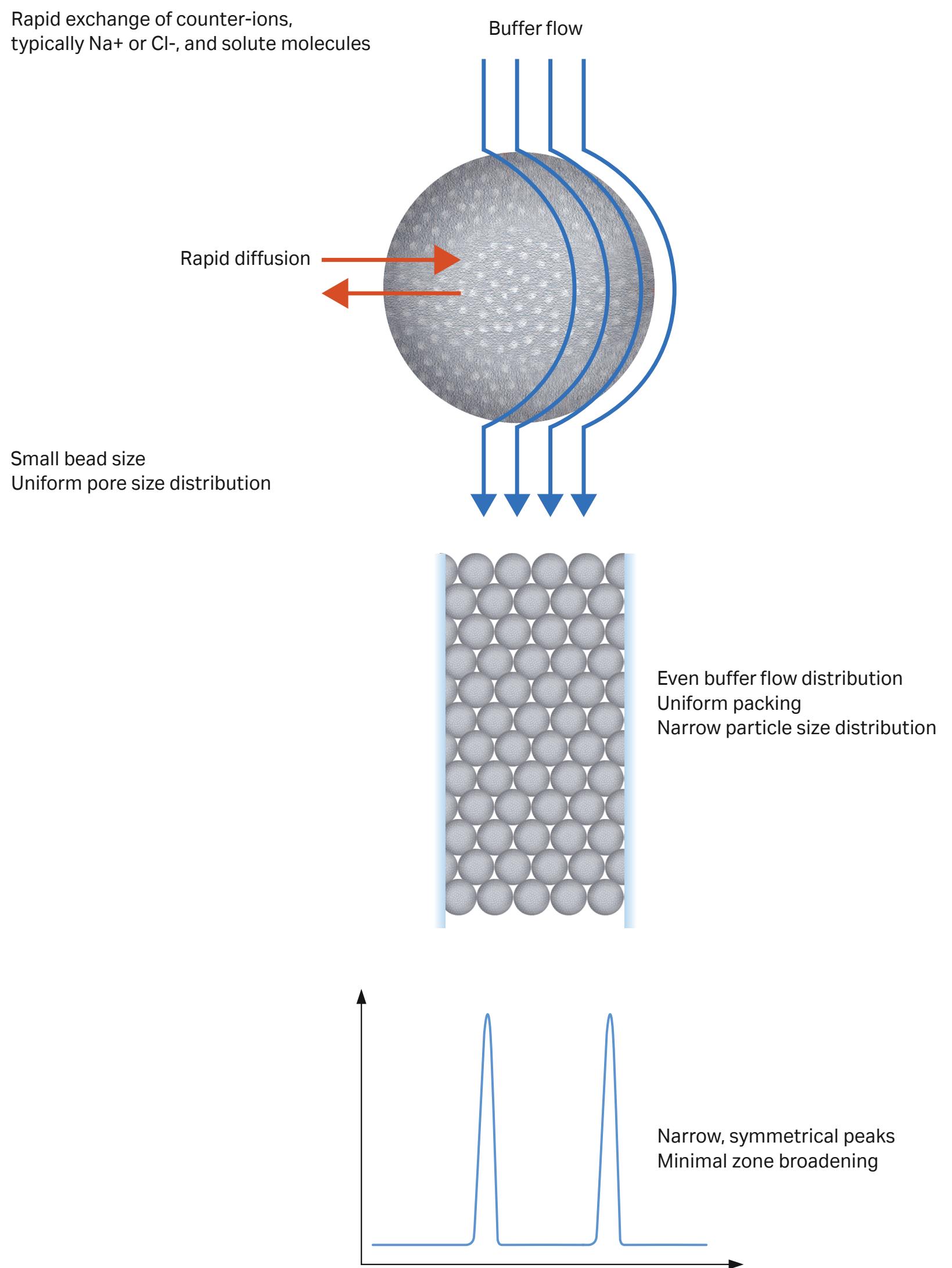


Fig 1.4. Separation results with different resolutions.

## Efficiency

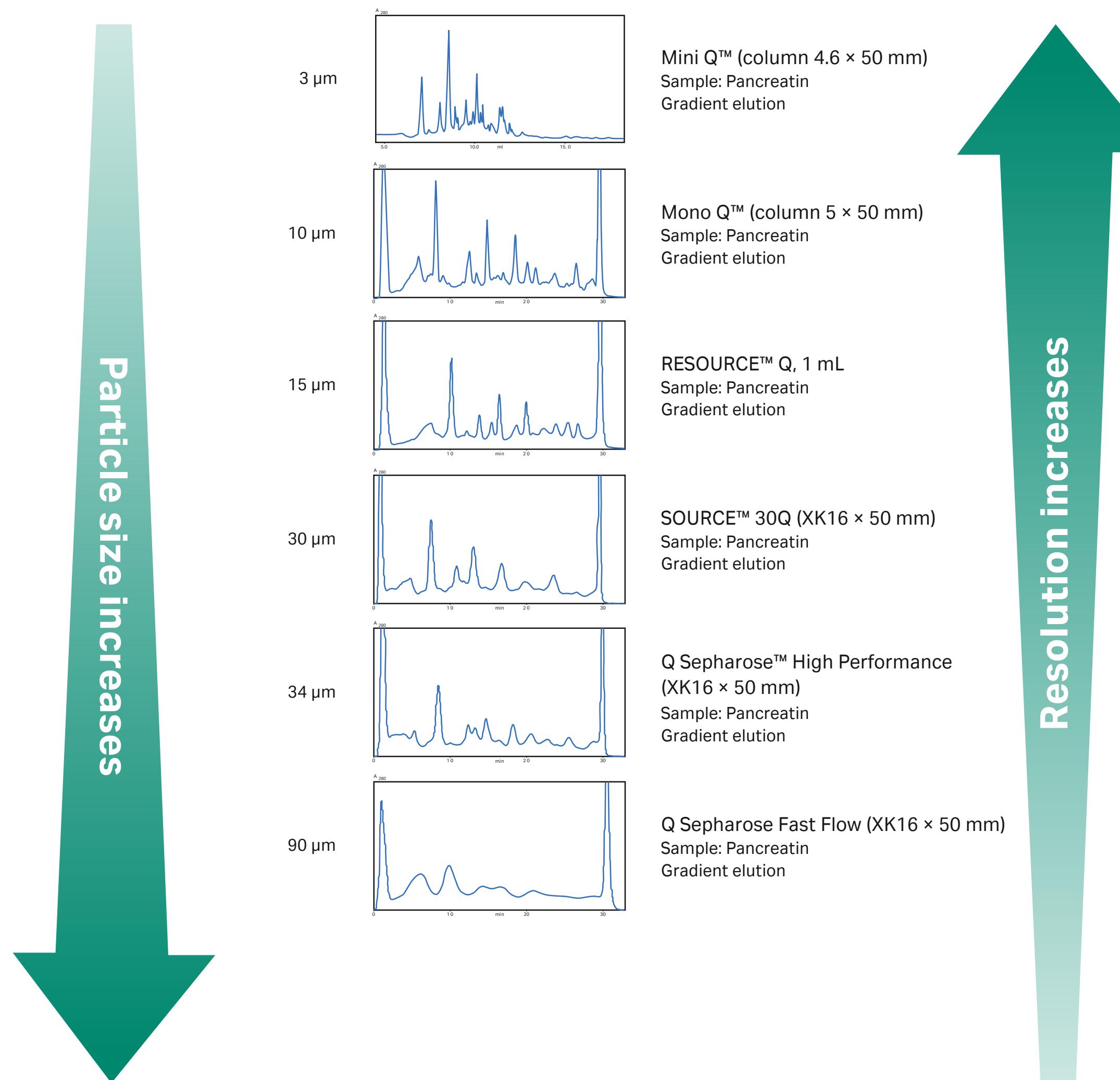
Column efficiency (the ability to elute narrow, symmetrical peaks from a packed bed) relates to the *zone broadening* which occurs on the column and is frequently stated in terms of the number of theoretical plates (see Appendix 3 for determination of column efficiency). One of the main causes of zone broadening is longitudinal diffusion of the solute molecules, that is, proteins, peptides, or oligonucleotides. Zone broadening can be minimized if the distances available for diffusion are minimized. In all situations, a well-packed column will contribute significantly to resolution. Columns that are packed unevenly, too tightly, too loosely, or that contain air bubbles will lead to channeling (uneven passage of buffer through the column), zone broadening and hence loss of resolution. Figure 1.5 illustrates the parameters that contribute to good column efficiency. Obviously particle size is a significant factor in resolution and, in general, the smallest particles will produce the narrowest peaks under the correct elution conditions and in a well-packed column.



**Fig 1.5.** Factors that affect column efficiency.

Figure 1.6 demonstrates the influence of particle size on efficiency by comparing several different IEX media under exactly the same running conditions. Note that different media selectivities also influence the final resolution.

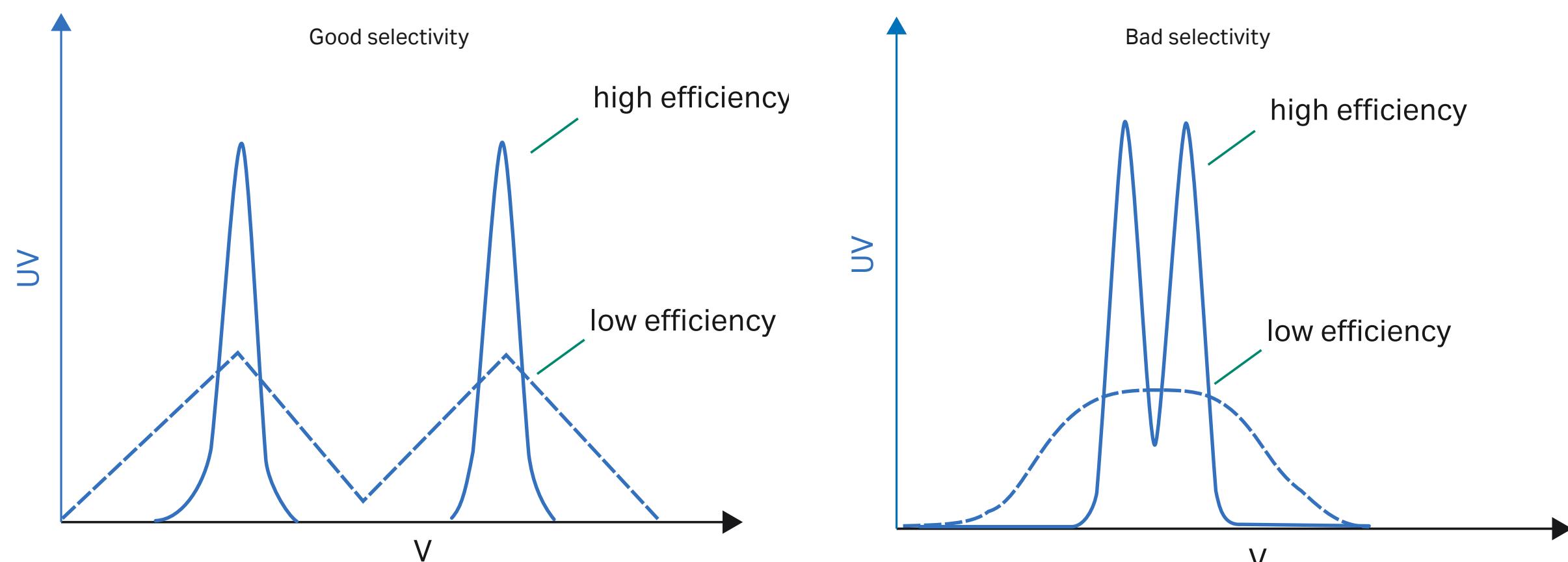
- Although resolution in terms of efficiency can be improved by decreasing the particle size of the matrix, using a smaller particle size often creates an increase in back pressure so that flow rates need to be decreased, lengthening the run time. Hence the need to match the medium with the requirements for the purification (speed, resolution, recovery, and capacity).
- The viscosity of highly concentrated samples might reduce resolution if large sample volumes are loaded onto columns packed with small particles. Samples may be diluted or, alternatively, a larger particle size should be used.



**Fig 1.6.** Examples of the influence of particle size and selectivity on final resolution.

## Selectivity

Good selectivity (the degree of separation between peaks) is a more important factor than high efficiency in determining resolution (Fig 1.7) and depends not only on the nature and number of the functional groups on the matrix, but also on the experimental conditions, such as pH (influencing the protein charge), ionic strength, and elution conditions. It is the ease and predictability with which these experimental conditions can be manipulated, when using a suitably designed chromatography medium, that gives IEX the potential of extremely high resolution.



**Fig 1.7.** Effect of selectivity and efficiency on resolution.

## Selectivity and pH

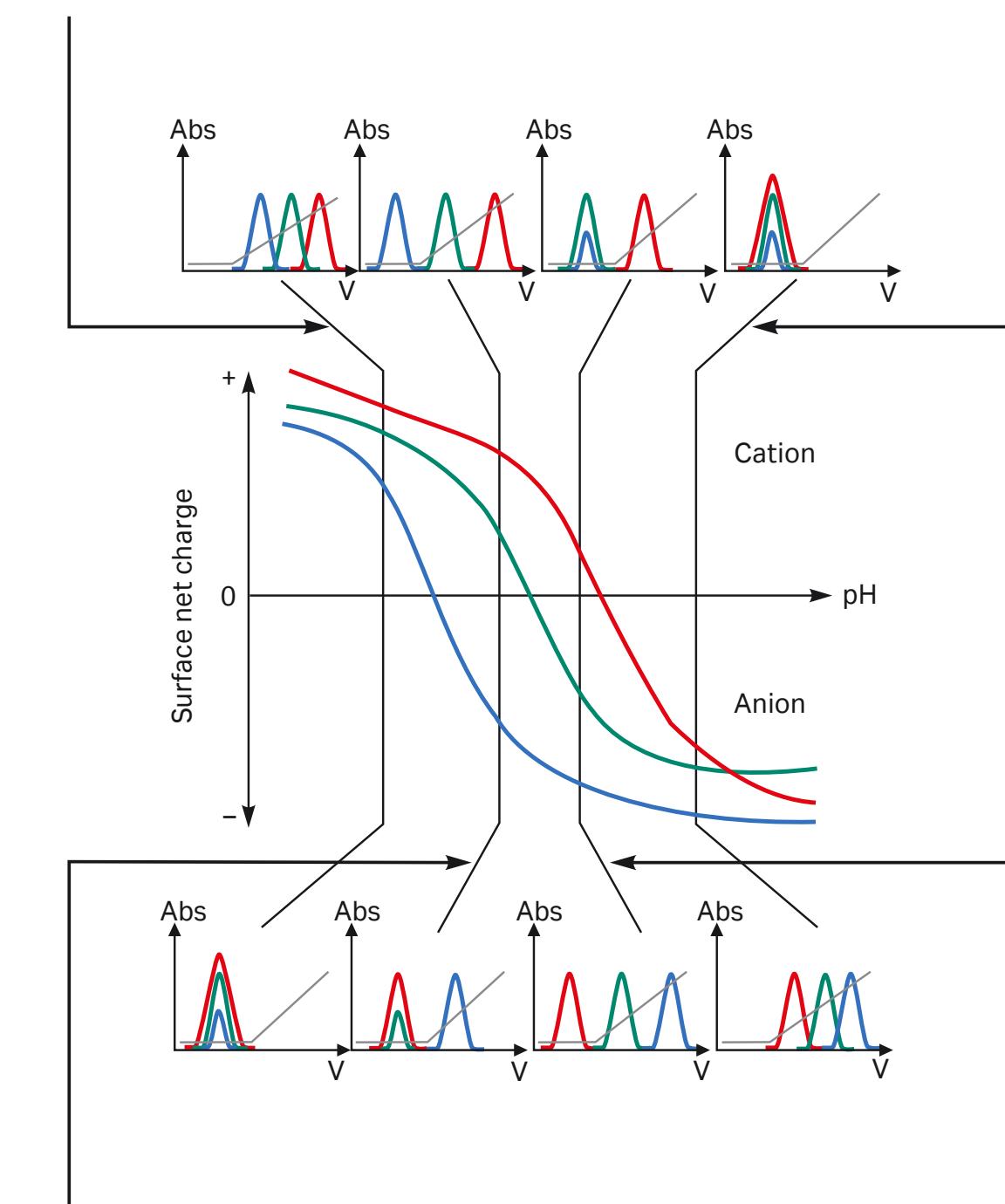
Good selectivity is achieved by performing IEX separations at pH values carefully selected to maximize the differences in net charge of the components of interest. Figure 1.8 emphasizes the significance of pH.

Optimum selectivity can be expected at a pH where there is maximum separation between the titration curves for the individual proteins (i.e., the difference in net charges between the species is greatest) and when using an ion exchanger with a charge opposite to the charge of the proteins at the particular pH.

The order in which proteins are eluted cannot always be predicted with absolute certainty since a titration curve (produced in practice by measuring electrophoretic mobility in a gel) reflects the total net charge on a protein and IEX depends on the net charge on the surface of the protein.

Most acidic pH: all three proteins are below their  $pI$ , positively charged, and bind only to a cation exchanger. Proteins are eluted in the order of their net charge.

Most alkaline pH: all three proteins are above their  $pI$ , negatively charged, and bind only to the anion exchanger. Proteins are eluted in the order of their net charge.



Less acidic pH: blue protein is above its  $pI$ , negatively charged, other proteins are still positively charged. Blue protein binds to an anion exchanger and can be separated from the other proteins which wash through. Alternatively, red and green proteins can be separated on a cation exchanger and the blue protein washes through.

Less alkali pH: red protein below its  $pI$ , positively charged. Red protein binds to a cation exchanger and can be separated from the other proteins which wash through. Alternatively, blue and green proteins can be separated on an anion exchanger and the red protein washes through.

**Fig 1.8.** Effect of pH on protein binding and elution patterns.

## Selectivity and elution

The figures to the right illustrate the most common forms of IEX separation in which proteins are eluted by increasing the ionic strength of a buffer (typically with NaCl) using *linear gradient* or *step elution*. The UV absorbance and conductivity traces show the elution of protein peaks and the changes in salt concentration, respectively, during elution.

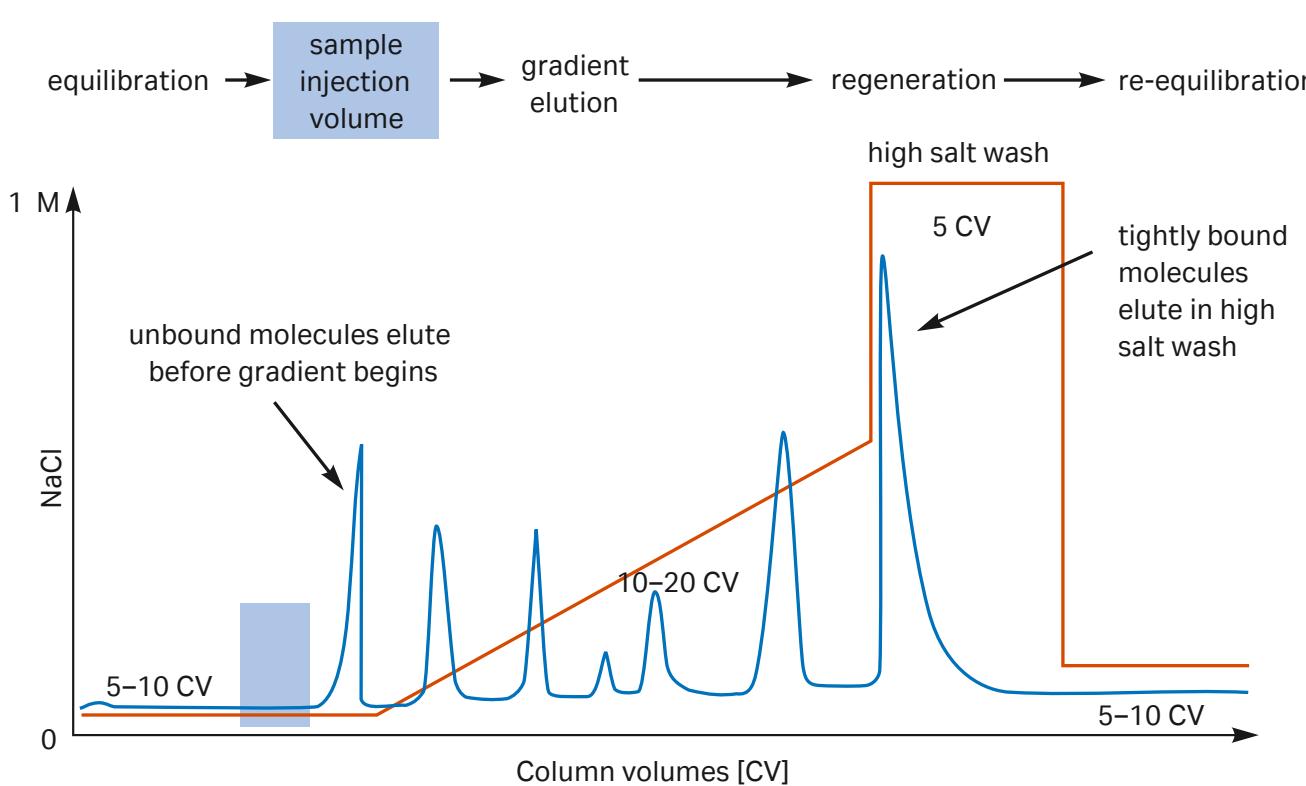
 Buffer volumes used during sample application, elution, washing and re-equilibration are expressed in *column volumes* (CV), for example 5 CV = 5 mL for a column with a 1 mL bed volume. Using CV to describe a separation profile facilitates method development and transfer of methods to columns of different dimensions when scaling-up.

*Gradient elution* (Fig 1.9) is often used when starting with an unknown sample (as many components as possible are bound to the column and eluted differentially to see a total protein profile) and for high-resolution separation or analysis.

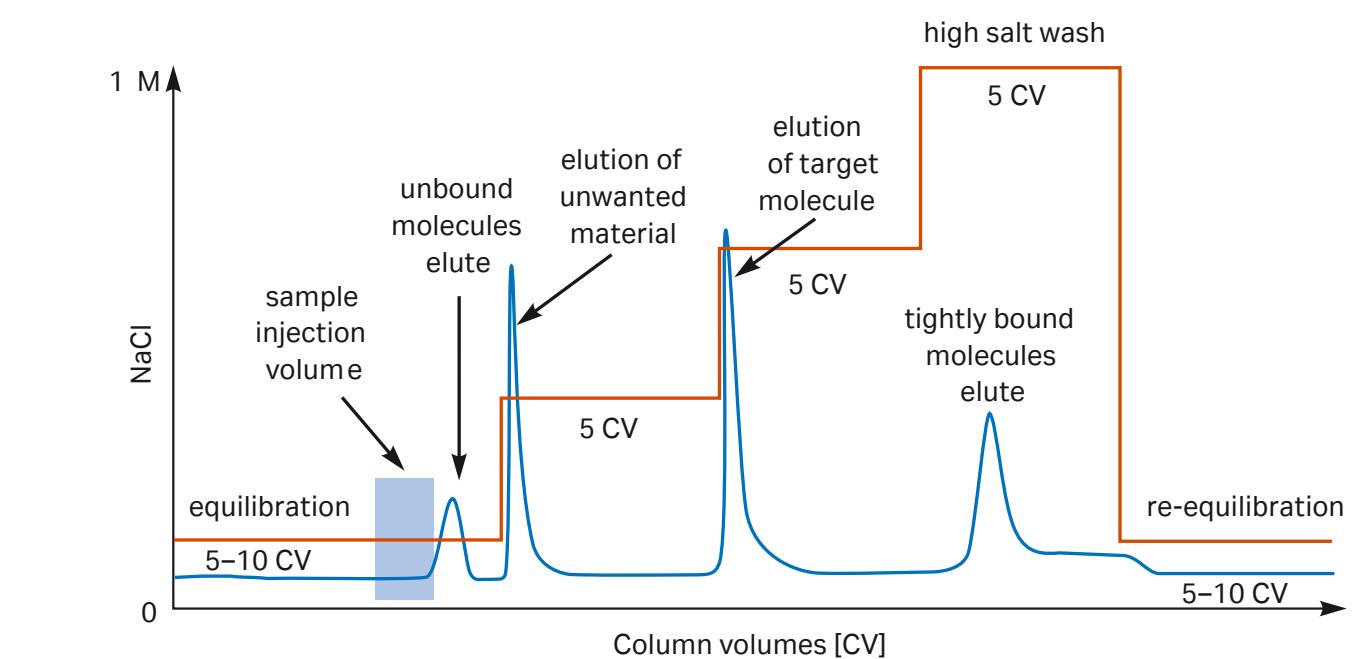
*Step elution* is used in several ways. When an IEX separation has been optimized using gradient elution, changing to a step elution *speeds up separation times and reduces buffer consumption* while retaining the required purity level (Fig 1.10).

Step elution can also be used for *group separation* in order to concentrate the proteins of interest and rapidly remove them from unwanted substances (Fig 1.11). The target protein(s) is eluted in an enriched, concentrated form.

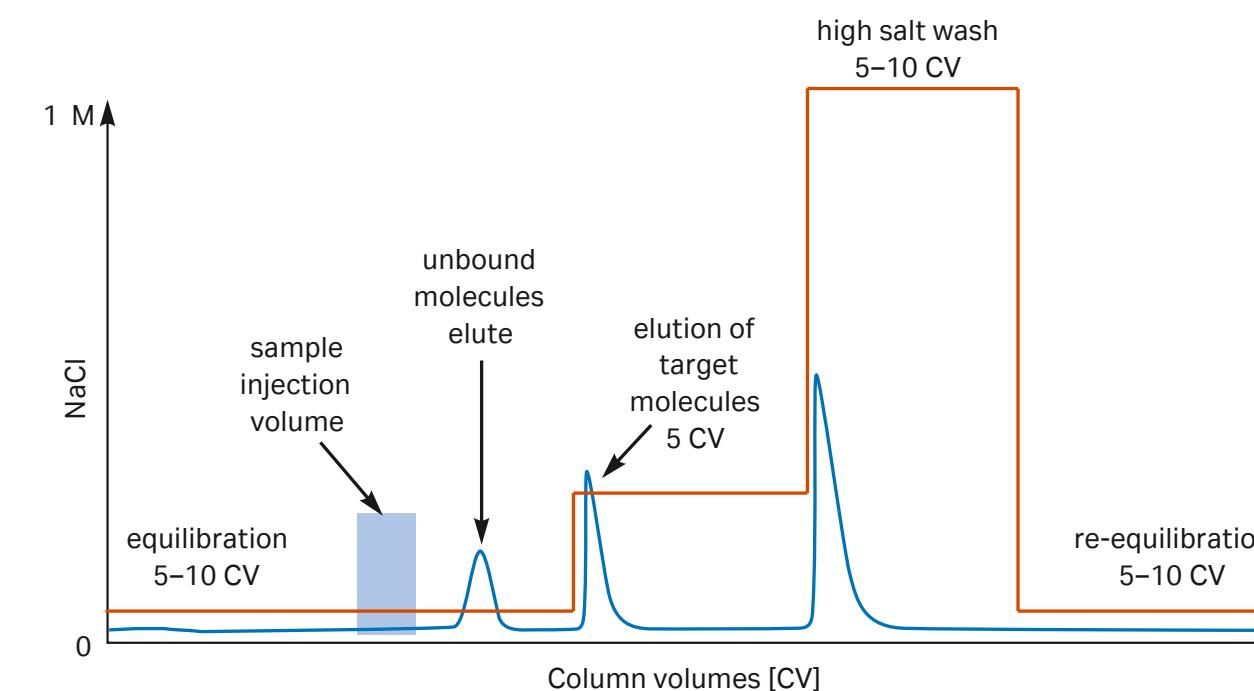
Occasionally, step elution is used to *remove contaminants* by choosing conditions that maximize binding of the contaminants and allow the target protein(s) to pass through the column (Fig 1.12). Care must be taken to ensure that the binding capacity of the column is sufficient to bind all contaminants.



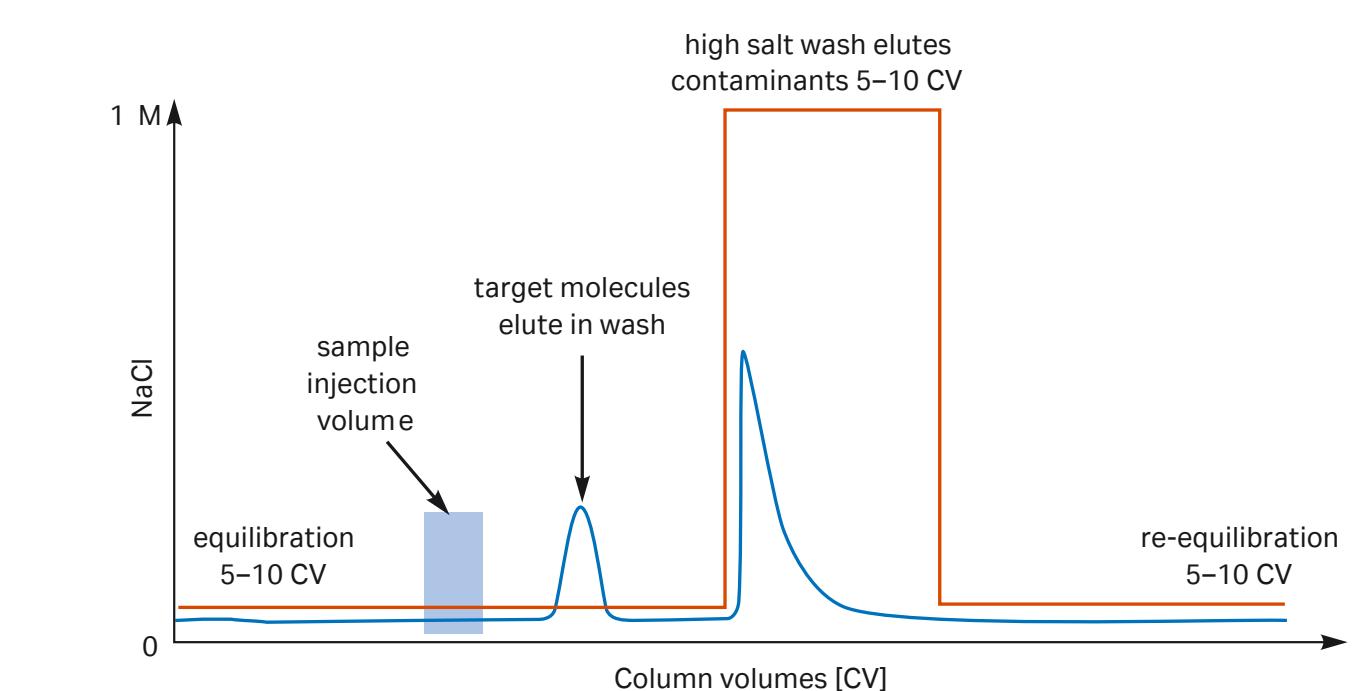
**Fig 1.9.** Typical high-resolution IEX separation using linear gradient elution.



**Fig 1.10.** Typical IEX separation using step elution.



**Fig 1.11.** Typical IEX separation using a step elution to separate groups of proteins with very different charge properties.



**Fig 1.12.** Contaminant removal: target protein(s) elute in the wash, contaminants bind to the column.

## Components of IEX media

Chromatography media for ion exchange are made from porous or nonporous matrices, chosen for their physical stability, their chemical resistance to stringent cleaning conditions, and their low level of nonspecific interaction. The matrices are substituted with functional groups that determine the charge of the medium.

### Matrix

- High porosity offers a large surface area covered by charged groups and so ensures a high binding capacity. High porosity is also an advantage when separating large biomolecules. Nonporous matrices are preferable for extremely high-resolution separations when diffusion effects must be avoided
- An inert matrix minimizes nonspecific interactions with sample components
- High physical stability ensures that the volume of the packed medium remains constant despite extreme changes in salt concentration or pH thus improving reproducibility and avoiding the need to repack columns
- High physical stability and uniformity of particle size facilitate high flow rates, particularly during cleaning or re-equilibration steps, to improve throughput and productivity
- High chemical stability ensures that the matrix can be cleaned using stringent cleaning solutions if required
- Modern IEX media use either polymer or agarose-based matrices to fulfill not only the requirements for high binding capacity, chemical and physical stability, but to generate media with suitable particle sizes for a range of applications (Table 1.1)

MiniBeads is a matrix made from polystyrene, with divinyl benzene as cross-linker, to produce highly spherical (monodispersed), very small ( $3\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ ), nonporous particles that facilitate micropreparative or analytical separations when *extremely high resolution* is more important than high binding capacity or high flow rates.

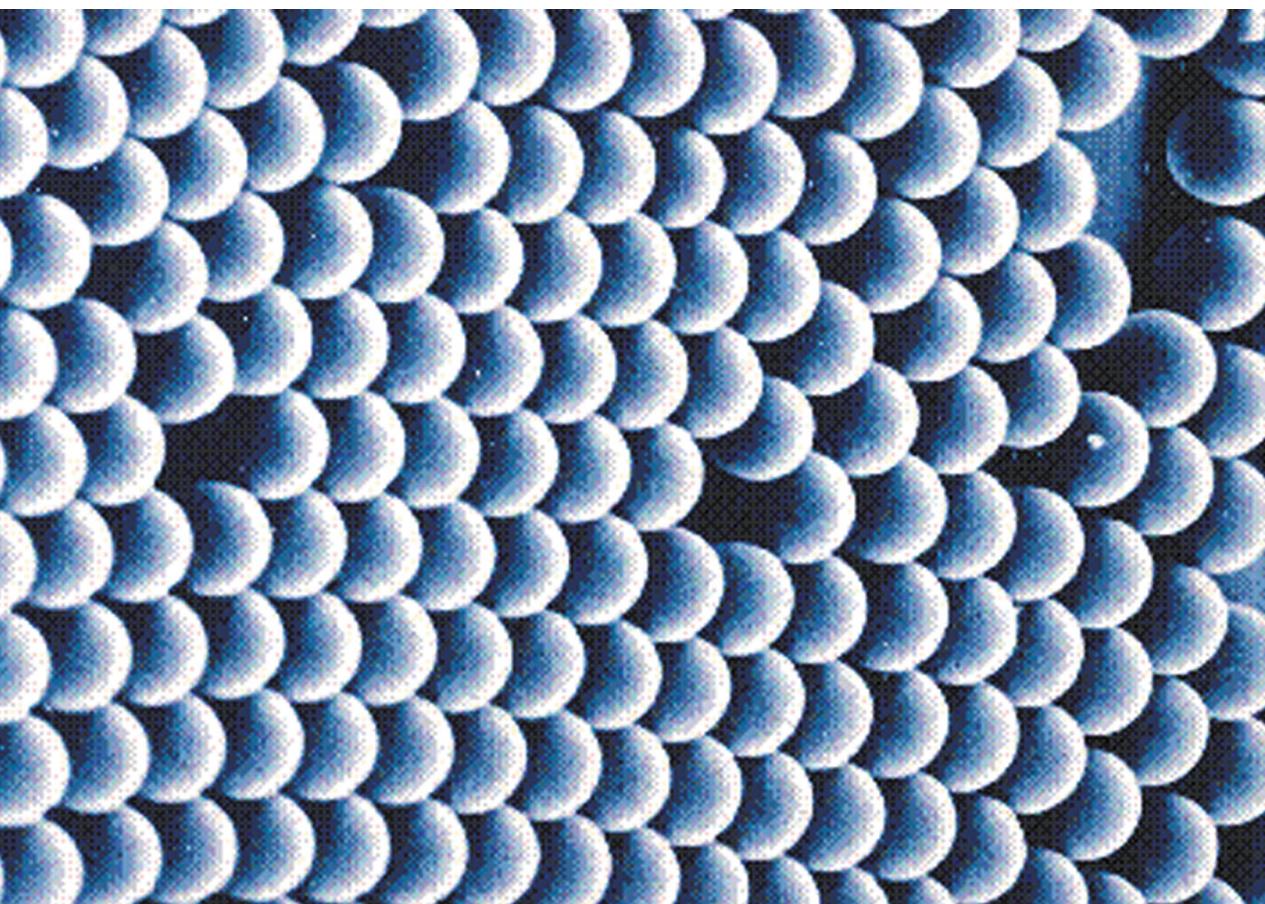
MonoBeads and SOURCE are matrices made from polystyrene with divinyl benzene to produce highly spherical (monodispersed), small (10, 15, or  $30\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ ), porous particles (Fig 1.13) that facilitate *high resolution separations at high flow rates*.

**Table 1.1** Ion exchange matrices

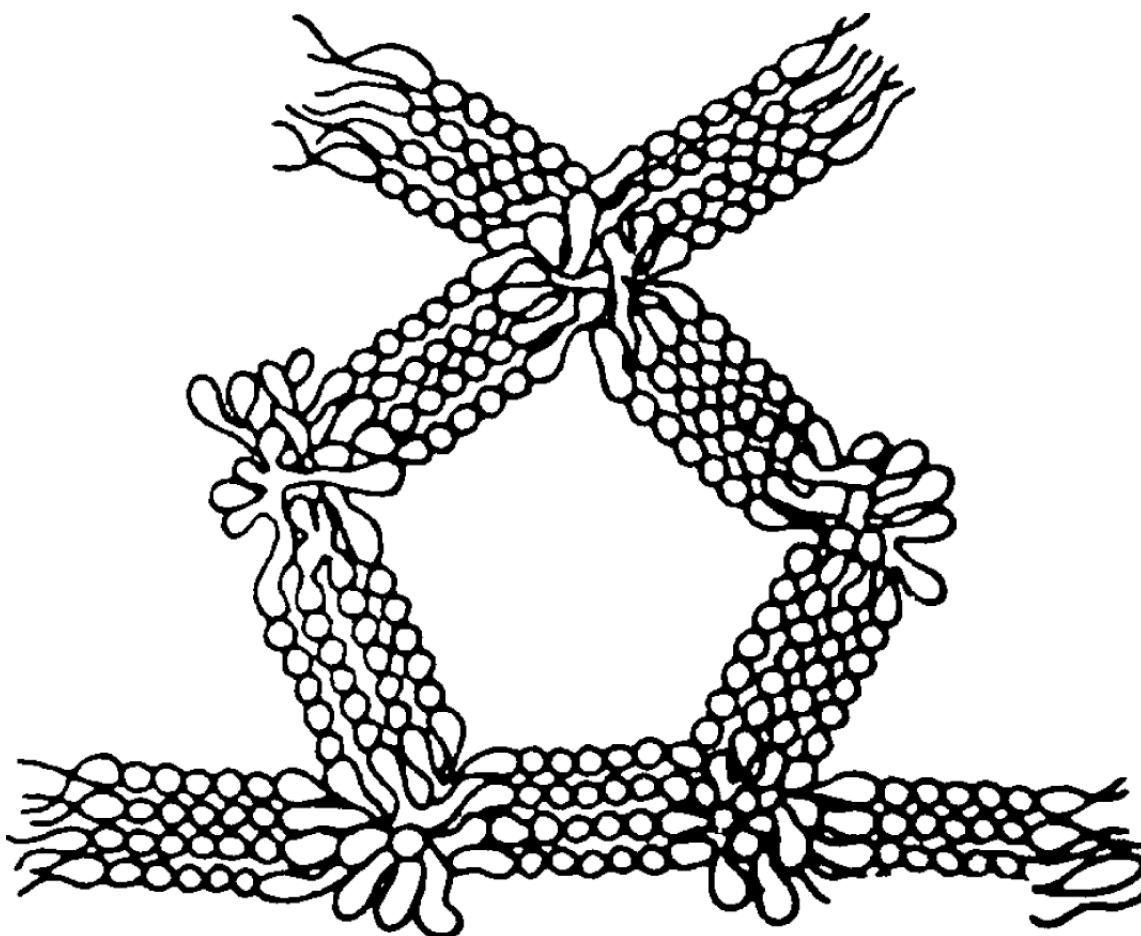
	<b>Form</b>	<b>Mean particle size (<math>\mu\text{m}</math>)</b>
MiniBeads™	Polystyrene/divinyl benzene	3
MonoBeads™	Polystyrene/divinyl benzene	10
SOURCE 15	Polystyrene/divinyl benzene	15
SOURCE 30	Polystyrene/divinyl benzene	30
Sepharose High Performance	Agarose 6%	34
Sepharose Fast Flow	Agarose 6%	90
Sepharose 4 Fast Flow	Agarose 4%	90
Sepharose XL	Agarose 6%, dextran chains coupled to agarose	90
Sepharose Big Beads	Agarose 6%	200
Capto™ ImpRes	High-flow agarose	40
Capto ImpAct	High-flow agarose	50
Capto	High-flow agarose	90

Sepharose media are based on chains of agarose, arranged in bundles and with different degrees of cross-linking (Fig 1.14), to give a range of rigid, macroporous matrices with good capacity and low non-specific adsorption. The most suitable matrix can be selected according to the degree of resolution, binding capacity and flow rates desired for the separation. For example, gradient elution on Sepharose High Performance (34 µm) will give a high resolution separation whereas the larger particles of Sepharose Fast Flow (90 µm) or Sepharose Big Beads (200 µm) would be most suited for high capacity, step elution at high flow rate.

Capto media are based on a chemically modified, high-flow agarose matrix. This matrix provides particle rigidity without compromising pore size, outstanding pressure/flow properties, and high chemical stability to support CIP procedures. Capto media are suitable for scaling up and for use in large-scale bioprocess purifications. The basic characteristics of Capto (90 µm), Capto ImpAct (50 µm), and Capto ImpRes (40 µm) IEX media are summarized in Chapter 3.



**Fig 1.13.** Electron micrograph of MonoBeads showing spherical, monodispersed particles.



**Fig 1.14.** Structure of cross-linked agarose media (Sepharose).

## Functional groups

The functional groups substituted onto a chromatographic matrix (Table 1.2) determine the charge of an IEX medium, that is, a positively charged anion exchanger or a negatively charged cation exchanger.

 The terms strong and weak refer to the extent that the ionization state of the functional groups varies with pH. The terms strong and weak do not refer to the strength with which the functional groups bind to proteins. Strong ion exchangers show no variation in ion exchange capacity with change in pH (Fig 1.15). These exchangers do not take up or lose protons with changing pH and so have no buffering capacity, remaining fully charged over a broad pH range. Strong ion exchangers include Q (anionic), S, and SP (cationic).

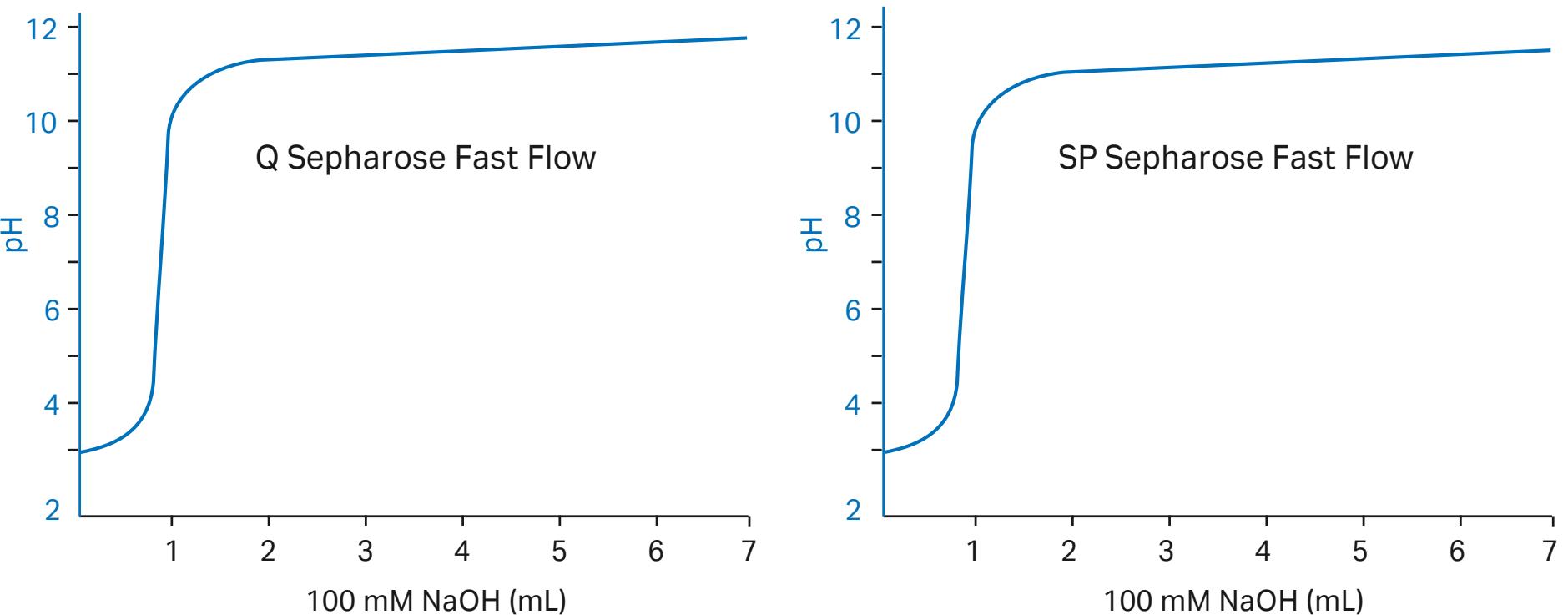
There are several advantages to working with strong ion exchangers:

- Development and optimization of separations is fast and easy since the charge characteristics of the medium do not change with pH
- The mechanism of interaction is simple since there are no intermediate forms of charge interaction
- Sample loading (binding) capacity is maintained at high or low pH since there is no loss of charge from the ion exchanger

**Table 1.2.** Functional groups used on ion exchangers

Anion exchangers	Functional group
Quaternary ammonium (Q)	strong $-\text{CH}_2\text{-N}^+(\text{CH}_3)_3$
Diethylaminoethyl (DEAE)*	weak $-\text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-N}^+(\text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_3)_2$
Diethylaminopropyl (ANX)*	weak $-\text{CH}_2\text{-CHOH-CH}_2\text{-N}^+(\text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_3)_2$
Cation exchangers	Functional group
Sulfopropyl (SP)	strong $-\text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-SO}_3^-$
Methyl sulfonate (S)	strong $-\text{CH}_2\text{-SO}_3^-$
Carboxymethyl (CM)	weak $-\text{CH}_2\text{-COO}^-$

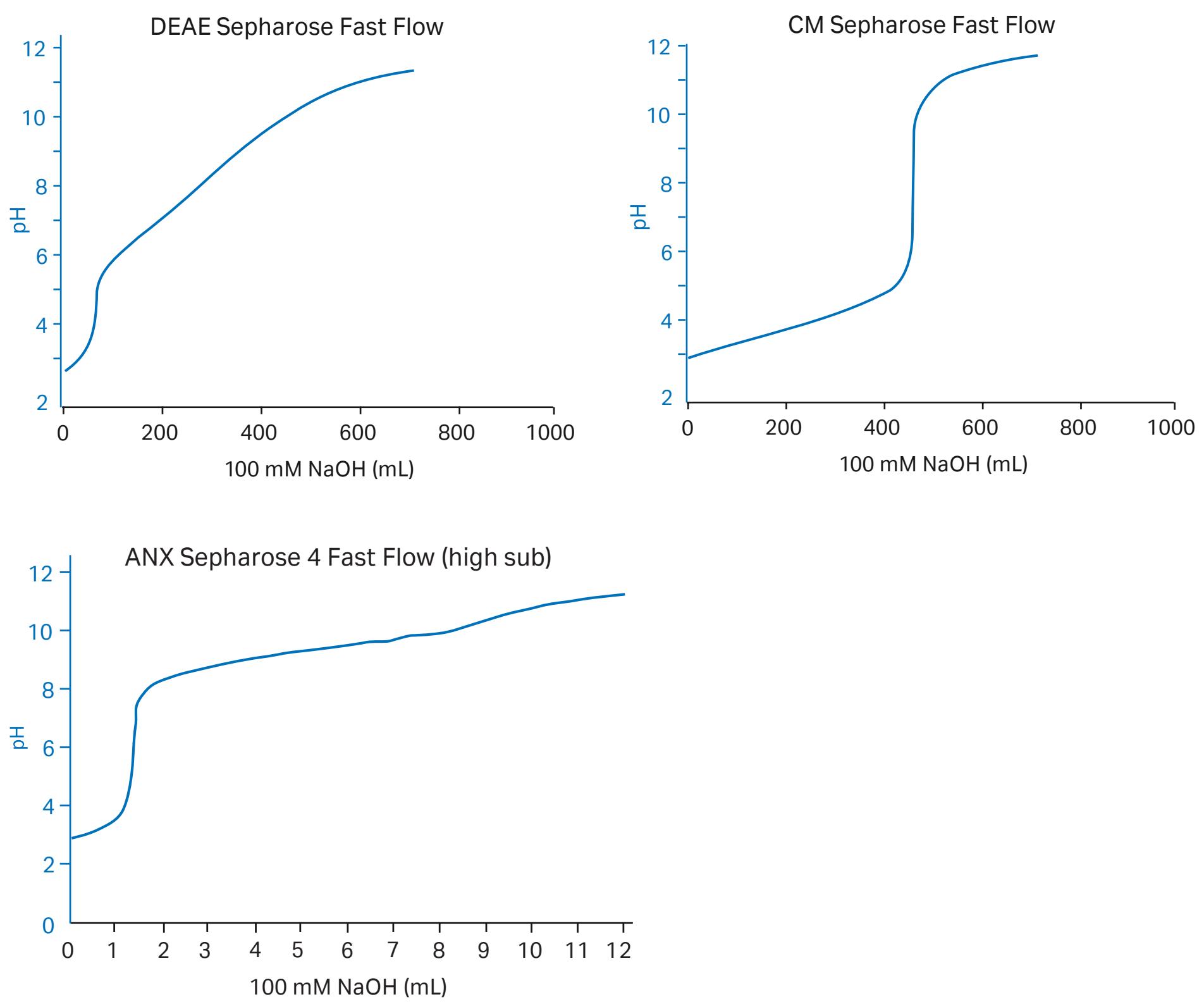
\* The active end of the charged group is the same for DEAE and ANX. The difference between them is in the length of the carbon chain of the charged group. DEAE has a diethylaminoethyl group bound to the agarose. ANX has a diethylaminopropyl group attached which prevents the formation of quaternary groups, giving a different selectivity compared to DEAE.



**Fig 1.15.** Titration curves show the ion exchange capacity of strong ion exchangers Q and SP. Approximately 5 mL of Q or SP Sepharose Fast Flow were equilibrated in 1 M KCl and titrated with 100 mM NaOH.

The majority of proteins have  $\text{pI}$  within the range 5.5 to 7.5 and can be separated on either strong or weak ion exchangers. An advantage of a weak ion exchanger, such as DEAE (anionic), ANX (anionic), and CM (cationic) is that they can offer a different selectivity compared to strong ion exchangers. A disadvantage is that because weak ion exchangers can take up or lose protons with changing pH, their ion exchange capacity varies with pH (Fig 1.16).

 Try a weak ion exchanger such as DEAE, CM, or ANX Sepharose Fast Flow, if a strong ion exchanger (substituted with Q, S, or SP) does not give the required selectivity.



**Fig 1.16.** Titration curves show how the ion exchange capacity of weak ion exchangers varies with pH.

## Binding capacity and recovery

The capacity of an IEX medium is a quantitative measure of its ability to take up counterions (proteins or other charged molecules). The *total ionic capacity* is the number of charged functional groups/mL medium, a fixed parameter of each medium. Of more practical relevance is the actual amount of protein that can bind to an IEX medium, under defined experimental conditions. The capacity of a chromatography medium can be measured in two ways: static binding capacity (SBC) and dynamic binding capacity (DBC). SBC is the maximum amount of protein that can bind at given conditions. SBC is often obtained during excess load of sample. DBC is measured during given conditions, including flow rate, and is the amount of protein that binds before a significant breakthrough of the target protein appears. Figures for binding capacity in this handbook refer to the dynamic binding capacity.

The static and dynamic binding capacities depend upon the properties of the protein, the IEX medium, and the experimental conditions. The capacity of an IEX medium will vary according to the molecular size of the specific protein (which affects its ability to enter all the pores of the matrix) and its charge/pH relationship (the protein must carry the correct net charge at a sufficient surface density at the chosen pH). With earlier IEX media, larger biomolecules had limited access to the functional groups, significantly reducing the binding capacity. Nowadays, ion exchange matrices such as MonoBeads, Capto, SOURCE, and Sepharose media all have exclusion limits for globular proteins in excess of  $1 \times 10^6$  and are therefore suitable for the majority of biomolecule separations. Binding capacities will still vary according to the molecular size of the biomolecules. For example, a matrix with a high degree of small pores will exhibit a higher binding capacity for smaller molecules. Experimental conditions such as pH, ionic strength, counterion, flow rate, and temperature should all be considered when comparing binding capacities of different IEX media.

Modern IEX media show very low levels of nonspecific adsorption so that sample recovery under suitable separation conditions is very high, typically between 90% and 100%.

## Chromatofocusing

Chromatofocusing (CF) is a purification method separating proteins on the basis of differences in their isoelectric points (pI). The matrix is usually a weak anion exchanger in which the functional groups are amines. The eluent is a buffer containing a large number of buffering substances which together give a uniform buffering capacity over a broad pH range. A pH gradient is generated on the column as buffer and medium interacts. Proteins with different pI values migrate at different rates as the pH gradient develops, continually binding and dissociating while being focused into narrow bands and finally eluted.

CF is a powerful method and can resolve very small differences in pI (down to 0.02 pH units) and thus separates very similar proteins. However, the capacity of the method is low and should preferably only be used for partially pure samples. CF can be considered if IEX or other methods do not give satisfactory purification.

02

# Ion exchange in practice

## Introduction

This chapter includes practical advice on how to control experimental conditions to achieve a successful separation and guidelines for selection of the most appropriate medium or prepacked column for each application. The final resolution of an ion exchange (IEX) separation is determined by selectivity and column efficiency. These parameters are influenced in turn by factors such as particle size, porosity and column packing. The separation is influenced by a number of factors, for example, the way in which the net surface charge of each protein in the sample varies with pH, the pH and ionic strength of buffers, and the elution conditions. Understanding the role and importance of each parameter ensures that every separation can be performed with the required resolution, throughput and speed. Additional application examples and product-related information are found in Chapter 3.

## Selecting chromatography media

The origin and differences between modern IEX matrices are explained in Chapter 1. Choice of a suitable matrix depends on factors such as the scale of the final purification, the purpose of the separation (for example to concentrate sample in a capture step or to achieve high resolution in a final polishing step) and the throughput required. Refer to Chapter 4 for more details on the use of *capture, intermediate purification, and polishing steps* in a purification strategy.

## Capture

When IEX is used as a capture step, the objective is to quickly absorb the protein(s) of interest from the crude sample and isolate them from critical contaminants such as proteases. The target protein(s) are concentrated and transferred to an environment that will conserve potency/activity. Removal of other critical contaminants can also be achieved by careful optimization of pH and elution conditions.

The focus is on capacity and speed in a capture step. It is advisable to compromise on the potential resolution that can be achieved by an IEX separation to maximize the capacity and/or speed of the separation in this first step (Fig 2.1).

## Intermediate purification

When IEX is used for intermediate purification, the objective is to remove most of the significant impurities such as proteins, nucleic acids, endotoxins, and viruses. In a typical intermediate purification step, speed is less critical since sample volume has been reduced and damaging contaminants have been removed during capture. Focus is on capacity and resolution in order to maintain productivity and to achieve as high selectivity (purity) as possible (Fig 2.1).

## Polishing

When IEX is used for polishing, most impurities have been removed except for trace amounts or closely related substances such as structural variants of the target protein, nucleic acids, viruses, or endotoxins. The purpose of the separation is to reduce these variants and trace contaminants to acceptable levels for the application. In contrast to capture steps where fast, high capacity, step elution is most commonly used, a polishing step will therefore focus on achieving the highest possible resolution (Fig 2.1).



**Fig 2.1.** A typical purification strategy has three phases: Capture, Intermediate Purification, and Polishing (CIPP). Each phase has a specific objective, dependent largely on the properties of the starting material. The appropriate IEX medium is selected according to the objective of the purification step and the condition of the starting material.

## Fast IEX media selection and method development

Time and sample can be saved in the early stages of development by using small, prepacked columns such as those in the HiTrap IEX Selection Kit (Fig 2.2). The kit allows quick and efficient screening for the most suitable charge group and enables development of the basic separation method (see Appendix 11, *Media selection*). This approach is particularly helpful if the properties of the target protein(s) are unknown.

HiTrap columns can be run with a syringe, a peristaltic pump, or any ÄKTA™ chromatography system. HiTrap columns can be used for small-scale purification as well as fast method development and are supplied with detailed protocols for use.

The HiScreen™ column format has been specially designed for screening and optimizing before scaling up the purification. The higher bed height of HiScreen (10 cm), in comparison with HiTrap (2.5 cm), is suitable for scaling up while keeping the bed height constant.



**Fig 2.2.** HiTrap™ IEX Selection Kit contains seven HiTrap columns prepacked with different Sepharose Fast Flow media. The kit is an excellent choice for screening of the most appropriate media and conditions to use in application and development work.

## Practical considerations for IEX separation

This section covers detailed aspects of each step in an IEX separation, together with practical hints and tips to improve resolution and overall performance.

### Buffer pH and ionic strength

Buffer pH and ionic strength must be compatible with protein stability and activity. The most suitable pH should allow the proteins of interest to bind, but should be as close to the point of release (elution) as possible. If the pH is too low or too high, elution becomes more difficult and high salt concentrations might be needed. This should be avoided since some proteins begin to precipitate at high ionic strength and high salt concentrations can interfere with assays or subsequent chromatographic steps.

 Avoid extreme changes in pH or other conditions that can cause inactivation or even precipitation.

The pH and ionic strength of the sample are extremely important in order to achieve the most effective high resolution or group separations and to make the most of the high loading capacity. Samples should preferably be buffered in the start buffer (see Appendix 1, *Sample preparation* for details). When working with small volumes during screening and scouting, it might be sufficient to dilute the sample in start buffer in order to lower the ionic strength and adjust the pH to a value similar to that of the start buffer.

Proteins often begin to dissociate from IEX media about 0.5 pH units from their pI at an ionic strength around 100 mM. The pH of the start buffer should be at least 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit above the pI of the target substance when using an anion exchanger (Q, DEAE, or ANX) or 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit below the pI of the target substance when using a cation exchanger (SP or CM).

For samples with unknown charge properties, try the following strong ion exchangers first:

#### anion exchange (Q)

start buffer: pH 8.0  
elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 8.0

#### cation exchange (S, SP)

start buffer: pH 6.0  
elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 6.0

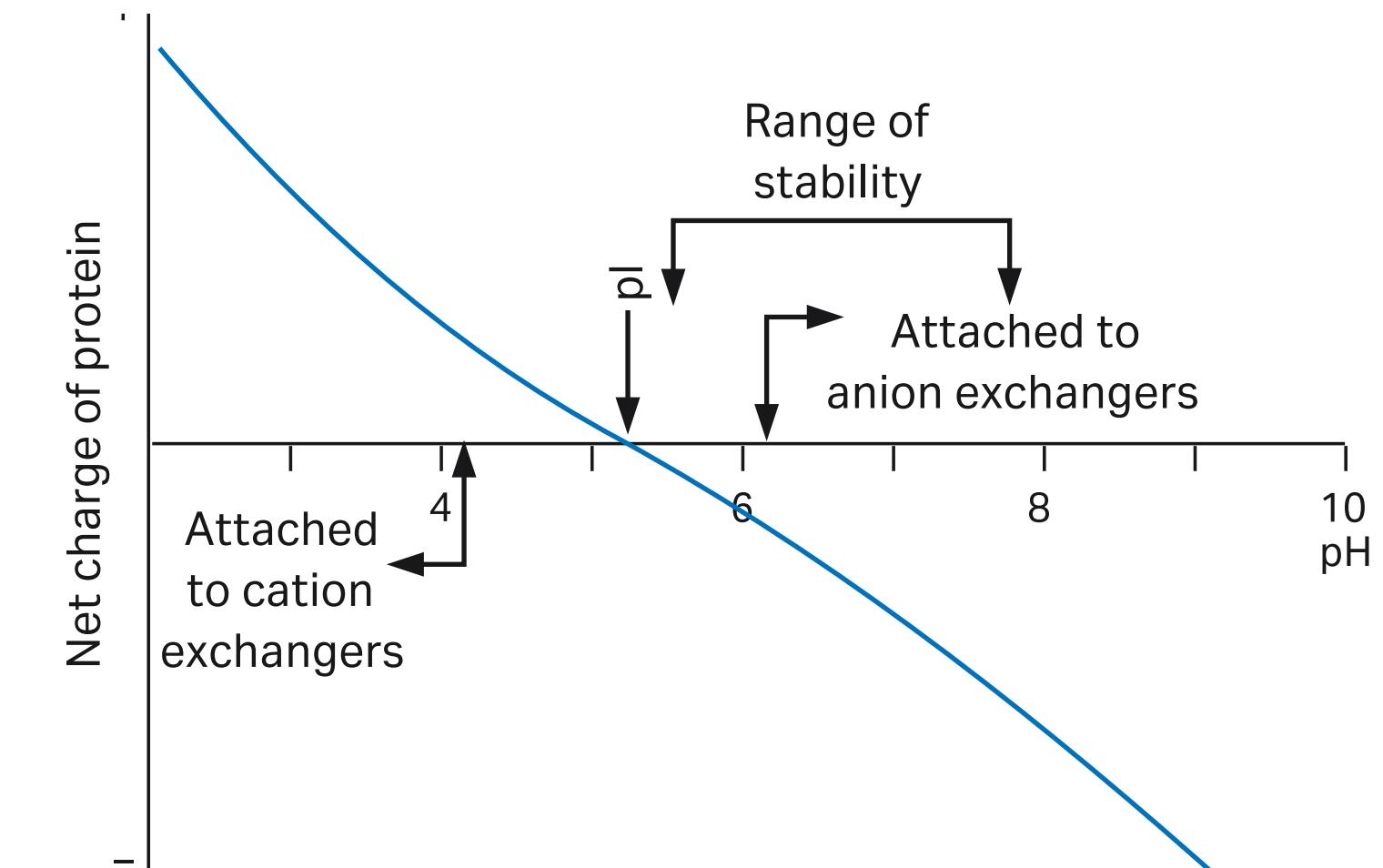
See Appendix 2 for recommendations on volatile and nonvolatile buffer systems for anion and cation exchangers.

 Whenever possible, check for stability at the pH and ionic strength values selected, especially if recovery of biological activity is a priority.

## Anion or cation exchanger

For molecules such as nucleic acids, which carry only negatively charged groups, an anion exchanger is the obvious choice. However, since the net charge of molecules such as proteins (carrying positively and negatively charged groups) depends on pH, the choice is based on which type of exchanger and pH give the desired resolution within the constraints of sample stability. For example, Figure 2.3 shows a theoretical protein which has a net positive charge below its  $pI$ , and can bind to a cation exchanger. Above its  $pI$ , the protein has a net negative charge and can bind to an anion exchanger. However, the protein is only stable in the pH range between 5.0 and 8.0 and so an anion exchanger has to be used.

- 👉 If sample components are most stable below their  $pI$ , use a cation exchanger.
- 👉 If sample components are most stable above their  $pI$ , use an anion exchanger.
- 👉 If stability is high over a wide pH range on both sides of the  $pI$ , use either type of ion exchanger.



**Fig 2.3.** Considerations when selecting a suitable IEX medium.

## Strong or weak ion exchangers

Table 2.1 shows the functional groups used on IEX media. The terms strong and weak refer to the extent that the ionization state of the functional groups varies with pH. The terms strong and weak do not refer to the strength with which the functional groups bind to proteins.

 Begin with a strong ion exchanger to enable development work to be performed over a broad pH range. Use a strong anion exchanger (Q) to bind the protein(s) of interest if their pI is below pH 7.0 or unknown.

 Use a strong ion exchanger in cases where maximum resolution occurs at an extreme pH and the proteins of interest are stable at that pH.

Consider using a weak exchanger if the selectivity of the strong ion exchanger is unsatisfactory, but remember that the ion exchange capacity of a weak ion exchanger varies with pH. As a result:

- Sample loading (binding) capacity can vary with increasing pH due to loss of charge from the exchanger
- Resolution is more readily affected by changes in flow rate or sample load due to the intermediate forms of charge interaction that can occur
- Predicted results (based on known information about the sample components such as their pI and how their net surface charge changes with pH) might not correlate with actual results since the number of charged groups on weak ion exchangers can vary with pH
- Longer equilibration times might be required in order to titrate the weak ion exchange functional groups

 When using a weak exchanger, work within the pH values given below to minimize variations in performance:

DEAE: pH 2.0 to 9.0

ANX: pH 2.0 to 9.0

CM: pH 6.0 to 10.0

**Table 2.1.** Functional groups used on ion exchangers

Anion exchangers	Functional group
Quaternary ammonium (Q)	-CH <sub>2</sub> -N <sup>+</sup> (CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>
Diethylaminoethyl (DEAE) <sup>1</sup>	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -N-(CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>
Diethylaminopropyl (ANX) <sup>1</sup>	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CHOH-CH <sub>2</sub> -N-(CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>
Cation exchangers	Functional group
Sulfopropyl (SP)	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -SO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>
Methyl sulfonate (S)	-CH <sub>2</sub> -SO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>
Carboxymethyl (CM)	-CH <sub>2</sub> -COO <sup>-</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The active end of the charged group is the same for DEAE and ANX. The difference between them is in the length of the carbon chain of the charged group. DEAE has a diethylaminopropyl group bound to the agarose. ANX has a diethylaminopropyl group attached, which prevents the formation of quaternary groups giving a different selectivity compared to DEAE.

## Buffer selection and preparation

### Buffer ions

Buffering ions should have the same charge as the functional groups on the IEX medium (buffering ions that carry a charge opposite to that of the functional groups will take part in the ion exchange process and can cause significant pH fluctuations during elution) and, preferably, a pKa value within 0.6 pH units of the working pH. An exception to this rule is seen in the frequent use of phosphate buffers with anion exchange separations. However, phosphate buffers must be very carefully prepared to ensure reproducibility between batches.

-  Use a buffer concentration that is sufficient to maintain buffering capacity and constant pH, typically 20 to 50 mM.
-  Use volatile buffers if the purified product is to be lyophilized.

See Appendix 2 for recommendations on volatile and nonvolatile buffer systems for anion and cation exchangers.

-  Filter buffers after all salts and additives have been included. Use high quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions through 1 µm filters for particle sizes above 90 µm, 0.45 µm filters for 34 µm particles, or 0.22 µm filters for particle sizes below 15 µm or when sterile or extra clean samples are required. To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, ensure that column and buffers are at the same temperature when preparing for a run.

### Effect of temperature on buffer pH

Select buffers that have appropriate pKa values for the working temperature. The pKa of a buffering substance varies with temperature. For example, Tris has a pKa of 8.85 at 0°C, 8.06 at 25°C and 7.72 at 27°C. Using Tris at 4°C at a pH 7.9 would give a very low buffering capacity and the working pH would be outside the useful pH range ( $\text{pKa} \pm 0.5$ ) of the buffer.

-  Prepare buffers at the same temperature at which they will be used.
-  Temperatures < 10°C can minimize aggregation caused by hydrophobic interactions between sample components. Working at these lower temperatures can be an alternative solution to using a detergent to improve solubility.

## Counterions

👉 Counterions (salt ions) used in IEX are almost always  $\text{Na}^+$  for cation exchange and  $\text{Cl}^-$  for anion exchange.

Salts such as NaCl have a chaotropic character (i.e., an ability to make water less polar) and therefore a lower 'salting-out' effect on hydrophobic molecules. This ensures maximum solubility during elution and improves recovery. Chaotropic salts can also be used in the presence of organic solvents if required. Salts such as  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$  or  $\text{K}_3\text{PO}_4$  should be avoided as they are most likely to cause precipitation at high concentrations.

In certain applications alternative counterions such as  $\text{Li}^+$ ,  $\text{Br}^-$ ,  $\text{I}^-$ ,  $\text{SO}_4^{2-}$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^-$ , or  $\text{HCOO}^-$  can improve and even alter, selectivity since they exhibit different elution strengths, but it should be noted that using these ions might affect the binding capacity of the medium. Figure 2.4 shows how selectivity and resolution can vary when using different counterions.

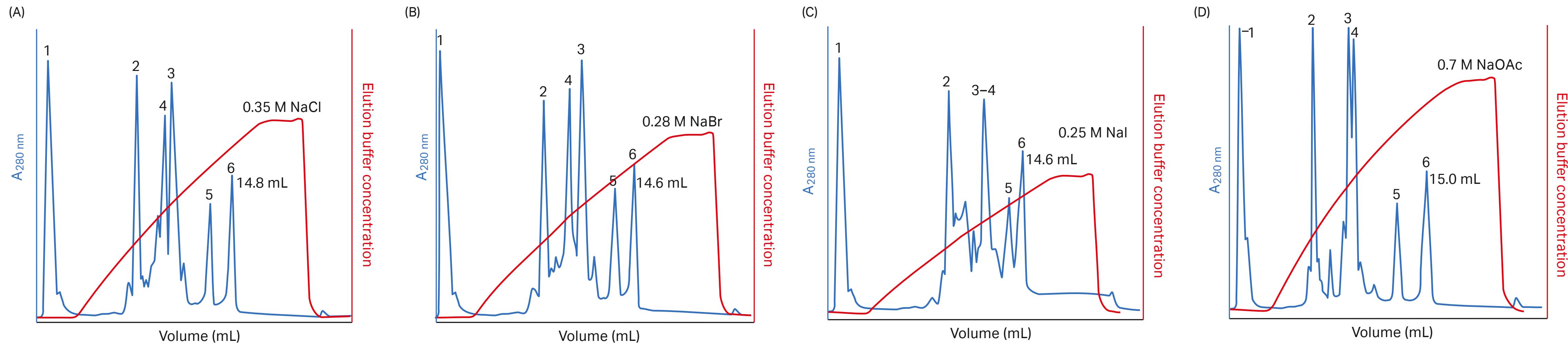
👉 Use the following procedure if the medium is to be used with counterions other than  $\text{Na}^+$  or  $\text{Cl}^-$ :

1. Wash the packed column with 10 column volumes 0.5 to 1 M salt solution containing the new counterion. Flow rate: see relevant IEX media section in Chapter 3.
2. Wash with 10 column volumes of start buffer at the same flow rate as in step 1.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 several times.

👉 Perform a blank run to check conductivity and pH.

Column: Mono Q HR 5/5

Samples: carbonic anhydrase, transferrin, ovalbumin,  $\alpha$ -lactalbumin,  $\beta$ -lactoglobulin A and B



**Fig 2.4.** Effect of salt ions (counterions) (A) sodium chloride, (B) sodium bromide, (C) sodium iodide, and (D) sodium acetate on selectivity and resolution (Mono Q HR 5/5 now available as Mono Q 5/50 GL). Note the variation in elution order of peaks 3 and 4.

## Flow rates

The maximum flow rate applied during a separation can vary according to the stage of the separation. For example, during sample application and elution, lower flow rates allow time for sample components to diffuse in and out of the pores as they bind to or dissociate from the functional groups. Figure 2.5 shows an example of the influence of flow rate on resolution. Higher flow rates can be used for equilibration, washing and re-equilibration, limited primarily by the rigidity of the media and by pressure specifications of the equipment.

Recommended flow rates for each chromatography medium are given in Chapter 3. Working from these recommendations, *select the highest flow rate that maintains resolution and minimizes separation time*. For example, if peaks are well separated at a low flow rate, increase the flow rate or alternatively, increase the sample volume to benefit from a higher capacity without significant loss of resolution.

Flow rate can be measured as volumetric flow rate, that is, volume per unit time (mL/min). When comparing results between columns of different sizes or when scaling-up, it is useful to use flow velocity, which measures the flow rate (mL/min) divided by the cross-sectional area of the column and is expressed as flow velocity time (for example, cm/h, see Appendix 5). Results obtained at the same flow velocity on different size columns will be comparable.

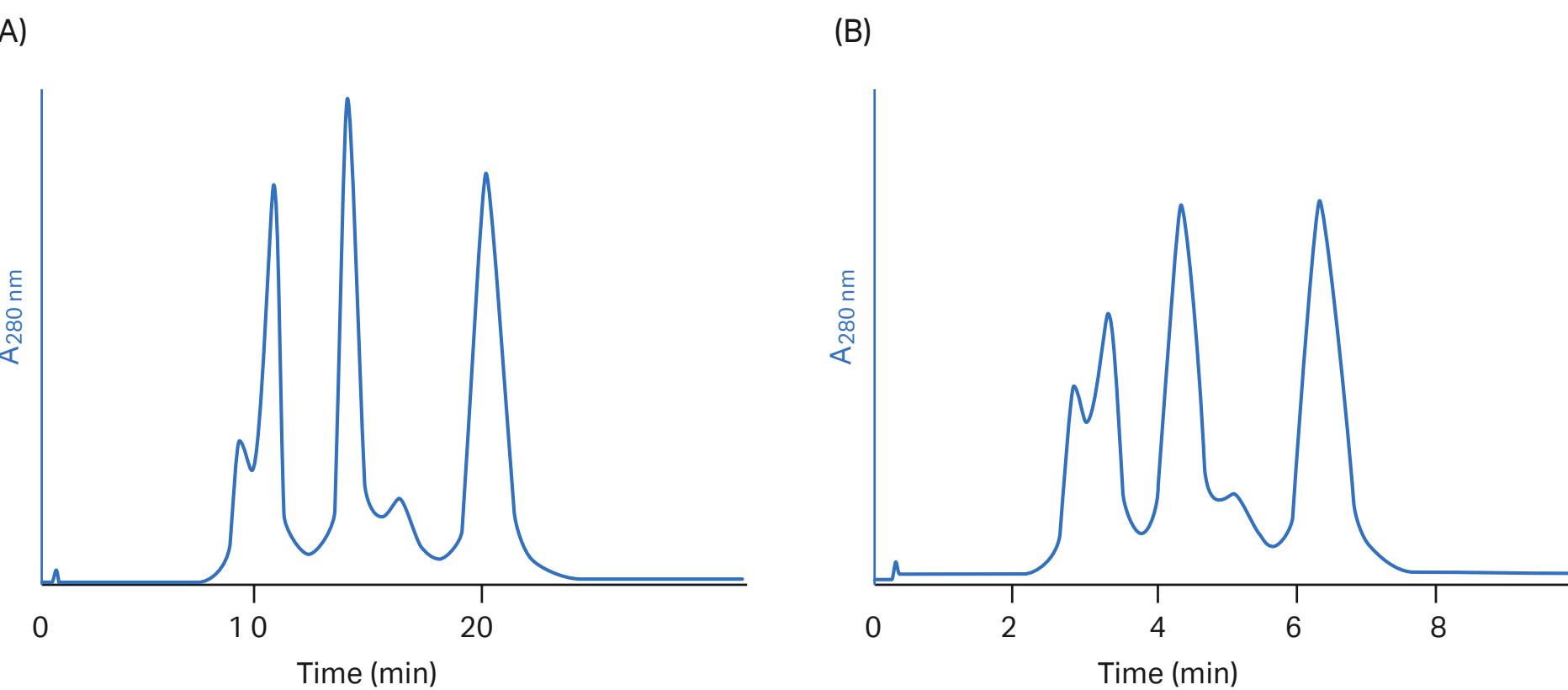
- 👉 Save time by using higher flow rates during the high salt wash and re-equilibration steps. Do not exceed the maximum recommended flow for the medium.
- 👉 Higher flow rates and viscous buffers increase operating pressures (remember that buffer viscosity increases when running at 4°C). Check the maximum operating pressure of the packed column and set the upper pressure limit on the chromatography system accordingly.

## Flow control

Accurate, reproducible flow control is essential for good resolution and reproducibility.

- 👉 Use a pump within a chromatography system (rather than a peristaltic pump) to fully utilize the high rigidity and excellent flow properties of the medium.
- 👉 If you have packed the column yourself, always use a flow rate for separation that is less than the flow rate used for column packing in order to avoid shrinking of the column bed by pressure increases that can occur when running a sample.

**Column:** SOURCE 30Q, 10 mm i.d. × 50 mm (4 mL)  
**Sample:** Mixture of lactoglobulin B and amyloglucosidase  
**Sample load:** 1 mg/mL of bed volume  
**Start buffer:** 20 mM BIS-Tris PROPANE, pH 7.0  
**Elution buffer:** 500 mM sodium chloride, 20 mM BIS-TRIS PROPANE, pH 7.0  
**Flow rates (flow velocities):**  
(A) 4 mL/min (300 cm/h)  
(B) 13 mL/min (1000 cm/h)  
**Gradient:** 0% to 100% elution buffer, 20 CV



**Fig 2.5.** Influence of increasing flow rate on resolution.

## Steps in an IEX separation

The six steps listed are described in more detail throughout this section.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV with an increasing ionic strength up to 500 mM NaCl (50% B). Alternatively, elute bound proteins with 5 CV of start buffer + NaCl at chosen ionic strength. Repeat at higher ionic strengths until the target protein(s) has been eluted.
5. Regeneration: Wash with 5 CV of 1 M NaCl (100% B) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

-  Buffer volumes referred to are expressed in *column volumes*, for example 3 CV = 3 mL for a column with a 1 mL bed volume. Using CV to describe a separation profile facilitates method development and transfer of methods to columns of different dimensions.
-  The number of CV used at each stage of the separation can often be reduced by optimization. For example, less buffer is required to equilibrate a strong ion exchanger, the gradient volume can be reduced if resolution can be maintained and less buffer might be required for washing when separating less complex and reasonably clean samples.

## Column and media preparation

Using prepacked columns is highly recommended to ensure the desired high performance and reproducible results. An evenly packed column ensures that component peaks are not unnecessarily broadened as sample passes down the column so that optimal resolution can be achieved.

-  Allow buffers, media or prepacked columns to reach the same temperature before use. Rapid changes in temperature, for example removing packed columns from a cold room and then applying buffer at room temperature, can cause air bubbles in the packing and affect the separation.
-  Wash away storage solutions and preservatives before using any IEX medium.
-  Increase the volumes used for column equilibration before the first run if using buffers containing detergents or a different counterion to the one in which the medium has been stored.

Appendix 3 gives details on column packing. The volume required for the packed bed is determined by the amount of sample to be purified and the binding capacity of the medium. Pack a column that will have approximately five-fold excess of the binding capacity required with a bed height up to 20 cm.

-  Check column performance regularly by determining column efficiency and peak symmetry. See Appendix 3. Note that this does not apply to HiTrap or HiPrep™ columns.

## Sample preparation

Correct sample and buffer preparation is essential in order to achieve optimal separation and avoid any deterioration in column performance. Simple steps to clarify a sample before application to a column will avoid the risk of blockage and reduce the need for stringent washing procedures. Appendix 1 contains a detailed overview of sample preparation techniques.

-  Desalt samples and transfer into the chosen start buffer (see *Buffer exchange and desalting* in Appendix 1). The pH and ionic strength of the sample are extremely important in order to achieve the most effective high resolution or group separations and to make the most of the high loading capacity.
-  For small sample volumes in a high salt concentration and with no major contaminants such as lipids or ionic detergents, it might be sufficient to dilute the sample with start buffer in order to lower the salt concentration to a level that does not interfere with binding to the medium. However, buffer exchange and desalting is the only way to guarantee the correct pH and ionic strength conditions of a sample.
-  Samples must be clear and free from particulate matter, particularly when working with particle sizes of 34 µm or less. For small sample volumes, a syringe-tip filter of cellulose acetate or PVDF can be sufficient for sample filtration.

## Sample concentration and viscosity

The solubility or viscosity of the sample can limit the quantity that can be applied to a column. High sample viscosity can cause instability of the separation and an irregular flow pattern resulting in broad, distorted peaks, and problems with back pressure. The critical parameter is the viscosity of the sample relative to the viscosity of the eluent.

-  Dilute viscous samples with start buffer. If high viscosity is caused by the presence of nucleic acid contaminants, see Appendix 1 for advice on their removal. Remember that viscosity varies with temperature. If dilution is not an option, using a medium with a larger particle size can help to overcome viscosity problems.
-  Samples should generally not exceed 50 to 70 mg/mL protein, but can vary according to the type of sample and the type of chromatographic medium.

## Sample application and wash

Starting conditions should maximize binding of the target proteins near the top of the column and, when possible, minimize binding of contaminants so that they pass through the column.

-  For efficient binding the sample should be at the same pH and ionic strength as the start buffer. The sample volume can be relatively large without affecting the separation since the sample will bind at the top of the column as long as equilibration and sample conditions are correct.
-  Apply samples directly to the column via a chromatography system, a peristaltic pump, or a syringe. The choice of equipment depends largely on the sample volume, the size of column, the type of IEX medium, and the requirements for accuracy in gradient elution. Ensure that the top of the column bed is not disturbed during sample application.
-  Do not change buffer conditions until all unbound material has been washed through the column (monitored by UV absorbance) and until UV and conductivity values have returned to starting conditions.

## Sample load

Sample load (mass) is of greater importance than sample volume. The amount of sample which can be applied to a column depends on the dynamic binding capacity of the IEX medium and the degree of resolution required. Sample load has a major influence on resolution since the width of the peaks is directly related to the amount of substance present, as shown in Figure 2.6. Consequently, in order to achieve satisfactory resolution, the total amount of protein applied and bound to the medium should not exceed the total binding capacity of the packed column.

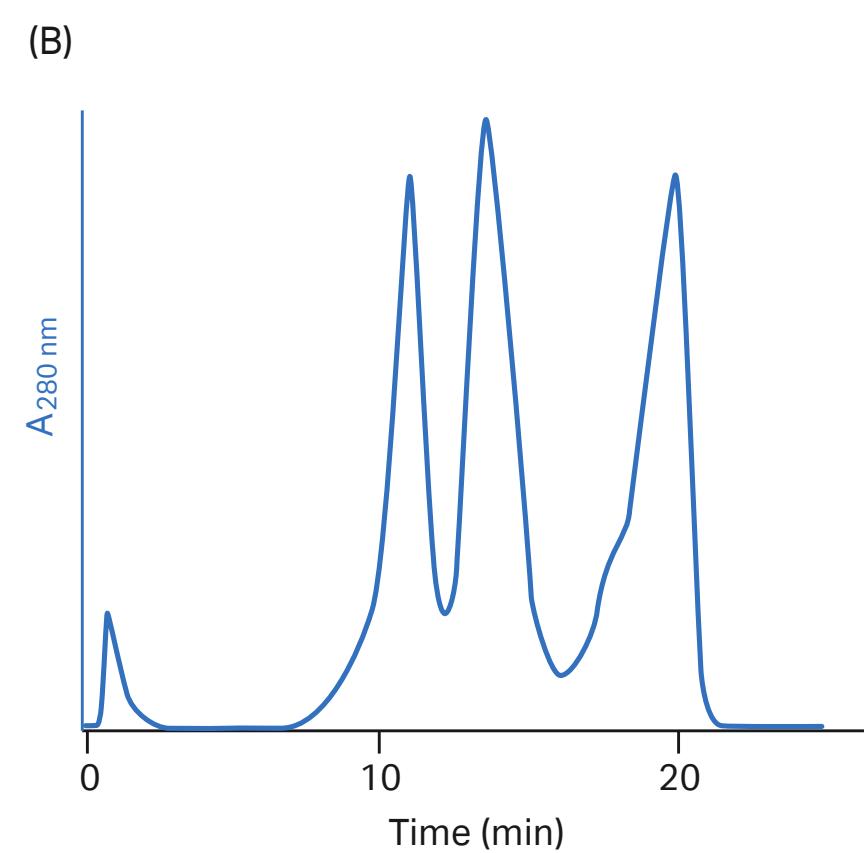
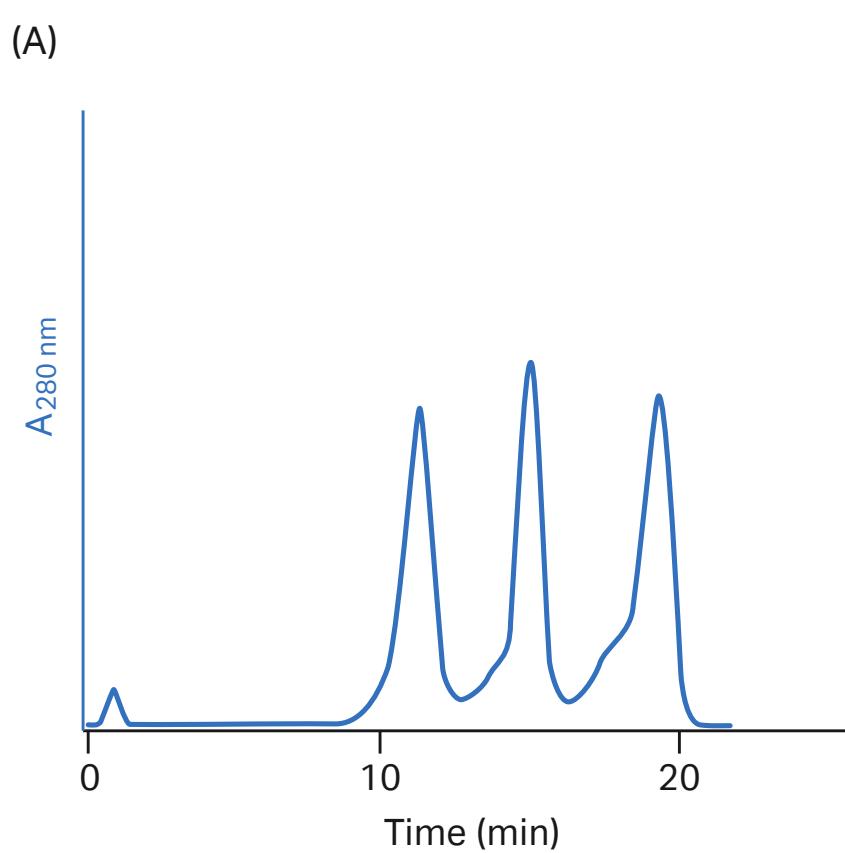
👉 Apply up to 30% of the total binding capacity of the column for optimal resolution with gradient elution. Sample loads can be increased if resolution is satisfactory or when using a step elution.

👉 If sample volumes are large compared to the total CV, the sample buffer composition, in particular the ionic strength, should be the same as that of the start buffer to ensure adequate binding conditions.

Chapter 3 gives typical binding capacities for each medium as a guideline for total binding capacity. The actual (dynamic) binding capacity is also affected by factors such as size and shape of the molecules, the pore size of the matrix, flow rate, sample concentration, pH/protein charge, and ionic strength. Capacity will decrease for molecules of very large diameter or length such as protein complexes  $> M_r 400\,000$  asymmetric proteins, and DNA. These molecules are unable to penetrate the matrix pores, limiting their binding primarily to the charged groups on the surface of the matrix. Since the exact distribution of pore sizes in some matrices can vary and the apparent size of a molecule can vary according to the buffer conditions, there is no distinct molecular weight cut-off point when molecules can or cannot penetrate the matrix pores.

👉 The binding step and the dynamic binding capacity can be increased by applying sample at a pH where the target protein has a higher charge than if the optimal pH for separation was used.

**Column:** SOURCE 30S, 5 mm i.d. × 50 mm (1 mL)  
**Sample:** Mixture of chymotrypsinogen, cytochrome C, and lysozyme  
**Sample load:**  
(A) 1 mg  
(B) 10 mg  
**Start buffer:** 20 mM sodium phosphate, pH 6.8  
**Elution buffer:** 500 mM sodium chloride, 20 mM sodium phosphate, pH 6.8  
**Flow rate (flow velocity):** 1 mL/min (300 cm/h)  
**Gradient:** 0% to 100% elution buffer, 20 CV



**Fig 2.6.** The influence of increasing sample load on resolution.

## Sample volume

As a binding technique, IEX is independent of sample volume as long as the ionic strength of the sample is the same or as low as the start buffer and the target proteins are sufficiently charged at the selected pH. Large volumes of dilute solutions such as fractions from a desalting step or a cell culture supernatant can be applied directly to an IEX medium without prior concentration.

## Elution of target protein

Bound proteins are eluted by controlled changes in ionic strength or pH. The way in which these changes take place, by using a linear or step elution, is selected according to the aim of the separation.

Linear gradient elution allows high-resolution separation/analysis. Step elution ensures faster separation time with reduced buffer consumption as well as group separation.

## Linear gradient elution

For high-resolution separation/analysis, elution is performed using a linear gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV with an increasing ionic strength up to 500 mM NaCl (50%B).

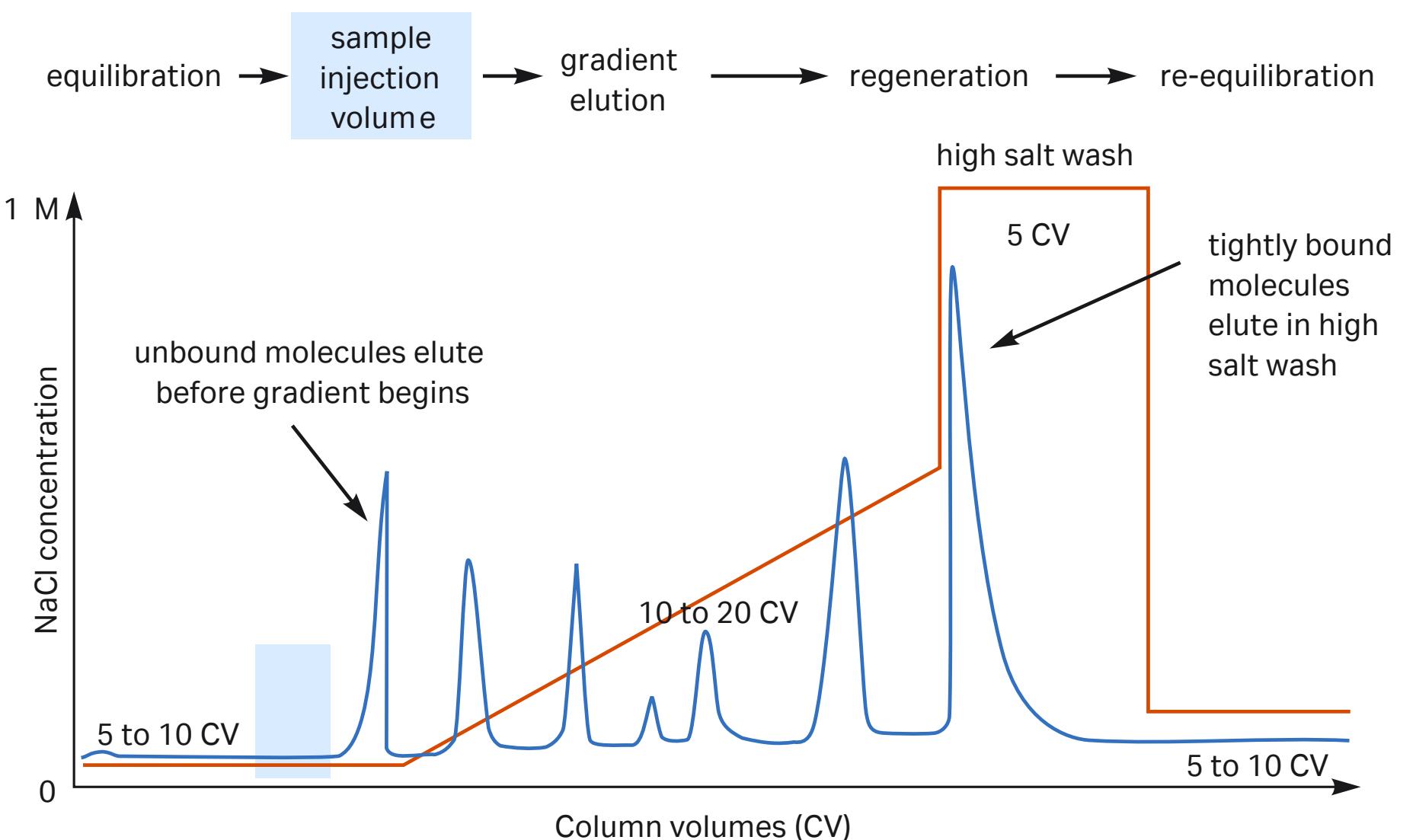
Linear ionic strength gradients, as shown in Figure 2.7, are the most frequently used type of elution and should always be used when starting with an unknown sample (when as many components as possible are bound to the column and eluted differentially to see a total protein profile). At low ionic strengths, competition for charged groups on the IEX medium is at a minimum. Increasing the ionic strength increases competition and reduces the interaction between the medium and the bound substances, which begin to elute. The elution buffer is usually the same buffer salt and pH as the start buffer, but contains additional salt, most often sodium chloride.

 Use of linear gradient elution during method development is strongly recommended. Linear ionic strength gradients are easy to prepare and very reproducible when generated by a suitable chromatography system. The results obtained can then serve as a base from which to optimize the separation.

The retention of charged proteins on the IEX medium is related to the volume of the column and the concentration difference across it:

- Long, shallow gradients give maximum separation between peaks, but separation times will be longer and there will be greater peak broadening
- Short, steep gradients give faster separations and sharper peaks, but peaks will be eluted closer together
- Peaks eluted later in the gradient tend to be slightly broader than those eluted early on

 Select the steepest gradient to give acceptable resolution at the selected pH.



**Fig 2.7.** Typical IEX separation using linear gradient elution. The UV (protein) and conductivity (salt) traces show the elution of protein peaks and the changes in salt concentration during elution.

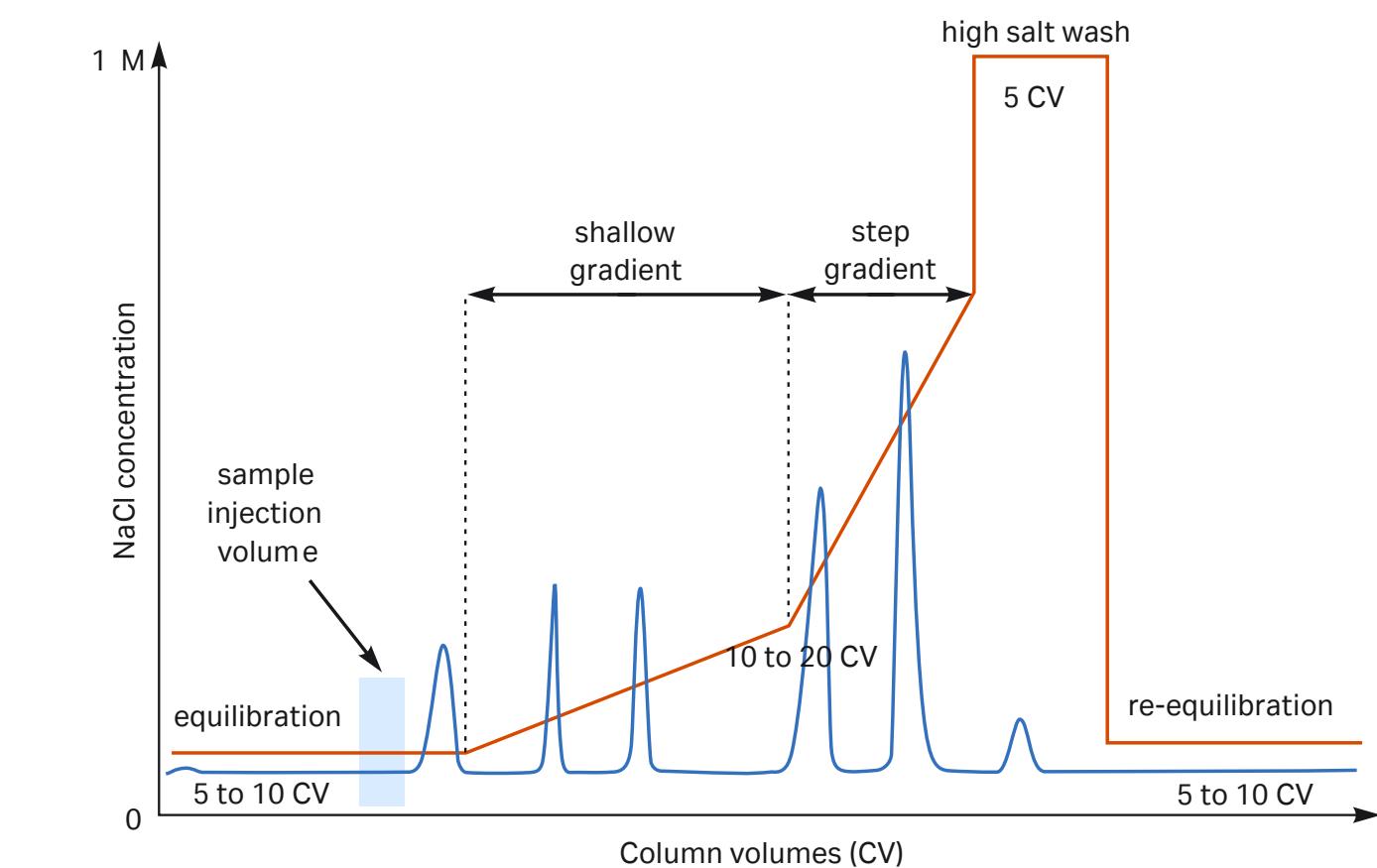
The effects of gradient slope are shown in Figure 2.8.

 If gradient elution volumes are decreased, it might be necessary to decrease the sample load proportionally in order to maintain the same resolution. Similarly, if sample load is increased (within the total capacity of the column), gradient volumes might need increasing to maintain resolution.

Gradients are most efficiently formed using ÄKTA chromatography systems with preprogrammed method templates, which automatically control the mixing of solutions being supplied to a column.

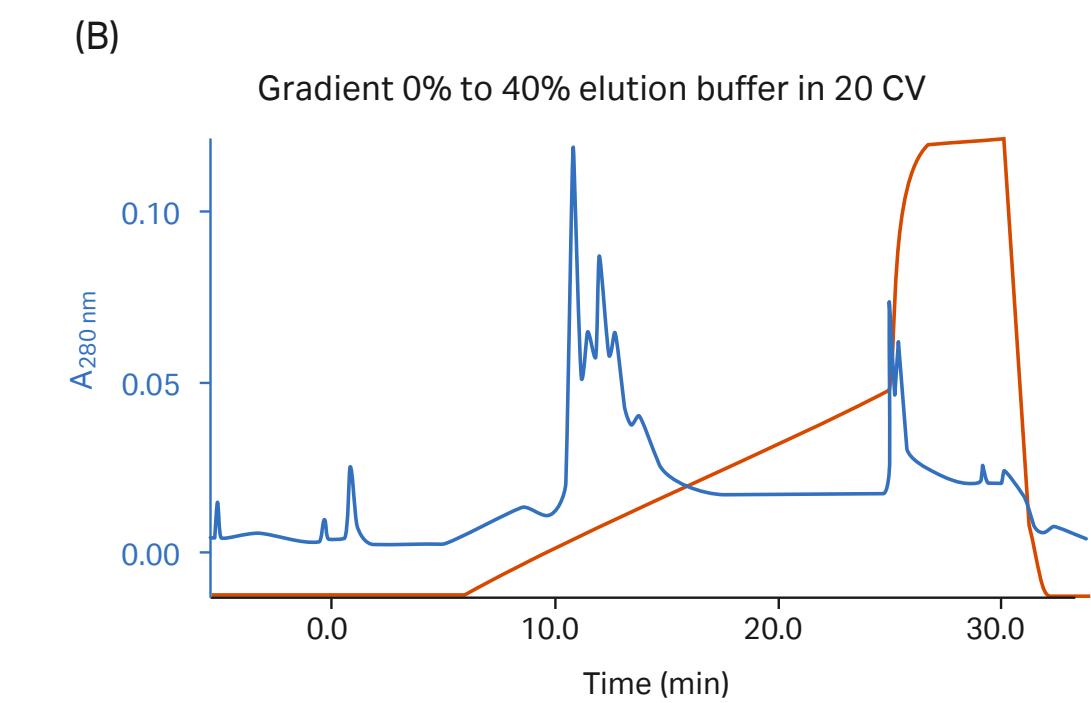
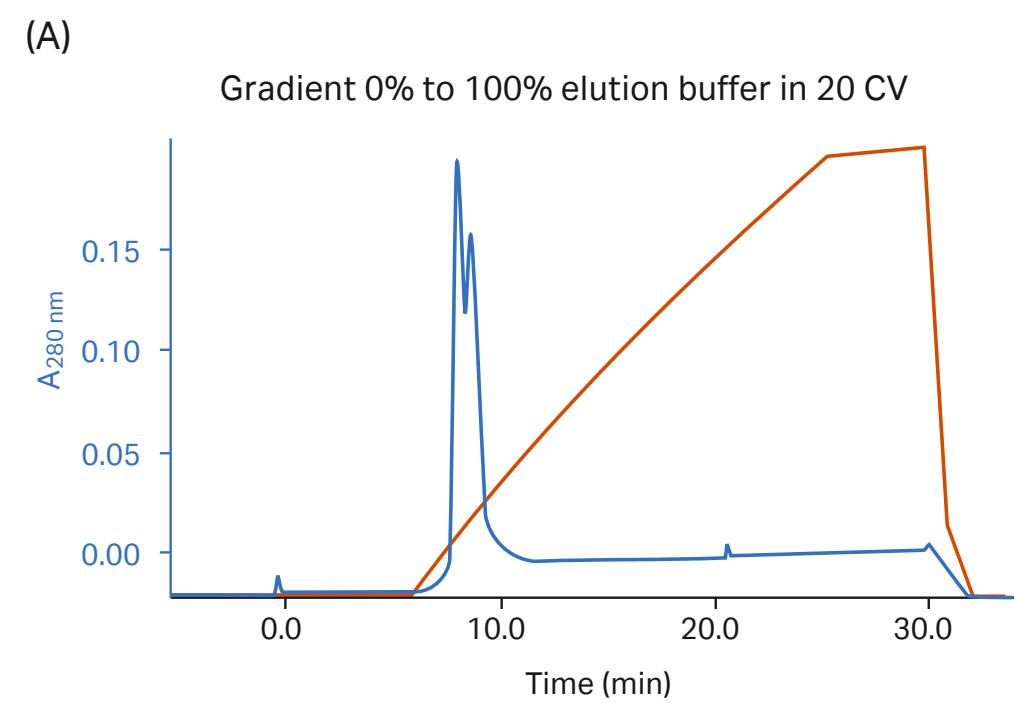
 Accurate buffer preparation, efficient mixing, and the shortest possible flow path between a mixer and the top of a column will help to ensure accurate gradient formation.

For certain separations, when conditions for a high-resolution separation using a linear gradient have been established, it might be possible to *reduce the total separation time* by using a more complex elution profile while maintaining resolution (Fig 2.9). Shallow gradients can be used where maximum resolution is required while steeper gradients can be used in areas where resolution is satisfactory.



**Fig 2.9.** Complex gradient profiles can reduce total separation time for certain separations.

**Column:** Mono Q HR 5/5  
**Sample:** Partially purified dynorphin-converting enzyme  
**Start buffer:** 20 mM Tris, pH 7.0  
**Elution buffer:** 20 mM Tris, 1 M NaCl, pH 7.0  
**Flow rate:** 1 mL/min



**Fig 2.8.** Effect of gradient slope on resolution, in theory and in practice.

## Step elution

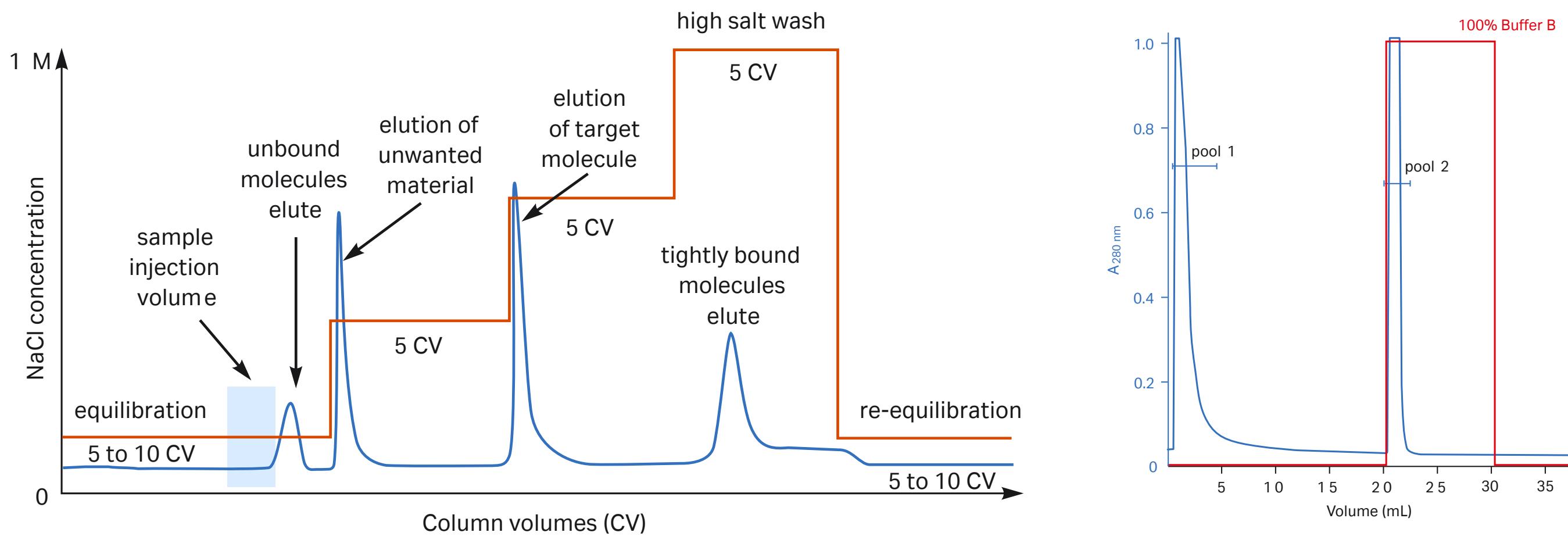
As shown in Figure 2.10, step elutions are performed by sequential addition of the same buffer at increasing ionic strengths. Step elution is technically simple, but care must be taken in the design of the steps and the interpretation of results since substances eluted by a sharp change in ionic strength elute close together, giving a false peak that can contain several components. Peaks tend to have sharp fronts and pronounced tailing since they frequently contain more than one component. Tailing can lead to the appearance of false peaks if a change in ionic strength is introduced too early. For these reasons, use a linear ionic strength gradient when developing a new method.

When an IEX separation has been optimized using gradient elution, changing to step elution reduces the total number of CV used for a separation. This *speeds up separation times and reduces buffer consumption* while retaining the required purity level. Step elutions of this type are often used for routine, large-scale separation. An added advantage of a step elution when used at larger scale is that it is often possible to apply a greater amount of sample, since the molecules which would elute early in a gradient separation no longer take up binding capacity on the column.

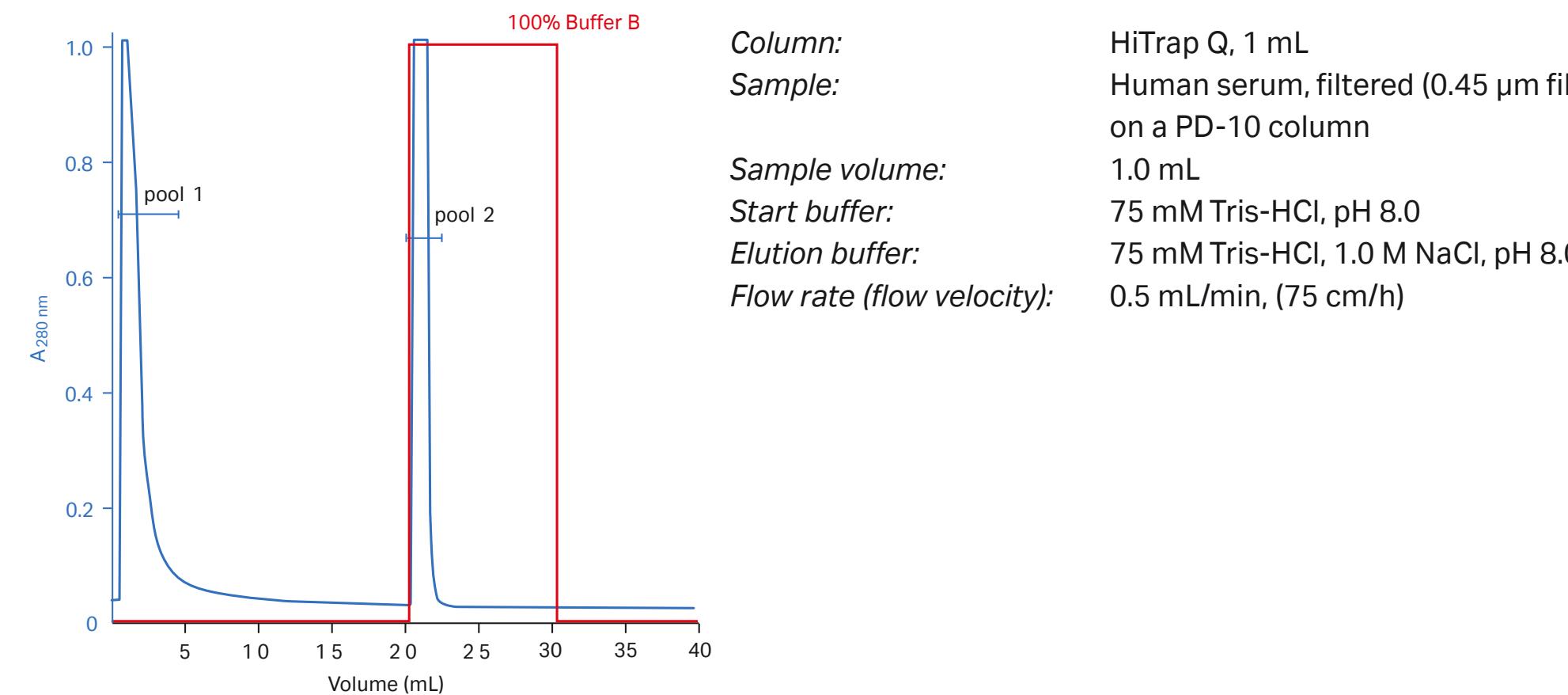
In a *group separation* the molecules of interest are concentrated and rapidly removed from unwanted substances. When binding and elution conditions for a target protein(s) and contaminants have been determined, usually during preliminary gradient elution separations, conditions are chosen to maximize binding of the target protein(s) and minimize binding

of contaminants during sample application. The target protein(s) is then eluted by a single buffer change in an enriched, concentrated form. Figure 2.11 shows an example of such a separation in which a HiTrap Q HP column is used to separate human serum proteins from the unwanted IgG fraction, which passes directly through the column.

 If starting conditions have been chosen to maximize the binding of contaminants, then no change in elution conditions is required since the target protein(s) will pass through the column. For many applications, it is preferable to discard the column rather than spend time and effort removing unwanted bound substances.



**Fig 2.10.** Typical IEX separation using step elution. The UV (protein) and conductivity (salt) traces show the elution of protein peaks and the changes in salt concentration during elution.



**Fig 2.11.** Group separation of serum proteins on HiTrap Q HP.

## pH elution

Since the net charge on a protein is pH-dependent, samples can also be eluted from an IEX medium by altering the pH of the elution buffer. As there is no salt gradient, samples are simply retained on the column at one pH and eluted by increasing or decreasing the pH. The various charged groups in the sample or on the column are titrated until they are neutral or of opposite charge to the medium and the sample elutes.

- Proteins bound to an anion exchanger (Q, DEAE, ANX) will elute as pH is decreased
- Proteins bound to a cation exchanger (SP, S, CM) will elute as pH is increased

Since pH elution will involve working at pH values close to the pI of a protein and since many proteins show minimum solubility close to their pI, precautions must be taken to avoid precipitation on the column (see *Detergents, denaturing agents, and other additives* later in this chapter for information on the use of additives to avoid precipitation).

 Always test in advance the solubility of sample components at the pH and salt concentrations to be used during separation.

For any type of pH elution, care must be taken in the selection and mixing of buffer systems in order to achieve reproducibility. Stepwise pH elution is easier to produce and more reproducible than using a linear pH gradient. Note that for weak ion exchangers the buffer might have to titrate the charged groups on the medium and there will be a short period of re-equilibration before the new pH is reached.

Linear pH gradients are very difficult to produce at constant ionic strength, since simultaneous changes in ionic strength, although small, also occur. These gradients cannot be obtained simply by mixing buffers of different pH in linear volume ratios since the buffering capacities of the systems produced are pH-dependent. A relatively linear gradient can be produced over a narrow pH interval (maximum 2.0 pH units) by mixing two solutions of the same buffer salt adjusted to 1.0 pH unit above and 1.0 pH unit below the pKa for the buffer.

 In general, separation of proteins according to their pI, using chromatofocusing, is likely to provide a more reliable and higher resolution result than attempting to elute proteins from an IEX column using a pH gradient.

## Regeneration and re-equilibration

Include a wash step (regeneration) at the end of every run in order to remove any molecules that are still bound to the medium. Monitor UV absorbance so that the wash step can be shortened or prolonged, as necessary.

A re-equilibration step after washing returns the column to start conditions before applying further samples. Whenever possible, monitor pH and conductivity to check when start conditions have been reached. The re-equilibration step can then be shortened or prolonged as necessary.

-  Increase flow rates during wash and re-equilibration steps to save time between runs.
-  If ionic detergents have been used, wash the column with 5 CV of distilled water, followed by 2 CV of 2 M NaCl. Re-equilibrate with at least 10 CV of start buffer until the UV baseline, eluent pH, and/or conductivity are stable. Organic solvents such as ethanol can be used to remove nonionic detergents. When selecting an organic solvent, check the chemical stability of the medium to determine a suitable concentration.

## Detergents, denaturing agents and other additives

 Any additives used for dissociation, solubilization, metal chelation, and enzyme inhibition should always be checked for their charge characteristics at the working pH. Run blank gradients with additives included in order to check their effect on the chromatographic profile.

 Additives used during sample preparation will be separated from the sample components during IEX. If proteins are seen to precipitate, elute later than expected, or are poorly resolved, add a suitable concentration of the additives used for initial solubilization to the start and elution buffers.

Zwitterionic additives such as betaine can prevent precipitation and can be used at high concentrations without interfering with the gradient elution.

Detergents are useful as solubilizing agents for proteins with low aqueous solubility such as membrane components. Anionic, cationic, zwitterionic, and nonionic (neutral) detergents can be used during IEX.

Denaturing agents such as guanidine hydrochloride or urea can be used for initial solubilization of a sample and during separation. However, they should be avoided unless denaturation is a requirement. Note that, at the pH values used for separation, guanidine is a charged molecule with a counterion and will therefore participate in the ion exchange process in the same way as NaCl.

Examples of commonly used detergents and denaturing agents are given in Table 2.2.

 Temperatures < 10°C can minimize aggregation caused by hydrophobic interactions between sample components. Working at these lower temperatures is an alternative to using a detergent to improve solubility.

**Table 2.2.** Commonly used detergents and denaturing agents

Detergent	Type	Typical conditions for use	Compatibility
Urea		2 to 8 M	anion or cation exchangers
Guanidine hydrochloride		3 to 6 M	anion or cation exchangers
Triton™ X-100	nonionic	2%	anion or cation exchangers
N-Octylglucoside	nonionic	2%	anion or cation exchangers
Sodium dodecyl sulfate	ionic	0.1% to 0.5%	exchange for nonionic detergent during first chromatography step, avoid anion exchangers
Sarcosyl <sup>1</sup>	anionic	1.5%	cation exchangers
Nonidet P40	nonionic		anion or cation exchangers
Polyoxyethylene ethers (e.g., Brij 35)	nonionic		anion or cation exchangers
Polyoxyethylene sorbitans (e.g., Tween™ 80)	nonionic		anion or cation exchangers
CHAPS	zwitterionic, derivative of cholic acid		anion or cation exchangers (pH-dependent)
CHAPSO	zwitterionic, derivative of cholic acid		anion or cation exchangers (pH-dependent)
Deoxycholate	cation		anion exchangers

<sup>1</sup> Sarcosyl is strongly protein-denaturing.

## Developing or optimizing a separation using buffers that contain detergents

1. Select detergents that are compatible with the sample. A detergent must be neutral, zwitterionic, or have the same charge as the IEX medium. Detergents that bind to the medium can be difficult to remove and can affect protein loading capacity, pH, conductivity, and resolution.
2. Determine the minimum concentration that is likely to keep the sample in solution during the separation. Note that different detergents will have different solubilization properties resulting in different peak profiles.
3. Equilibrate the column thoroughly with the detergent solution, using a concentration that is below the critical micelle concentration for the specific detergent.
4. Run blank salt gradients to determine the UV absorbance profile of the detergent and to detect any effect pH. Micelle formation causes light scattering and the appearance of a peak during UV monitoring. If micelle formation is a problem try the following:
  - decrease detergent concentration as far as possible without impairing sample solubility
  - increase detergent concentration to run the gradient above the critical micelle concentration (this creates a gradual rather than abrupt UV increase)
  - change the salt gradient so that the sudden change in UV absorption does not occur during the run
  - change to highly chaotropic salts such as lithium perchlorate or sodium trichloroacetate that can be used at higher concentrations without causing micelle formation
5. Perform test runs with sample to find the detergent that gives optimal solubilization and resolution.

-  A single peak obtained from a 'detergent run' often contains more than one component and should be analyzed carefully. Selecting a different detergent might improve the separation.
-  Detergent concentrations that are too high will increase buffer viscosity so that flow rates must be reduced to avoid overpressure of the column. The concentration of detergent required for solubilization can often be reduced during the separation.
-  Use detergents of the highest quality that are free from salts. Filter buffers that contain detergents under weak suction and ultrasonication for degassing to avoid foaming.
-  Wash previously used columns thoroughly using recommended procedures before working with buffers that contain detergents.

## Reagents to reduce polarity

Monoethylene glycol, glycerol and similar mild reagents that reduce polarity can be included in buffers. Avoid high concentrations (> 40% w/w) as buffer viscosity will increase and can overpressure the column.

## Metal chelators: EDTA, EGTA

EDTA (ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid) and EGTA (ethylene glycol-bis-[2-aminoethyl]-N,N,N',N'-tetraacetic acid) are often used in buffers as metal chelators and can be used with IEX. EDTA and EGTA contain several carboxylic acid groups that interact with anion exchangers. During anion exchange separations, EDTA and EGTA can concentrate as a band on the column and elute during a salt gradient. Both molecules absorb UV and will appear as a peak or as background noise in the chromatogram.

## Analysis of results and further steps

The analysis of results from the first separation will indicate if conditions can be improved to increase the yield, achieve higher purity, speed up the separation, or increase the amount of sample that can be processed in a single run.

Samples eluted using a salt gradient will contain a range of salt concentrations. Dilute or desalt fractions before analysis, if the assay is sensitive to changes in salt concentration.

Commonly used analytical assays are outlined in Appendix 8.

## Scaling-up

For fast separations, it might be easier to repeat a separation several times on a small column and pool the fractions of interest, rather than scale-up to a larger column. However, a larger column can be preferred for routine processing of large sample volumes. General guidelines for scaling-up are shown in Table 2.3.

**Table 2.3.** Guidelines for scaling-up

Maintain	Increase
Column bed height	Column volume, i.e., column diameter
Flow velocity (cm/h)	Flow rate (mL/min)
Sample concentration	Sample load
Gradient elution volume , i.e., number of column volumes used for the gradient	

When scaling-up an IEX separation, follow the points below to ensure the same cycle time for small scale and larger scale separations.

1. Optimize the separation at small scale.
2. Maintain bed height, sample concentration, and the ratio of sample volume: volume of medium.
3. Increase the column volume by increasing the cross-sectional area (diameter) of the column.
4. Run the separation at the same flow velocity (see Appendix 5) as used on the smaller column with the same ratio of gradient volume: column volume.

- ☞ The HiScreen column format has been especially designed for screening and optimizing before scaling up. The higher bed height of HiScreen (10 cm), in comparison with HiTrap (2.5 cm), is suitable for scaling up while keeping the bed height constant.
- ☞ During method development, a small particle size may be used to improve resolution. However, smaller particles can also result in increased back pressure and this factor can become restrictive when scaling-up. Consider using larger particles, preferably of the same medium, to utilize lower back pressures and higher flow rates.
- ☞ When scaling-up, the salt concentrations at which peaks elute can decrease with increased sample loads. As sample is applied to the column, components with a low net charge are displaced by components with a higher net charge. Molecules will elute in the same order, but at a different point in the elution profile.
- ☞ When method scouting, develop the method, whenever possible, on the medium that will be used at the larger scale.
- ☞ For production-scale separations which must satisfy throughput and cleaning-in-place (CIP) requirements of the bioprocess industry, transfer an optimized method as early as possible to a matrix designed for bioprocessing such as SOURCE, Sepharose High Performance, Sepharose Fast Flow, Capto, or Sepharose Big Beads.
- ☞ See Appendix 3 for column selection and packing.

## Equipment selection

Appendix 4 provides a guide to the selection of systems for IEX.

## Care of IEX media

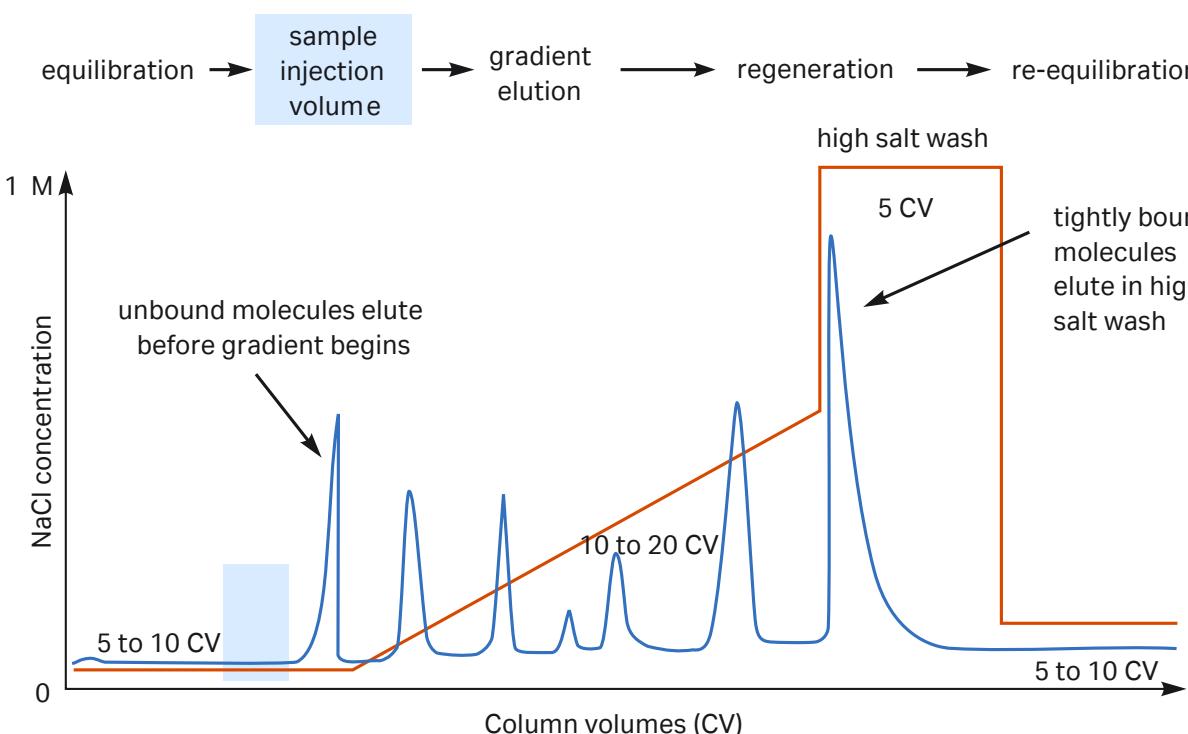
When IEX media have been in use for some time, it might become necessary to remove precipitated proteins or other contaminants that have built up in the column. The need for cleaning can be seen by the appearance of a colored band at the top of the column, a space between the upper adapter and the bed surface, a loss in resolution, or a significant increase in back pressure. A general cleaning procedure for each IEX medium is given in Chapter 3 and Appendix 10 also contains recommended procedures for severe contamination by precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins. In all cases, prevention is better than cure and routine cleaning is recommended.

- ☞ Always use filtered buffers and samples to reduce the need for additional column maintenance. See Appendix 1 for further details on sample preparation.
- ☞ Always degas buffers and keep buffers, columns and samples at the same temperature to avoid the formation of air bubbles in the column.
- ☞ Filter cleaning solutions before use and always re-equilibrate the column with start buffer before the next separation.
- ☞ If an increase in back pressure is observed, either on the pressure monitor or by seeing the surface of the medium move downwards, check that the problem is actually caused by the column before starting the cleaning procedure. Disconnect one piece of equipment at a time (starting at the fraction collector), start the pump, and check the pressure after each piece is disconnected. A dirty on-line filter is a common cause of increased back pressure. Check back pressure at the same stage during each run, since the value can vary within a run during sample injection or when changing to a different buffer.

# Troubleshooting

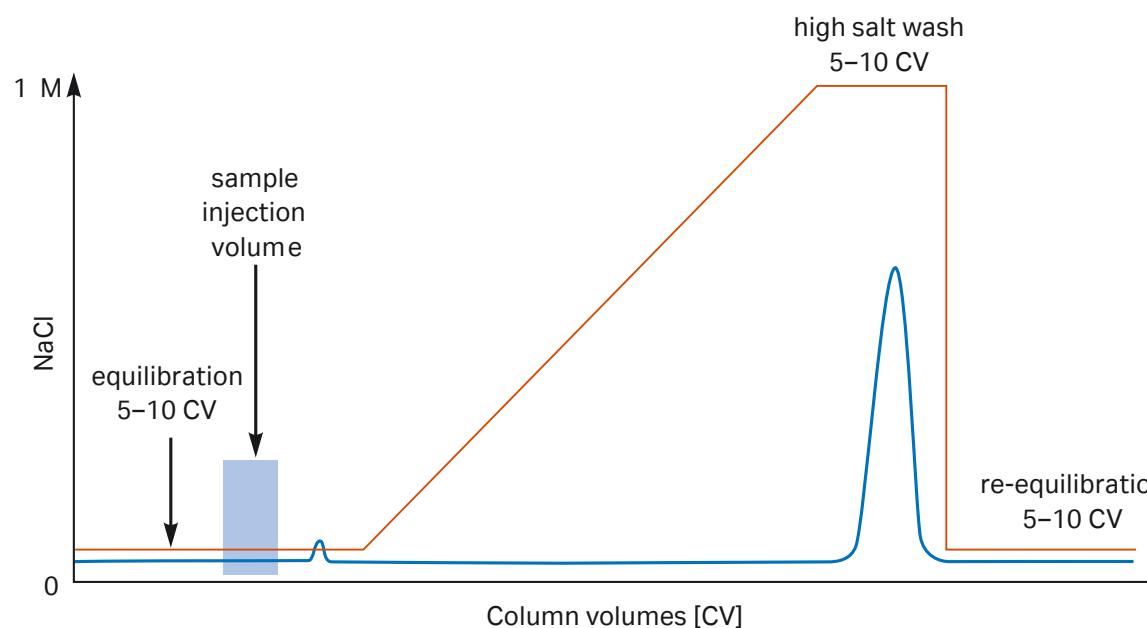
## The desired IEX separation: target proteins well-resolved by gradient elution

If only certain peaks are of interest in this well-resolved, gradient-elution separation, it can be advantageous to transfer to a step elution in order to save time and buffer. The rest of this section focuses on practical problems that might lead to a suboptimal IEX separation.



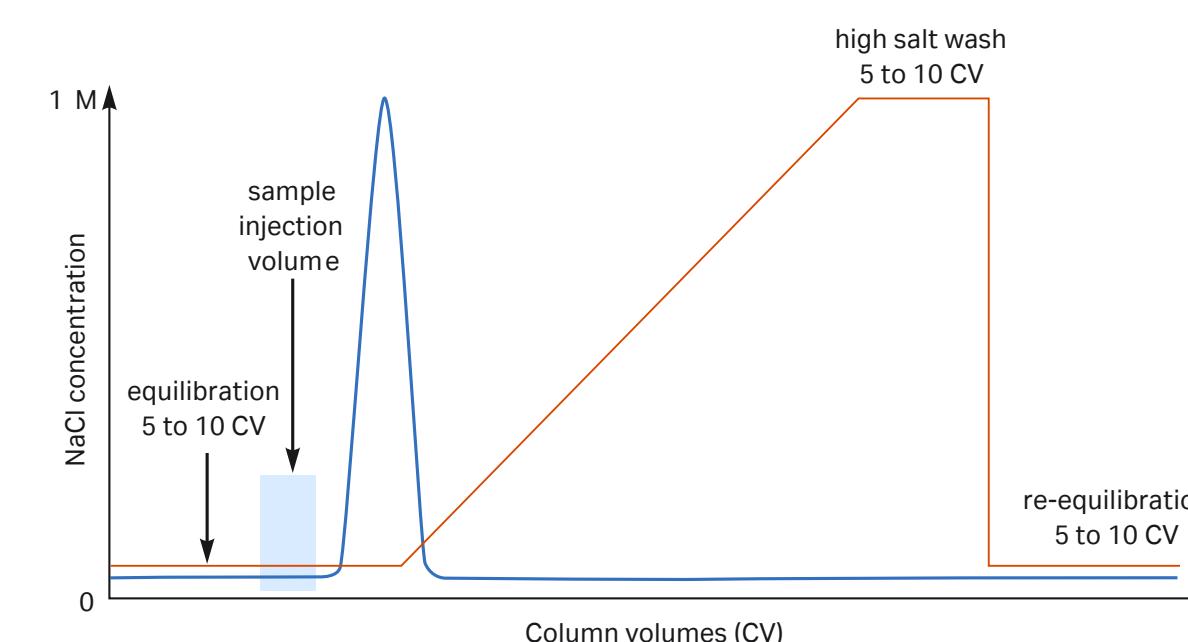
## Sample elutes during high salt wash

Proteins are binding too strongly. Ensure that buffers are in the correct containers. If using an anion exchanger, decrease buffer pH; if using a cation exchanger, increase buffer pH.



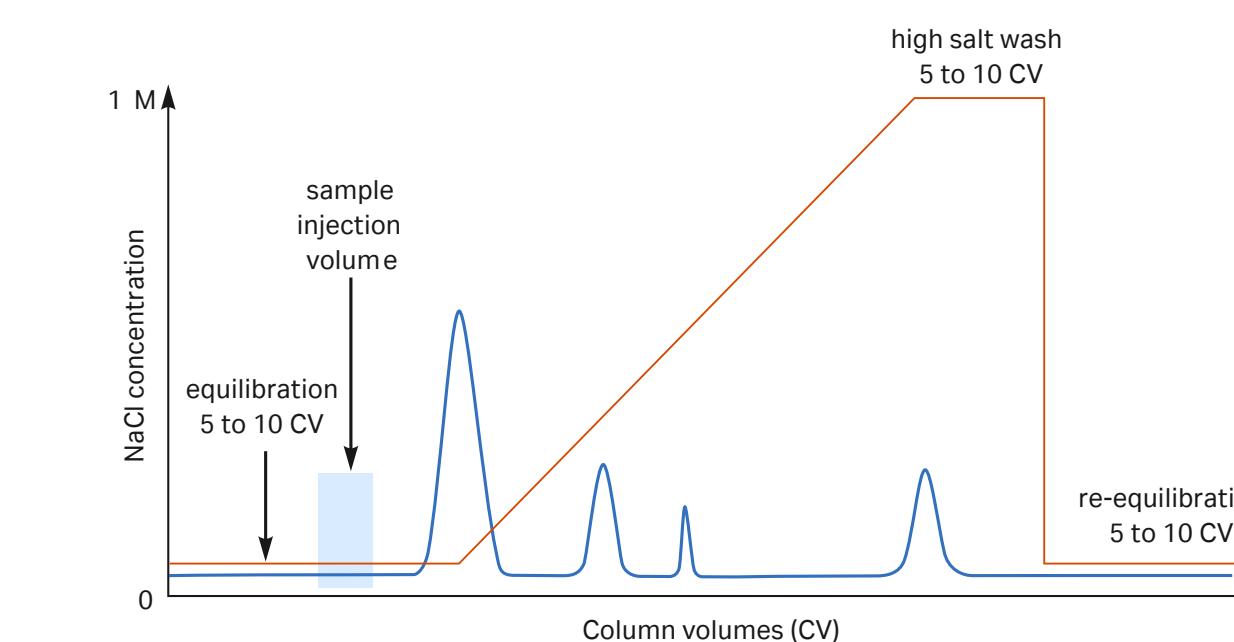
## Sample elutes before salt gradient begins

Ensure that buffers are in the correct containers. Reduce ionic strength of sample by desalting (see *Buffer exchange and desalting* in Appendix 1), or dilution with start buffer. For an anion exchanger, increase buffer pH; for a cation exchanger, decrease buffer pH. If proteins still do not bind at any pH, the column might be contaminated by detergent.



## Sample still eluting when gradient begins

After sample application the UV trace must return to baseline before elution begins, otherwise proteins that do not bind to the column interfere with the separation. Increase the volume of start buffer (equilibration step) before starting the gradient elution.



## Protein(s) of interest eluting late in gradient

Proteins are binding too strongly. Increase ionic strength of gradient. It is preferable to alter pH if a very high salt concentration is required for elution. For an anion exchanger, decrease buffer pH and for a cation exchanger, increase buffer pH. Refer also to Table 2.4.

## Protein(s) of interest eluting too early in gradient

Proteins are not binding strongly. Check ionic strength of gradient. Alter pH, for an anion exchanger, increase buffer pH and for a cation exchanger, decrease buffer pH. Refer also to Table 2.4.

## Protein(s) of interest not sufficiently resolved

Refer to the contents of this chapter to review key parameters for improving resolution. Refer also to Table 2.4.

**Table 2.4.** Troubleshooting

Situation	Cause	Remedy
Reduced or no flow through the column	Outlet closed or pumps not working. Blocked filter, end-piece, adapter, or tubing. Lipoproteins or protein aggregates have precipitated. Protein precipitation in the column. Protein precipitation in the column caused by removal of stabilizing agents during separation. Microbial growth has occurred in the column.	Open outlet. Check pumps for signs of leakage (if using a peristaltic pump, check tubing also). Remove and clean or replace if possible. Always filter samples before use. Remove lipoproteins and aggregates during sample preparation, see Appendix 1. Follow cleaning procedures, see Appendix 10. Modify buffer, pH and/or salt conditions during the run to maintain stability. Follow cleaning procedures, see Appendix 10. Modify start buffer and elution buffer to maintain stability.  Store in the presence of 20% ethanol to prevent microbial growth when not in use. Always filter buffers. Follow cleaning procedures, see Appendix 10.
Peak of interest is poorly resolved from other major peaks.	Sample applied incorrectly. Large mixing spaces at top of or after column. Incorrect buffer pH and/or ionic strength.  Suboptimal elution conditions, e.g., incorrect pH, gradient too steep, flow rate too high. Sample is too viscous. Column is poorly packed. Column overloaded. Lipoproteins or protein aggregates have precipitated. Precipitation of proteins in the column. Microbial growth has occurred in the column.	Check bed surface and top filter for possible contamination. Adjust top adapter to surface of medium if necessary. Reduce all post-column volumes. Check pH and ionic strength to ensure that column was re-equilibrated after previous run. Check conditions required. Prepare new solutions.  Alter elution conditions: alter pH, use shallower gradient, reduce flow rate (listed in priority order).  Dilute with buffer. Maintain protein concentration below 50 mg/mL. Check column efficiency, see Appendix 3. Repack if needed. Use prepacked columns. Decrease sample load.  Remove lipoproteins and aggregates during sample preparation (see Appendix 1). Modify buffer, pH and/or salt conditions during the run to maintain stability.  Store in the presence of 20% ethanol to prevent microbial growth. Always filter buffers. Follow cleaning procedures, see Appendix 10.
Proteins do not bind or elute as expected.	Proteins or lipids have precipitated on the column or column filter. Sample not filtered properly. Sample has changed during storage.	Clean the column and exchange or clean the filter. Check pH and salt stability of sample. Clean the column, filter the sample and repeat. Prepare fresh samples.

continues on following page

Situation	Cause	Remedy
	Protein might be unstable or inactive in the elution buffer. Column equilibration incomplete. Incorrect buffer pH and/or ionic strength. Proteins are forming aggregates and binding strongly to the medium. Sample or buffer conditions are different from previous runs. Microbial growth has occurred in the column.	Determine the pH and salt stability of the protein. Repeat or prolong the equilibration step until conductivity and pH are constant. Check conditions required. Prepare new solutions. Use urea or zwitterions, betaine up to 10%, taurine up to 4%. Check sample and buffer conditions. Store in the presence of 20% ethanol to prevent microbial growth when not in use. Always filter buffers. Follow cleaning procedures, see Appendix 10.
Protein elutes later than expected or not at all.	Incorrect buffer pH. Ionic strength too low. Ionic interactions between protein and matrix. Hydrophobic interactions between protein and matrix.	Check pH meter calibration. Use a buffer pH closer to the pI of the protein. Increase salt concentration in elution buffer. Maintain ionic strength of buffers above 50 mM. Reduce salt concentration to minimize hydrophobic interaction. Increase pH. Add suitable detergent or organic solvent, e.g., 5% isopropanol.
Protein elutes earlier than expected (during the wash phase)	Ionic strength of sample or buffer is too high. Incorrect pH conditions. Column equilibration incomplete.	Decrease ionic strength of sample or buffer. Increase pH (anion exchanger). Decrease pH (cation exchanger). Repeat or prolong the equilibration step until conductivity and pH are constant.
Leading or very rounded peaks in chromatogram.	Channeling in the column.  Column overloaded.  Column contaminated.	Repack column using a thinner slurry of medium. Check column packing (see Appendix 3).  Decrease sample load and repeat.  Clean using recommended procedures.
Peaks are tailing.	Incorrect start buffer conditions, sample is not binding to column. Sample too viscous. Column packing too loose.	Adjust pH. Check salt concentration in start buffer. Dilute in application buffer. Check column efficiency (see Appendix 3). Repack using a higher flow rate. Use prepacked columns.

*continues on following page*

<b>Situation</b>	<b>Cause</b>	<b>Remedy</b>
Peaks have a leading edge.	Column packing compressed.	Check column efficiency (see Appendix 3). Repack using a lower flow rate. Use prepacked columns.
Medium/beads appears in eluent.	Column packing compressed. Bed support end piece is loose or broken. Column operated at too high pressure. Medium has been damaged during column packing.	Check column efficiency (see Appendix 3). Repack using a slower flow rate. Use prepacked columns. Replace or tighten. Do not exceed recommended operating pressure for medium or column. Do not use magnetic stirrers when equilibrating loose IEX medium
Low recovery of activity, but normal recovery of protein.	Protein might be unstable or inactive in the buffer. Enzyme separated from cofactor or similar.	Determine the pH and salt stability of the protein. Test by pooling aliquots from the fractions and repeating the assay.
Protein yield lower than expected.	Protein might have been degraded by proteases. Adsorption to filter during sample preparation. Sample precipitates. Hydrophobic proteins. Nonspecific adsorption.	Add protease inhibitors to the sample and buffers to prevent proteolytic digestion. Run sample through a medium such as Benzamidine Sepharose 4 Fast Flow (high sub) to remove trypsin-like serine proteases. Use another type of filter. Check pH and salt conditions, adjust to improve sample solubility. Add denaturing agents, polarity reducing agents or detergents. Add 10% ethylene glycol to running buffer to prevent hydrophobic interactions. Reduce salt concentration to minimize hydrophobic interaction. Add suitable detergent or organic solvent, e.g., 5% isopropanol. If necessary, add 10% ethylene glycol to running buffer to prevent hydrophobic interactions.
Peaks too small.	Sample absorbs poorly at chosen wavelength. Different assay conditions have been used before and after the chromatographic step. Excessive band broadening.	If appropriate, check absorbance range on monitor. If satisfactory, use a different wavelength, e.g., 214 nm instead of 280 nm. Use same assay conditions for all assays. Check column packing. Repack if necessary.
More sample is recovered than expected.	Protein co-eluting with other substances.	Optimize conditions to improve resolution. Check buffer conditions used for assay before and after the run. Check selection of medium.
More activity is recovered than was applied to the column.	Different assay conditions have been used before and after the chromatography step. Removal of inhibitors during separation.	Use same assay conditions for all assays.

*continues on following page*

<b>Situation</b>	<b>Cause</b>	<b>Remedy</b>
Back pressure increases during a run or during successive runs.	Bed compressed. Microbial growth.  Turbid sample.	If possible, repack the column or use a new column. Check sample preparation. Store in the presence of 20% ethanol to prevent microbial growth. Always filter buffers. Follow cleaning procedures, see Appendix 10.  Improve sample preparation (see Appendix 1). Improve sample solubility: add betaine (max. 10% w/v at 25°C), taurine (max. 4% w/v at 25°C, below pH 8.5) or glycerol (1% to 2 %). For hydrophobic samples, add ethylene glycol, urea, detergents, or organic solvents.
	Precipitation of protein in the column filter and/or at the top of the bed.  Incorrect pH is causing precipitation.  Precipitation of lipoproteins at increased ionic strength.	Clean using recommended methods. If possible, exchange or clean filter or use a new column. Include any additives that were used for initial sample solubilization in the running buffer.  Calibrate pH meter, prepare new solutions and try again. Change pH.  Lipoproteins are removed prior to chromatography by the addition of 10% dextran sulfate (final 0.2%), and 1 M calcium chloride (final 0.5 M).
Air bubbles in the bed.	Buffers not properly degassed.  Column packed or stored at cool temperature and then warmed up.	Degas buffers thoroughly.  Remove small bubbles by passing degassed buffer through the column; take special care if buffers are used after storage in a fridge or cold room.  Do not allow column to warm in sunlight or heating system.  Repack column if possible (see Appendix 3).
Cracks in the bed.	Large air leak in column.	Check all connections for leaks.  Repack the column if possible (see Appendix 3).
Negative peaks at solvent front.	Refractive index effects.	Exchange the sample into start buffer.
Unexpected peaks in chromatogram.	Buffer impurities.	Clean the buffer by running it through a precolumn. Use high quality reagents.
Peaks appear on gradients.	Incomplete elution of previous sample.	Wash the column according to recommended blank methods.
Spikes in chromatogram.	Air bubble trapped in UV monitor flow cell.	Always use degassed buffers.
UV baseline rises with gradient.	Micelle formation as salt concentration changes.  Buffer impurities.	Work below or above the critical micelle concentration of any detergents being used or change the gradient so that the increase in UV absorption does not occur while the samples are eluting.  Use high quality reagents.

03

# Ion exchange chromatography media

## Introduction

Historically, several different types of material have been used as a base matrix to which positively or negatively charged groups are covalently attached to form an IEX medium. Chapter 1 describes how the matrix characteristics determine chromatographic properties such as efficiency, capacity, and recovery as well as chemical and physical stability and flow properties.

IEX media such as Sepharose High Performance, Sepharose 6 Fast Flow, SOURCE, and Capto have much improved flow properties compared to earlier media and show no change in bed volume under conditions of changing ionic strength or pH. Stringent conditions can be used for cleaning the media when required and there is no need for frequent column repacking. Most of these media are also designed to meet the throughput and cleaning-in-place requirements for large-scale industrial chromatography. The following descriptions of different IEX media will start from high-resolution media for purification and analysis in small scale, continue with media for many standard applications, and end up with media for larger scales.

## MiniBeads: purification or analysis of microgram to milligram quantities with high resolution

- 👉 Use MiniBeads for polishing steps at microscale when high resolution is essential and the capacity of the prepacked column is sufficient.
- 👉 Use MiniBeads for intermediate purification if only microgram to milligram quantities are required, if there is no requirement for scale-up, and if the capacity of the prepacked column is sufficient. To avoid column blockage, it is especially important to remove particulate matter before using MiniBeads.
- 👉 Use MiniBeads for faster, higher resolution separations compared to MonoBeads, if the capacity of the prepacked column is sufficient.
- 👉 Run MiniBeads on ÄKTA chromatography systems such as ÄKTA pure 25 and HPLC systems. HPLC systems are recommended for optimal performance of the smallest columns (PC 3.2/3). Appendix 4 provides guidance on selecting the right ÄKTA system.

MiniBeads are based on a nonporous, monodispersed matrix of rigid, hydrophilic polymer particles, substituted with quaternary amino (Q) or methyl sulfonate (S) groups. The very small size (3 µm), uniformity and physical rigidity of the particles create excellent conditions for extremely high-resolution ion exchange separations at relatively high flow rates and low back pressures (nonuniform, porous particles would create higher back pressures, reduce flow rate and impair achievable resolution).

Such high resolution is essential for successful separation of complex samples in the picogram (pg) to microgram (µg) scale. The strong ion exchange groups (Q and S) maintain their charge over a broad pH range, allowing selection of the most suitable pH for each application.

### Media characteristics

Composition: rigid, nonporous matrix of monodisperse, hydrophilic polymer particles (3 µm) substituted with quaternary amino (Q) or methyl sulfonate (S) groups (Table 3.1).

**Table 3.1.** Characteristics of MiniBeads media

Product	Functional group	pH stability <sup>1</sup>	Mean particle size
<b>Strong anion exchanger</b>			
Mini Q	-CH <sub>2</sub> N <sup>+</sup> -(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>	Long term: 3–11 Short term: 1–14	3 µm (monosized)
<b>Strong cation exchanger</b>			
Mini S	-CH <sub>2</sub> -SO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Long term: 3–11 Short term: 1–14	3 µm (monosized)

<sup>1</sup> Long-term pH stability refers to the pH interval where the medium is stable over a long period of time without adverse side effects on the chromatography performance. Short-term pH stability refers to the pH interval for regeneration, cleaning-in-place, and sanitization procedures. All ranges are estimates based on experience and knowledge gained at Cytiva.

## Purification options

Mini Q and Mini S™ media are available prepacked in Precision (PC 3.2/3) and Tricorn™ (4.6/50 PE) columns for high-resolution purification of biomolecules (Fig 3.1). The purification options for the prepacked columns are shown in Table 3.2.



**Fig 3.1.** Mini Q and Mini S media are available prepacked in Precision (PC 3.2/3) and Tricorn (4.6/50 PE) columns.

**Table 3.2.** Purification options for Mini Q and Mini S prepacked columns

Product, column volume	Binding capacity per column	Maximum flow rate (mL/min)	Recommended working flow rate range (mL/min)	Working pH range <sup>1</sup>	Maximum operating back pressure <sup>2</sup> (MPa/psi) 1 MPa = 10 bar
<b>Strong anion exchangers</b>					
Mini Q PC 3.2/3, 0.24 mL <sup>3</sup>	1.44 mg ( $\alpha$ -amylase, $M_r$ 49 000) 1.44 mg (trypsin inhibitor, $M_r$ 20 100)	1.0	0.1 to 1.0	3 to 11	10/1450
Mini Q 4.6/50 PE, 0.8 mL	4.8 mg ( $\alpha$ -amylase, $M_r$ 49 000) 4.8 mg (trypsin inhibitor, $M_r$ 20 100)	2.0	0.5 to 2.0	3 to 11	18/2600
<b>Strong cation exchangers</b>					
Mini S PC 3.2/3, 0.24 mL <sup>3</sup>	1.2 mg (ribonuclease, $M_r$ 13 700) 1.2 mg (lysozyme, $M_r$ 14 300)	1.0	0.1 to 1.0	3 to 11	10/1450
Mini S 4.6/50 PE, 0.8 mL	4 mg (ribonuclease, $M_r$ 13 700) 4 mg (lysozyme, $M_r$ 14 300)	2.0	0.5 to 2.0	3 to 11	18/2600

<sup>1</sup> Working pH range refers to the pH interval where the medium can be operated as intended without adverse long-term effects.

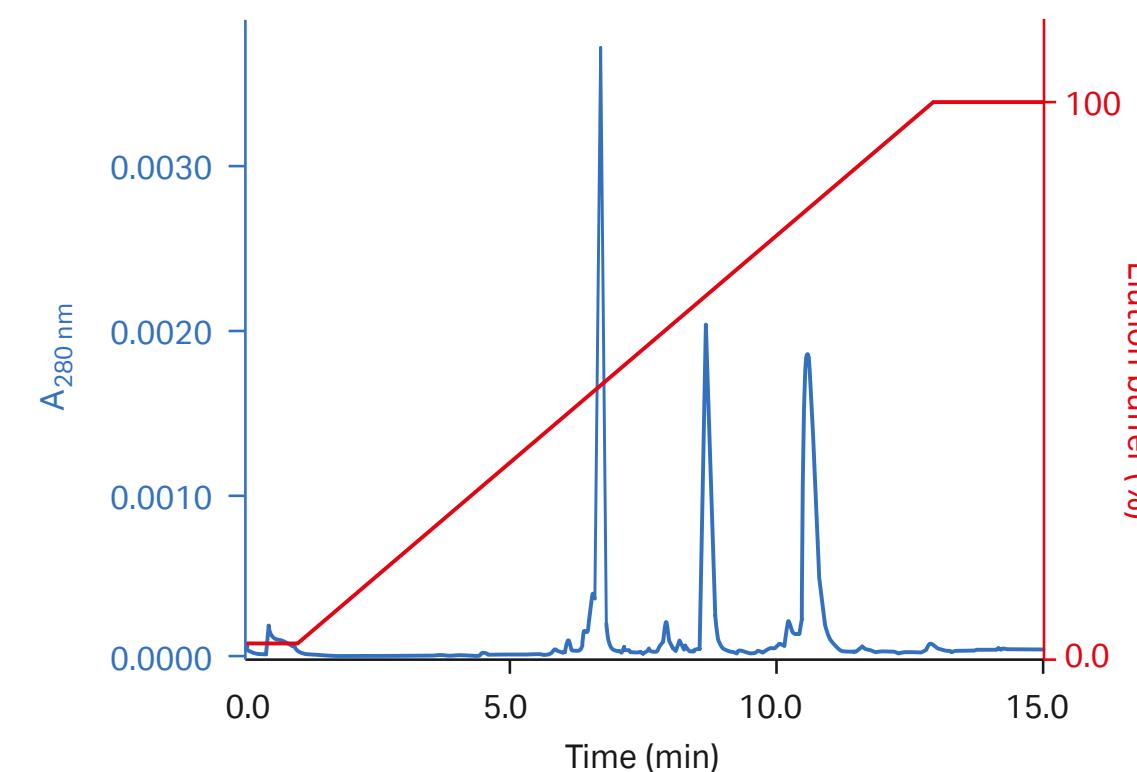
<sup>2</sup> Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the medium begins to compress.

<sup>3</sup> Requires a Precision Column Holder for attachment to HPLC systems, see Appendix 4.

## Purification examples

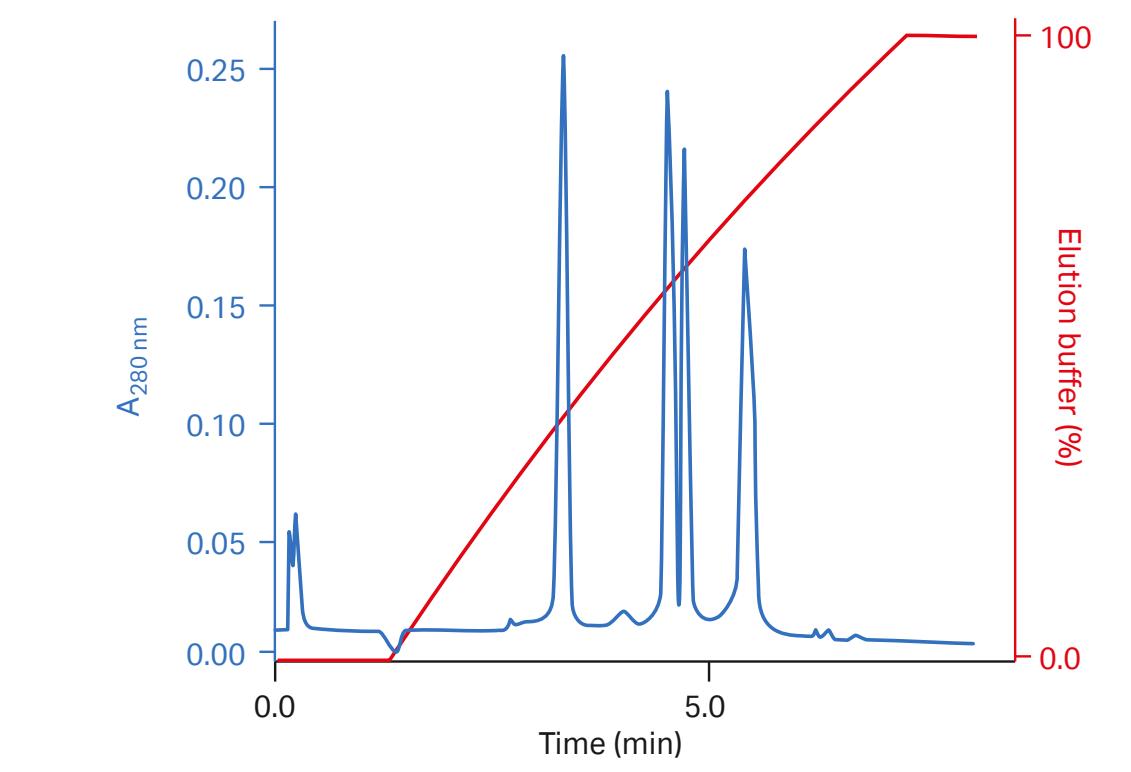
### Fast separations at high resolution

Column: Mini S 4.6/50 PE  
Sample:  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsinogen A (25  $\mu$ g/mL), ribonuclease A (75  $\mu$ g/mL), lysozyme (25  $\mu$ g/mL)  
Sample volume: 200  $\mu$ L  
Start buffer: 20 mM sodium acetate, pH 5.0  
Elution buffer: 20 mM sodium acetate, 400 mM NaCl, pH 5.0  
Flow rate: 0.83 mL/min  
Gradient: 0% to 100% elution buffer in 12 CV



**Fig 3.2.** Separation of a protein mixture on Mini S 4.6/50.

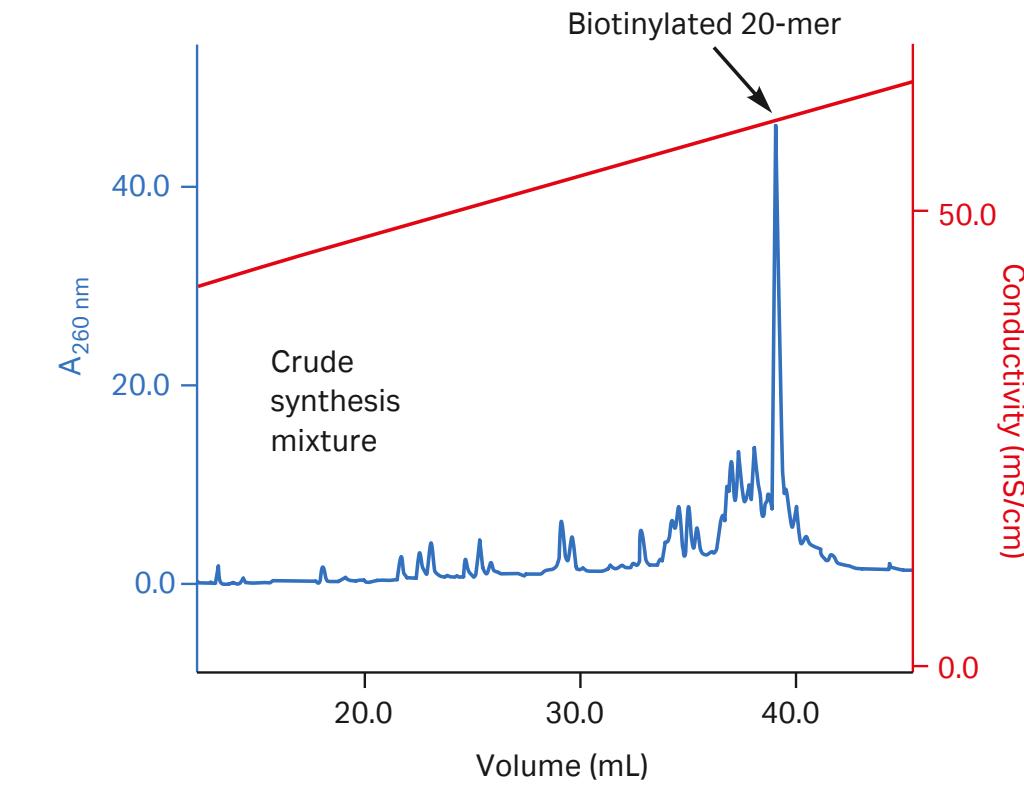
Column: Mini S PC 3.2/3  
Sample:  
Sample load:  
Start buffer:  
Elution buffer:  
Flow rate (velocity):  
Gradient:



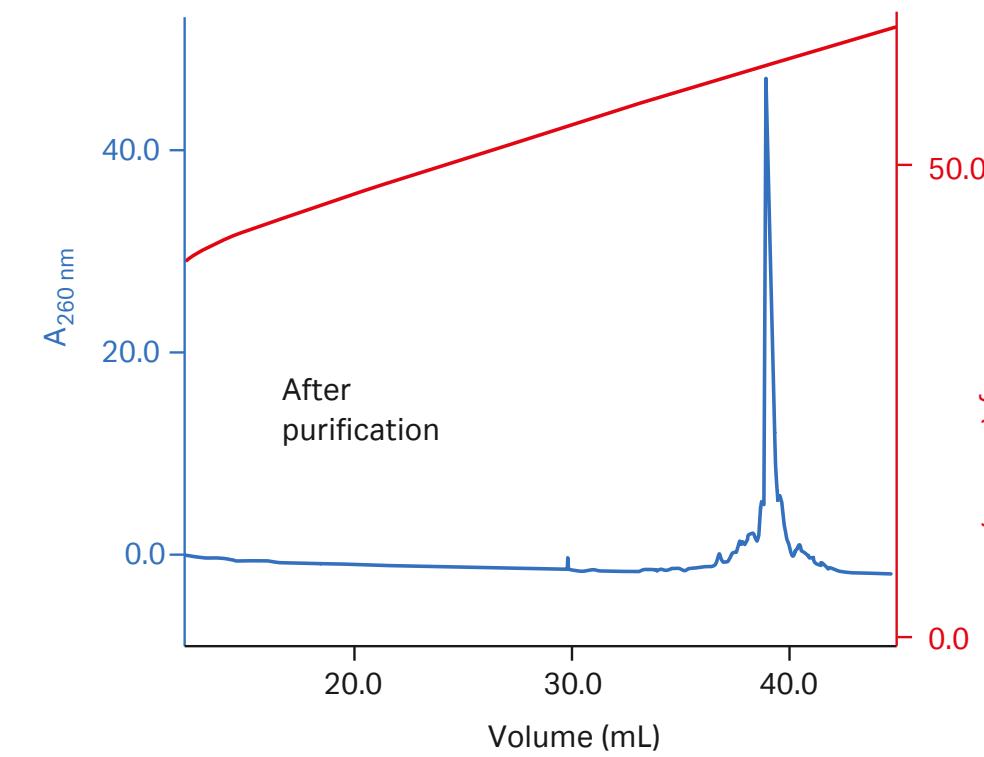
**Fig 3.3.** Mini S PC 3.2/3 gives fast, high-resolution separation.

### Purity check

Column: Mini Q 4.6/50 PE  
Start buffer: 10 mM NaOH  
Elution buffer: 10 mM NaOH, 2 M NaCl  
Flow rate: 1.0 mL/min

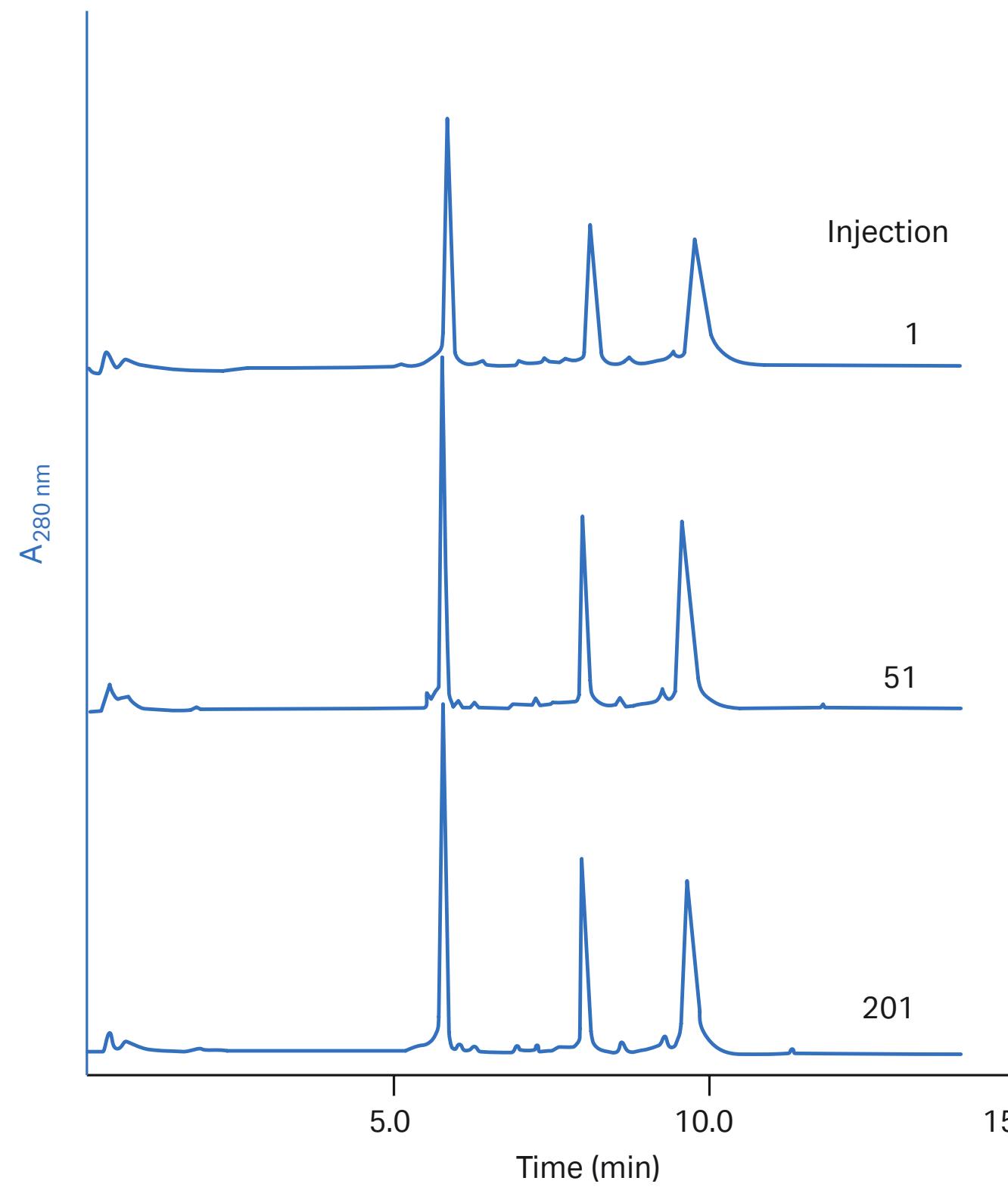


**Fig 3.4.** Purity check of 5'-biotinylated synthetic oligonucleotide 20-mer on Mini Q 4.6/50 PE before and after purification on a RESOURCE RPC column.



## Long term reproducibility

Column: Mini S PC 3.2/3  
Sample: Chymotrypsinogen A, ribonuclease A, lysozyme, 6 mg in ratio 1:3:1  
Start buffer: 20 mM acetic acid, pH 5.0  
Elution buffer: 20 mM acetic acid, 400 mM NaCl, pH 5.0  
Flow rate: 0.4 mL/min  
Gradient: 0% to 100% elution buffer in 12 min (20 CV)



**Fig 3.5.** Chromatograms from the first, 51st, and 201st separation of a series run on the same Mini S PC 3.2/3 column. The same consistent reproducibility has been confirmed on Mini Q PC 3.2/3 (data not shown).

## Performing a separation

Guidelines for selection of media, buffer, pH, and ionic strength conditions and method optimization are given in Chapter 2.

Use the instructions given here as a basis from which to optimize a separation.

- ☞ Correct sample and buffer preparation is essential in order to achieve optimal separation and avoid any deterioration in column performance, especially when using small particles such as MiniBeads. Samples must be fully dissolved and free from particles or other material likely to interfere with the separation. Refer to Chapter 2 and Appendix 1 for recommendations and advice on sample preparation.
- ☞ Filter buffers after all salts and additives have been included. Use high quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions through 0.22  $\mu\text{m}$  filters. To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, ensure that column and buffers are at the same temperature when preparing for a run.
- ☞ The pH of the start buffer should be at least 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit above the pI of the target substance when using an anion exchanger (Q) and 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit below the pI of the target substance when using a cation exchanger (S). See Appendix 2 for recommendations on volatile and nonvolatile buffer systems for anion and cation exchangers.

For samples with unknown charge properties, try the following:

### anion exchange (Q)

start buffer: 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0  
elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 8.0

### cation exchange (S)

start buffer: 20 mM 2-(N-Morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid (MES), pH 6.0  
elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 6.0

- ☞ Users of ÄKTA systems with automatic buffer preparation functionality can select one of the buffer recipes recommended for anion exchange chromatography at pH 8.0 or cation exchange chromatography at pH 6.0, see ÄKTA Laboratory-scale Chromatography Systems: Instrument Management Handbook, 29010831.

## First-time use or after long-term storage

1. To remove ethanol, wash with 4 CV of distilled water at 0.1 mL/min (Mini Q and S PC 3.2/3, 0.24 mL columns) or 0.5 mL/min (Mini Q and S 4.6/50 PE, 0.8 mL columns). This step ensures removal of ethanol and avoids the risk of precipitation if buffer salts were to come into contact with the ethanol. The step can be omitted if precipitation is not likely to be a problem.
2. Wash with 4 CV of start buffer at 0.4 mL/min (Mini Q and S PC 3.2/3, 0.24 mL columns) or 0.8 mL/min (Mini Q and S 4.6/50 PE, 0.8 mL columns).
3. Wash with 4 CV of elution buffer, same flow as step 2.
4. Wash with 4 CV of start buffer, same flow as step 2.

## Separation by gradient elution

Flow rates: 0.4 mL/min (PC 3.2/3, 0.24 mL columns) or 0.8 mL/min (4.6/50 PE, 0.8 mL columns). Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV and an increasing ionic strength up to 0.5 M NaCl (50%*B*).
5. Wash with 5 CV of 1 M NaCl (100%*B*) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

## Separation by step elution

- Although separations by step elution (see Chapter 2) can be performed using MiniBeads, gradient elution is recommended to maximize resolution.
- If ionic detergents have been used, wash the column with 5 CV of distilled water, followed by 2 CV of 2 M NaCl. Re-equilibrate with at least 10 CV of start buffer until the UV baseline, eluent pH, and/or conductivity are stable. Organic solvents such as ethanol can be used to remove nonionic detergents. When selecting an organic solvent, check the chemical stability of the medium to determine a suitable concentration.
- Refer to Chapter 2 for advice on optimizing the separation. Check column performance regularly by determining column efficiency and peak symmetry. See Appendix 3.

## Cleaning

Correct preparation of samples and buffers and application of a high salt wash (1 M NaCl) at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing back pressure or complete blockage are all indications that the medium needs to be cleaned using more stringent procedures in order to remove contaminants.

- Reverse the direction of flow during column cleaning so that contaminants do not need to pass through the entire length of the column. The number of column volumes and time required for each cleaning step can vary according to the degree of contamination.

## Removing common contaminants

1. Wash with 2 CV of 2 M NaCl at 0.2 mL/min.
2. Wash with 4 CV of 1 M NaOH at 0.2 mL/min.
3. Wash with 2 CV of 2 M NaCl at 0.2 mL/min.
4. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water at 0.2 mL/min until the UV-baseline and eluent pH are stable.
5. Wash with at least 4 CV of start buffer or storage buffer at 0.2 mL/min until pH and conductivity values have reached the required values.

To remove precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins, refer to Appendix 1.

## Chemical stability

For daily use, MiniBeads are stable in all common aqueous buffers in the pH range of 3 to 11 and in the presence of additives such as denaturing agents (8 M urea or 6 M guanidine hydrochloride), nonionic or ionic detergents, and up to 30% acetonitrile in aqueous buffers. Note that aqueous solutions of urea, ethylene glycol, and similar compounds will increase the back pressure due to increased viscosity.

MiniBeads can be used with organic solutions such as dimethylsulfoxide, dimethylformamide, or formic acid, but the separation properties of the media will change.

 Avoid anionic detergents with Mini Q. Avoid cationic detergents with Mini S. Avoid oxidizing agents.

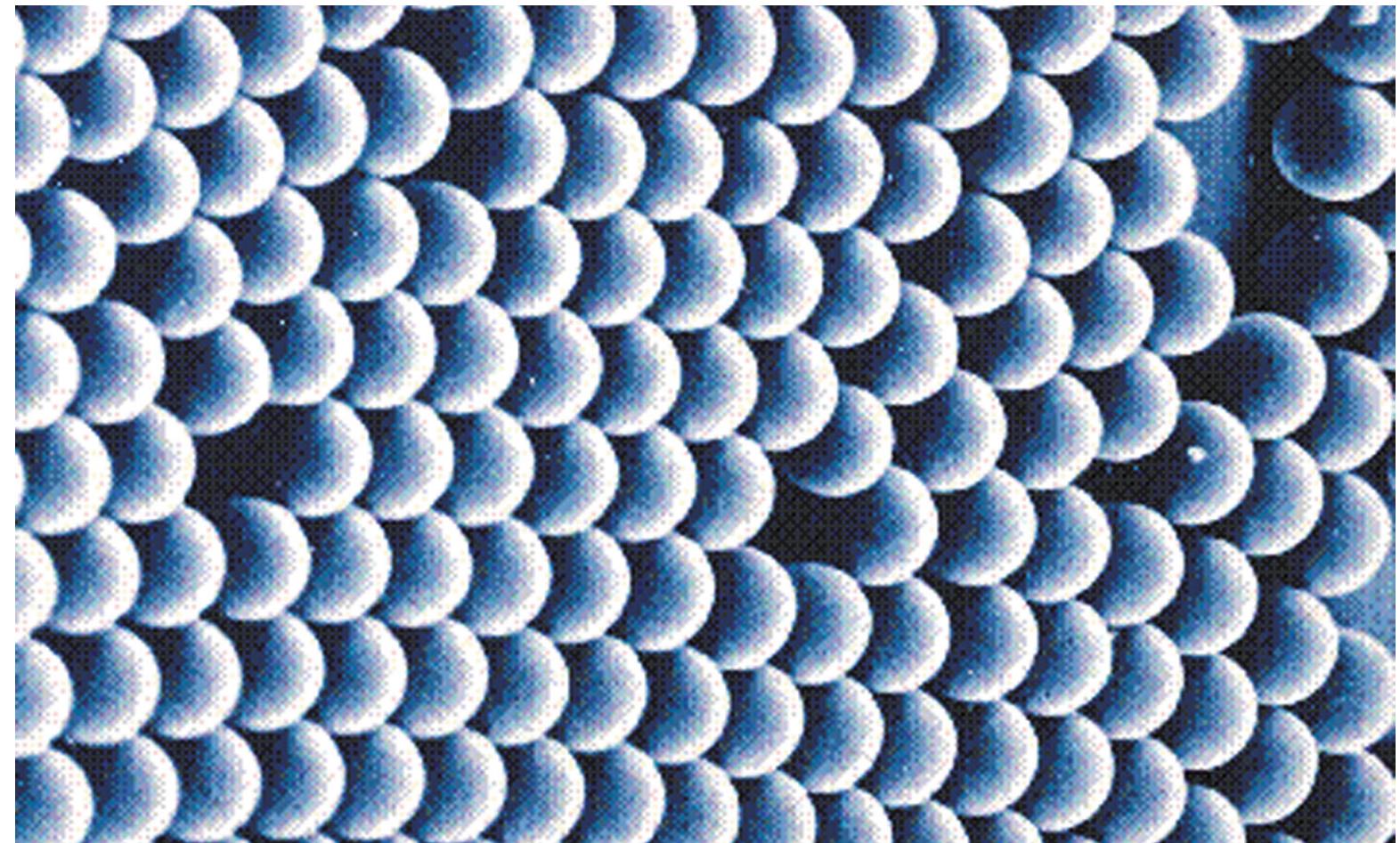
## Storage

For column storage, wash with 4 CV of distilled water followed by 4 CV of 20% ethanol. Degas the ethanol/water mixture thoroughly and apply at a low flow rate to avoid overpressuring the column. Store at room temperature or, for long periods, store at 4°C to 8°C. Whenever possible, use the storage and shipping device if supplied by the manufacturer. Ensure that the column is sealed well to avoid drying out. Do not freeze.

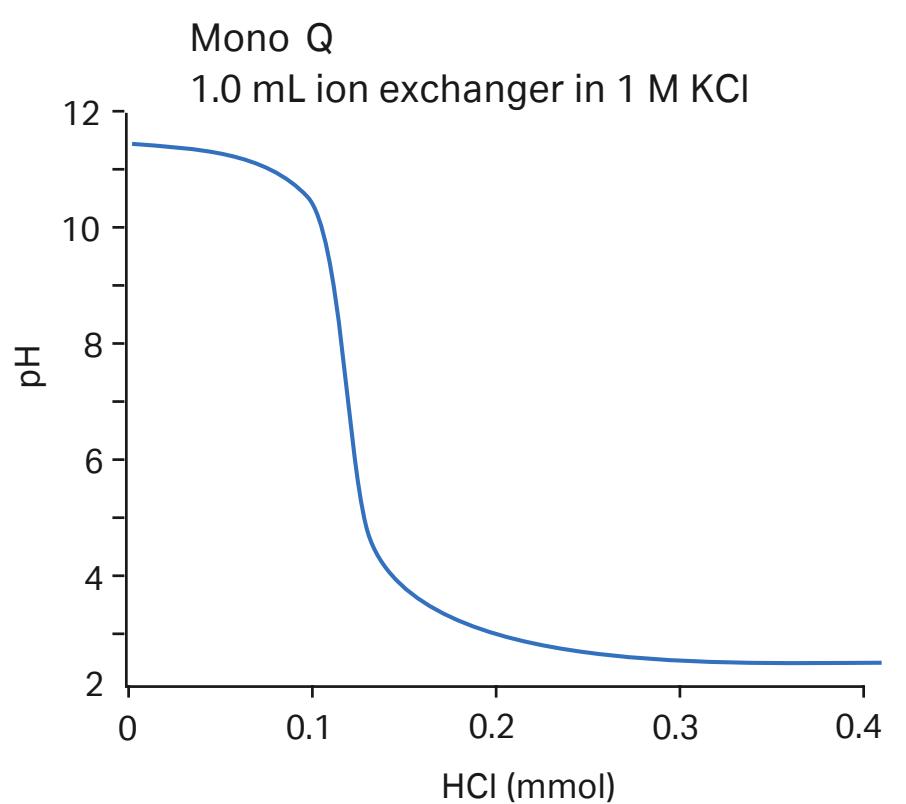
## MonoBeads: purification of milligram quantities with high resolution

- 👉 Use MonoBeads for polishing steps at laboratory scale when high resolution is essential and a higher capacity than MiniBeads is required.
- 👉 Use MonoBeads for capture or intermediate purification when milligram quantities are required, when there is no requirement for scale-up, and/or when prepacked MiniBead columns do not offer sufficient capacity. Note that, to avoid column blockage, it is especially important to remove particulate matter before using MonoBeads.
- 👉 Run MonoBeads on ÄKTA chromatography systems and HPLC systems. Appendix 4 provides guidance on selecting the right ÄKTA system. HPLC systems are recommended for optimal performance of the smallest columns (PC 1.6/5).

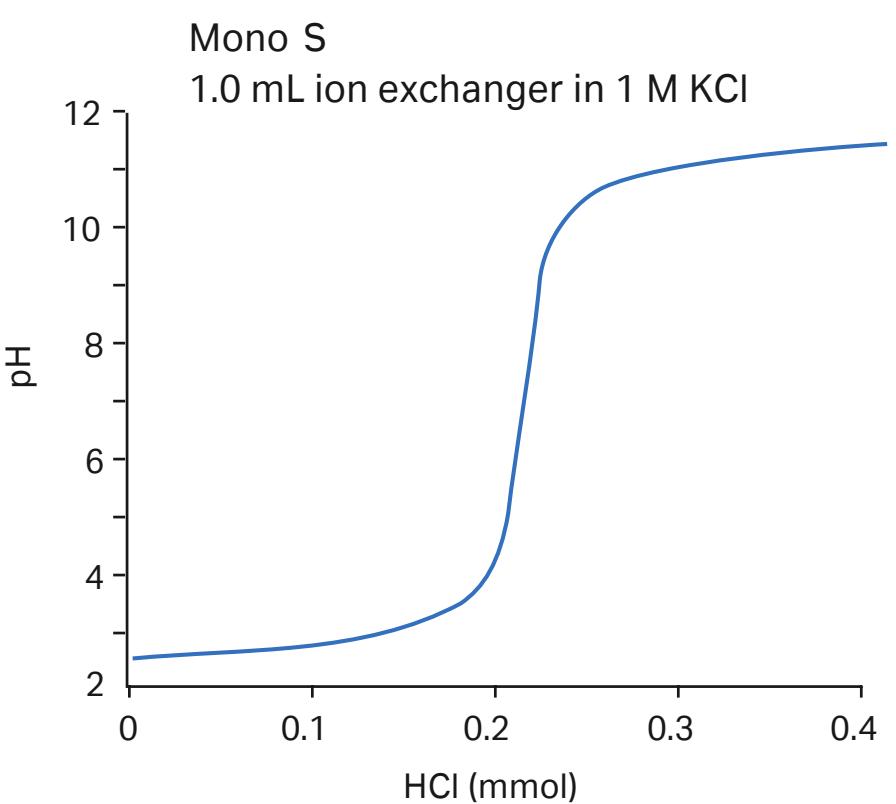
Mono Q and Mono S™ IEX media are based on a hydrophilic matrix made from monodispersed, rigid, polystyrene/divinyl benzene particles, substituted with quaternary ammonium (Q) or methyl sulfonate (S) groups (Fig 3.6). This combination confers extreme chemical and physical stability to the media. The small particle sizes ( $10\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ ) allow fast binding and dissociation to facilitate high resolution while the uniformity of the particles ensures high flow rates at low back pressures. The strong ion exchange groups (Q and S) maintain their charge over a broad pH range (Fig 3.7), allowing selection of the most suitable pH for each application.



**Fig 3.6.** Electron micrograph of MonoBeads showing their distinct monodispersity.



**Fig 3.7.** Titration curves for Mono Q and Mono S. Binding capacity remains constant over a broad pH working range.



## Media characteristics

Composition: rigid, monodisperse, polystyrene/divinyl benzene particles (10 µm) with an optimized pore size distribution. The base matrix is substituted with quaternary amino (Q) or methyl sulfonate groups (S), see Table 3.3.

**Table 3.3.** Characteristics of MonoBeads media

Product	Functional group	pH stability <sup>1</sup>	Mean particle size (µm)
<b>Strong anion exchanger</b>			
Mono Q	-CH <sub>2</sub> -N <sup>+</sup> -(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 2 to 12	10 (monosized)
<b>Strong cation exchanger</b>			
Mono S	-CH <sub>2</sub> -SO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 2 to 14	10 (monosized)

<sup>1</sup> Long-term pH stability refers to the pH interval where the medium is stable over a long period of time without adverse side effects on chromatographic performance. Short-term pH stability refers to the pH interval for regeneration, cleaning-in-place, and sanitization procedures. All ranges are estimates based on experience and knowledge gained at Cytiva.

## Purification options

MonoBeads (Q and S) are available in convenient prepacked Tricorn PE (PEEK) and Tricorn GL (glass) columns (Fig 3.8). Purification options for the prepacked columns are described in Table 3.4.



**Fig 3.8.** MonoBeads (Q and S) are available prepacked in Tricorn PC (Precision Column), PE (PEEK), and Tricorn GL (glass) columns.

**Table 3.4.** Purification options for Mono Q and Mono S prepacked columns

Product, column volume	Binding capacity per column	Recommended working flow rate range (mL/min)	Maximum flow rate (mL/min)	Working pH range <sup>1</sup>	Maximum operating back pressure <sup>2</sup> (MPa/psi) 1 MPa = 10 bar
<b>Strong anion exchangers</b>					
Mono Q PC 1.6/5, 0.1 mL <sup>3</sup>	2.5 mg (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000)	0.01 to 0.4	0.4	2 to 12	5/725
Mono Q 5/50 GL, 1 mL	25 mg (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000) 65 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000) 80 mg ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300)	0.5 to 3.0	3.0	2 to 12	4/580
Mono Q 4.6/100 PE, 1.7 mL	40 mg (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000) 110 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000) 140 mg ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300)	0.5 to 3.0	3.0	2 to 12	4/580
Mono Q 10/100 GL, 8 mL	200 mg (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000) 520 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000) 640 mg ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300)	2.0 to 6.0	10.0	2 to 12	4/580
Mono Q HR 16/10, 20 mL	500 mg (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000) 1300 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000) 1600 mg ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300)	up to 10.0	10.0	2 to 12	3/435
<b>Strong cation exchangers</b>					
Mono S PC 1.6/5, 0.1 mL <sup>3</sup>	7.5 mg (human IgG, M <sub>r</sub> 160 000)	0.01 to 0.4	0.4	2 to 12	5/725
Mono S 5/50 GL, 1 mL	75 mg (human IgG, M <sub>r</sub> 160 000) 75 mg (ribonuclease, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	0.5 to 3.0	3.0	2 to 12	4/580
Mono S 4.6/100 PE, 1.7 mL	130 mg (human IgG, M <sub>r</sub> 160 000) 130 mg (ribonuclease, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	0.5 to 3.0	3.0	2 to 12	4/580
Mono S 10/100 GL, 8 mL	600 mg (human IgG, M <sub>r</sub> 160 000) 600 mg (ribonuclease, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	2.0 to 6.0	10.0	2 to 12	4/580
Mono S HR 16/10, 20 mL	1500 mg (human IgG, M <sub>r</sub> 160 000) 1500 mg (ribonuclease, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	up to 10.0	10.0	2 to 12	3/435

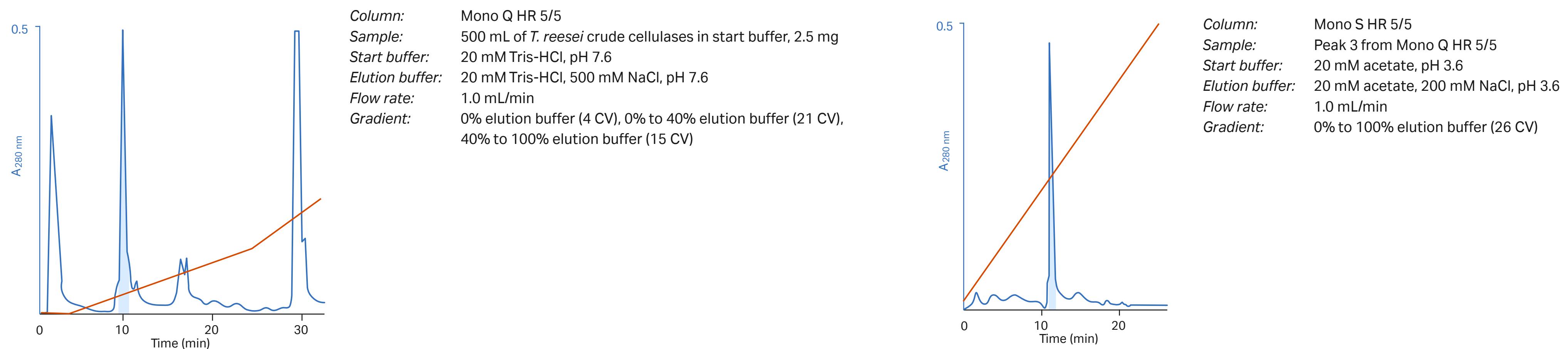
<sup>1</sup> Working pH range refers to the pH interval where the medium can be operated as intended without adverse long-term effects.

<sup>2</sup> Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the medium begins to compress.

<sup>3</sup> Requires a Precision Column Holder for attachment to HPLC systems.

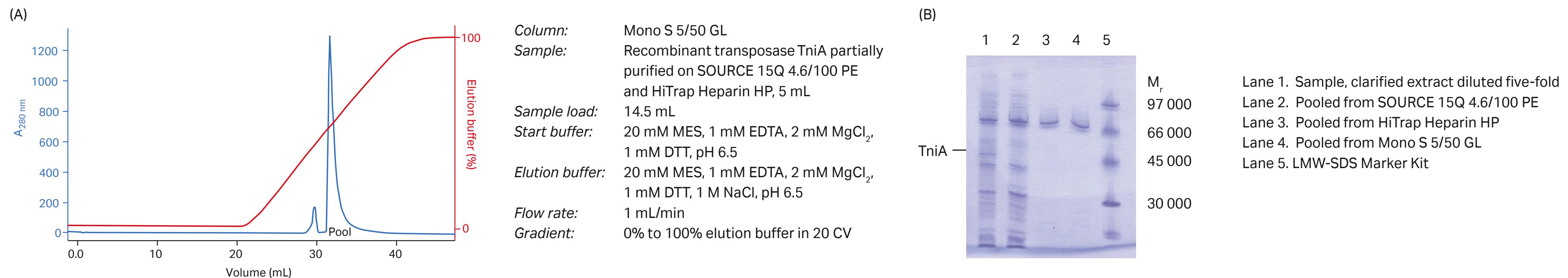
## Purification examples

### Two-step purification using complementary selectivities



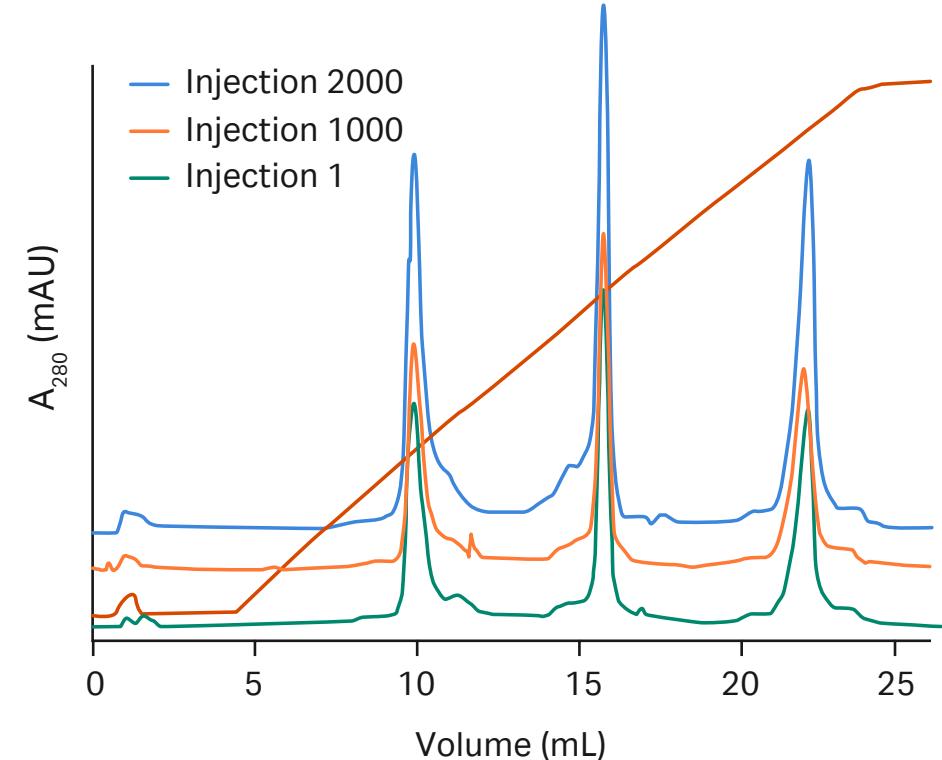
**Fig 3.9.** Purification of cellulose on Mono Q and Mono S HR 5/5 columns (now available as Mono Q 5/50 GL and Mono S 5/50 GL).

### High-resolution, polishing step



**Fig 3.10.** Final polishing step in purification of a DNA-binding protein, transposase TniA. Two well-resolved peaks after separation on Mono S 5/50 GL. (A) SDS-PAGE analysis shows fractions from each of the three steps used in this protocol. (B) PhastSystem™ electrophoresis unit using SDS-PAGE PhastGel™ Homogeneous – 12.5 and Coomassie™ staining.

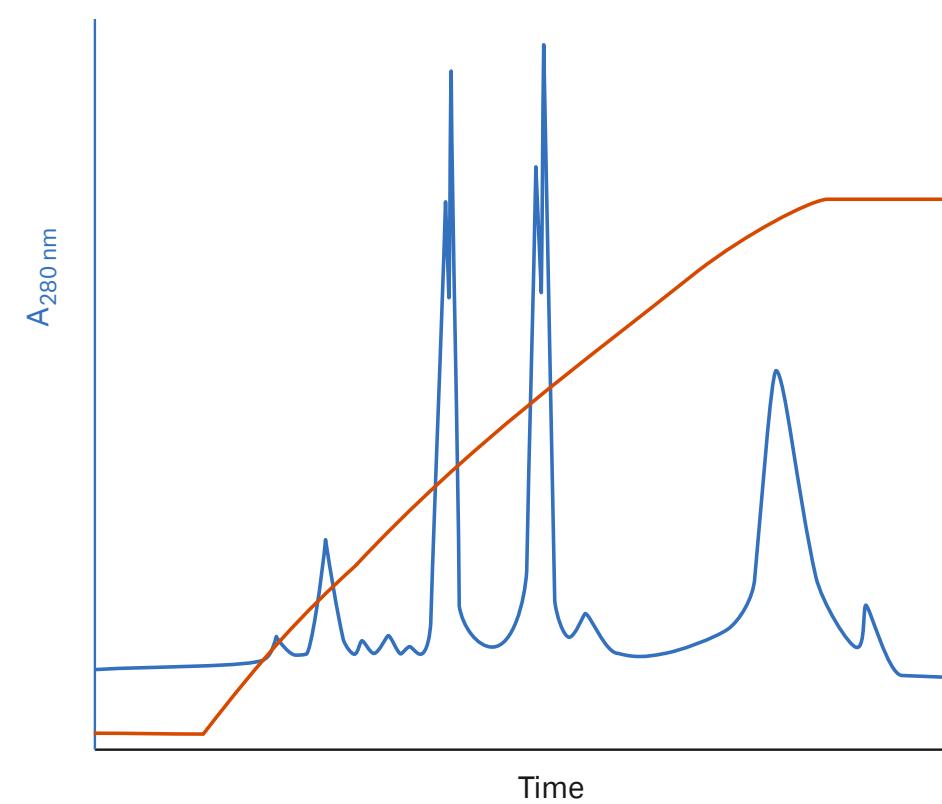
## Long-term reproducibility



**Column:** Mono Q 5/50 GL (Tricorn)  
**Sample:** Conalbumin (3.0 mg/mL),  $\alpha$ -lactalbumin (4 mg/mL), STI (6 mg/mL)  
**Sample volume:** 200  $\mu$ L  
**Buffer A:** 200 mM Tris, pH 7.0  
**Buffer B:** Buffer A + 500 mM NaCl  
**Gradient:** Linear, 0% to 100% B in 20 CV  
**Column equilibration:** 5 CV  
**Flow rate:** 1.0 mL/min  
**System:** ÄKTA system

**Fig 3.11.** Chromatograms illustrating run to run reproducibility for Mono Q 5/50 GL (Tricorn column). Runs 1, 1000, and 2000 are shown.

## Separation in organic solvents



**Column:** Mono S HR 5/5  
**Sample:** Bacitracin 4 mg/mL in start buffer  
**Sample load:** 200  $\mu$ L  
**Start buffer:** 90% methanol, 50 mM formic acid/lithium hydroxide (LiOH), pH 3.8  
**Elution buffer:** 90% methanol, 50 mM formic acid/LiOH, 350 mM lithium perchlorate ( $\text{LiClO}_4$ ), pH 3.8  
**Flow rate:** 1 mL/min  
**Gradient:** 0% to 100% elution buffer in 20 CV

**Fig 3.12.** Separation of the peptide bacitracin on Mono S HR 5/5 (now available as Mono S 5/50 GL).

## Performing a separation

Guidelines for selection of media, buffer, pH, and ionic strength conditions and method optimization are given in Chapter 2. Use these instructions as a basis from which to optimize a separation.

Correct sample and buffer preparation is essential to achieve optimal separation and to avoid any deterioration in column performance, especially when using small particles such as MonoBeads. Samples must be fully dissolved and free from particles or other material likely to interfere with the separation. Refer to Chapter 2 and Appendix 1 for recommendations and advice on sample preparation.

Filter buffers *after* all salts and additives have been included. Use high quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions through 0.22  $\mu$ m filters. To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, ensure that column and buffers are at the same temperature when preparing for a run.

The pH of the start buffer should be at least 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit above the pI of the target substance when using an anion exchanger (Q) and 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit below the pI of the target substance when using a cation exchanger (S). See Appendix 2 for recommendations on volatile and nonvolatile buffer systems for anion and cation exchangers.

For samples with unknown charge properties, try the following:

### anion exchange (Q)

start buffer: 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0  
elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 8.0

### cation exchange (S)

start buffer: 20 mM 2-(N-Morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid (MES), pH 6.0  
elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 6.0

Users of ÄKTA systems with automatic buffer preparation functionality can select one of the buffer recipes recommended for anion exchange chromatography at pH 8.0 or cation exchange chromatography at pH 6.0, see ÄKTA Laboratory-scale Chromatography Systems: Instrument Management Handbook, 29010831.

## First-time use or after long-term storage

1. To remove ethanol, wash with 5 CV of distilled water at 0.1 mL/min (PC 1.6/5, 0.1 mL columns), 1 mL/min (5/50 GL, 1 mL and 4.6/100 PE, 1.7 mL columns), 2 mL/min (10/100 GL, 8 mL columns) or 4 mL/min (HR 16/10, 20 mL columns). This step ensures removal of ethanol and avoids the risk of precipitation if buffer salts were to come into contact with the ethanol. The step can be omitted if precipitation is not likely to be a problem.
2. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer at 0.1 mL/min (PC 1.6/5, 0.1 mL columns), 2 mL/min (5/50 GL, 1 mL and 4.6/100 PE, 1.7 mL columns), 4 mL/min (10/100 GL, 8 mL columns), or 8 mL/min (HR 16/10, 20 mL columns).
3. Wash with 5 CV of elution buffer, same flow as step 2.
4. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer, same flow as step 2.

## Separation by gradient elution

Flow rates: 0.1 mL/min (PC 1.6/5, 0.1 mL columns), 2 mL/min (5/50 GL, 1 mL and 4.6/100 PE, 1.7 mL columns), 4 mL/min (10/100 GL, 8 mL columns) or 8 mL/min (HR 16/10, 20 mL columns). Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV and an increasing ionic strength up to 0.5 M NaCl (50% B).
5. Wash with 5 CV of 1 M NaCl (100% B) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

## Separation by step elution

- Although separations by step elution (see Chapter 1) can be performed using MonoBeads, gradient elution is recommended in order to achieve the highest possible resolution.
- Save time by using higher flow rates during the high salt wash and re-equilibration steps. Do not exceed the maximum recommended flow for the column.
- If ionic detergents have been used, wash the column with 5 CV of distilled water, followed by 2 CV of 2 M NaCl. Re-equilibrate with at least 10 CV of start buffer until the UV baseline, eluent pH and/or conductivity are stable. Organic solvents such as ethanol can be used to remove nonionic detergents. When selecting an organic solvent, check the chemical stability of the medium to determine a suitable concentration.
- Check column performance regularly by determining column efficiency and peak symmetry. See Appendix 3. Refer to Chapter 2 for advice on optimizing the separation.

## Cleaning

Correct preparation of samples and buffers and application of a high salt wash (1 M NaCl) at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing back pressure, or complete blockage are all indications that the medium needs to be cleaned using more stringent procedures to remove contaminants.

- Reverse the direction of flow during column cleaning so that contaminants do not need to pass through the entire length of the column. The number of column volumes and time required for each cleaning step may vary according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure to remove common contaminants does not restore column performance, change the top filter before trying alternative cleaning methods. Care should be taken when changing a filter as this can affect the column packing and interfere with performance.

## Removing common contaminants

Flow rates: 0.05 mL/min (PC 1.6/5, 0.1 mL columns), 0.5 mL/min (5/50 GL, 1 mL columns), 0.2 mL/min (4.6/100 PE, 1.7 mL columns), 2 mL/min (10/100 GL, 8 mL columns), or 5 mL/min (HR 16/10, 20 mL columns).

1. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl.
2. Wash with at least 4 CV of 1 M NaOH.
3. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl.
4. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water until the UV-baseline and the eluent pH are stable.
5. Wash with at least 4 CV of start buffer or storage buffer until pH and conductivity values have reached the required values.

To remove precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins, refer to Appendix 1.

## Chemical stability

For daily use, MonoBeads are stable in all common, aqueous buffers in the pH range 2 to 12, and in the presence of additives such as denaturing agents (8 M urea or 6 M guanidine hydrochloride), nonionic or ionic detergents, and up to 20% acetonitrile in aqueous buffers. Note that aqueous solutions of urea, ethylene glycol and similar compounds will increase the back pressure due to increased viscosity.

MonoBeads can be used with organic solutions such as dimethylsulfoxide, dimethylformamide, or formic acid, but the separation properties of the media will change.

 Avoid anionic detergents with Mono Q. Avoid cationic detergents with Mono S. Avoid oxidizing agents.

## Storage

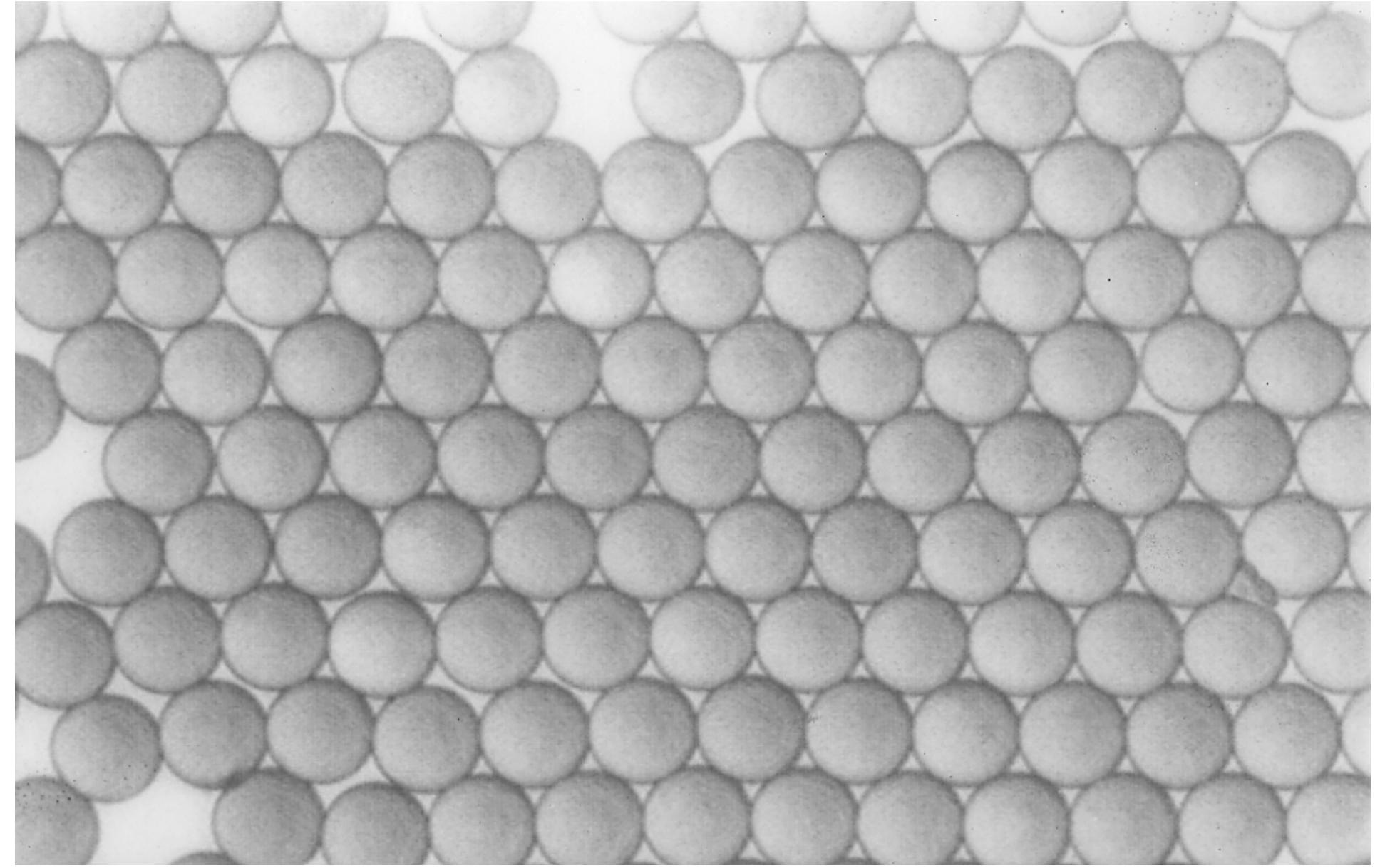
For column storage, wash with 5 CV of distilled water followed by 5 CV of 20% ethanol. Degas the ethanol/water mixture thoroughly and apply at a low flow rate to avoid overpressuring the column. Store at room temperature or, for long periods, store at 4°C to 8°C. Ensure that the column is sealed well to avoid drying out. Whenever possible, use the storage and shipping device if supplied by the manufacturer. Do not freeze.

## SOURCE: high-throughput, high-resolution purification, and easy scale-up

- 👉 Use SOURCE 15 for intermediate purification or polishing steps in laboratory- or large-scale applications that require high resolution and high throughput (flow velocities up to 1800 cm/h).
- 👉 Use SOURCE 30 as an alternative to SOURCE 15 for intermediate purification or polishing steps in large-scale applications where speed rather than resolution is a priority (flow velocities up to 2000 cm/h).
- 👉 Use SOURCE 30 as an alternative to SOURCE 15 for large sample volumes where speed rather than resolution is a priority. The larger particle size slightly reduces resolution, but separations can be performed at higher flow rates.
- 👉 Run SOURCE columns on ÄKTA chromatography systems, HPLC systems, or systems using peristaltic pumps. Appendix 4 provides guidance on selecting the right ÄKTA system.

SOURCE media are based on a hydrophilic matrix made from monodispersed, rigid, polystyrene/divinyl benzene and substituted with quaternary ammonium (Q) or methyl sulfonate (S) groups (Figure 3.13). This combination confers extreme chemical and physical stability to the media. The small particle sizes allow fast binding and dissociation to facilitate high resolution while the uniformity and stability of the particles ensures high flow rates at low back pressure. The strong ion exchange groups (Q and S) maintain their charge over a broad pH range, allowing selection of the most suitable pH for each application. The high flow rates that can be used with SOURCE media are more likely to be limited by the equipment available rather than the physical properties of the media.

Separation methods can be easily scaled up from columns such as RESOURCE Q or S, 1 mL prepacked with SOURCE 15, to large-scale columns such as FineLINE™.



**Fig 3.13.** Uniform size distribution of SOURCE monodispersed particles.

## Media characteristics

Composition: rigid, monodisperse, polystyrene/divinyl benzene particles with an optimized pore-size distribution.

The base matrix is substituted with quaternary amino groups (Q) or methyl sulfonate groups (S), see Table 3.5.

**Table 3.5.** Characteristics of SOURCE 15 and 30 media

Product	Functional group	pH stability <sup>1</sup>	Mean particle size ( $\mu\text{m}$ , monosized)
SOURCE 15Q	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}^+-(\text{CH}_3)_3$	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 1 to 14	15
SOURCE 30Q	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}^+-(\text{CH}_3)_3$	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 1 to 14	30
SOURCE 15S	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{SO}_3^-$	Long term: 2 to 13 Short term: 1 to 14	15
SOURCE 30S	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{SO}_3^-$	Long term: 2 to 13 Short term: 1 to 14	30

<sup>1</sup> Long-term pH stability refers to the pH interval where the medium is stable over a long period of time without adverse side effects on the chromatography performance. Short-term pH stability refers to the pH interval for regeneration, cleaning-in-place, and sanitization procedures. All ranges are estimates based on experience and knowledge gained at Cytiva.



**Fig 3.14.** SOURCE is available in media packs and is prepacked in Tricorn and RESOURCE columns.

## Purification options

SOURCE Q and S media are available in media packs and in convenient prepacked Tricorn (PE) and RESOURCE columns (Fig 3.14). Purification options for the media and prepacked columns are described in Table 3.6.

**Table 3.6.** Purification options for SOURCE media and prepacked columns

<b>Product, column volume</b>	<b>Binding capacity per column or per mL medium</b>	<b>Recommended working flow rate range<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>Maximum flow<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>Working pH range<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>Maximum operating back pressure<sup>3</sup> (MPa/psi)</b> 1 MPa = 10 bar
<b>Strong anion exchangers</b>					
SOURCE 15Q	45 mg/mL (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000)	150 to 900 cm/h	1800 cm/h	2 to 12	0.5/72
SOURCE 30Q	40 mg/mL (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000)	300 to 1000 cm/h	2000 cm/h	2 to 12	0.5/72
RESOURCE Q, 1 mL	45 mg (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000)	1.0 to 10 mL/min	10 mL/min	2 to 12	1.5/220
RESOURCE Q, 6 mL	270 mg (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000)	1.0 to 60 mL/min	60 mL/min	2 to 12	0.6/87
SOURCE 15Q 4.6/100 PE, 1.7 mL	75 mg (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000)	0.5 to 2.5 mL/min	5 mL/min	2 to 12	4/580
<b>Strong cation exchangers</b>					
SOURCE 15S	80 mg/mL (lysozyme, M <sub>r</sub> 14 500)	150 to 900 cm/h	1800 cm/h	2 to 13	0.5/72
SOURCE 30S	80 mg/mL (lysozyme, M <sub>r</sub> 14 500)	300 to 1000 cm/h	2000 cm/h	2 to 13	0.5/72
RESOURCE S, 1 mL	80 mg (lysozyme, M <sub>r</sub> 14 500)	1.0 to 10 mL/min	10 mL/min	2 to 13	1.5/220
RESOURCE S, 6 mL	480 mg (lysozyme, M <sub>r</sub> 14 500)	1.0 to 60 mL/min	60 mL/min	2 to 13	0.6/87
SOURCE 15S 4.6/100 PE, 1.7 mL	140 mg (lysozyme, M <sub>r</sub> 14 500)	0.5 to 2.5 mL/min	5 mL/min	2 to 13	4/580

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix 5 to convert flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rate (mL/min) and vice versa.<sup>2</sup> Working pH range refers to the pH interval where the medium can be operated as intended without adverse long-term effects.<sup>3</sup> Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the medium begins to compress.

☞ Use prepacked RESOURCE columns (1 mL or 6 mL) for fast media selection, method scouting, group separations, sample concentration or clean-up.

☞ Use SOURCE 15Q PE 4.6/100 PE to improve resolution by increasing column length with further optimization and as the first step towards scaling up.

For column packing in XK columns, see Table 3.7. Select a production column such as FineLINE for larger volumes.

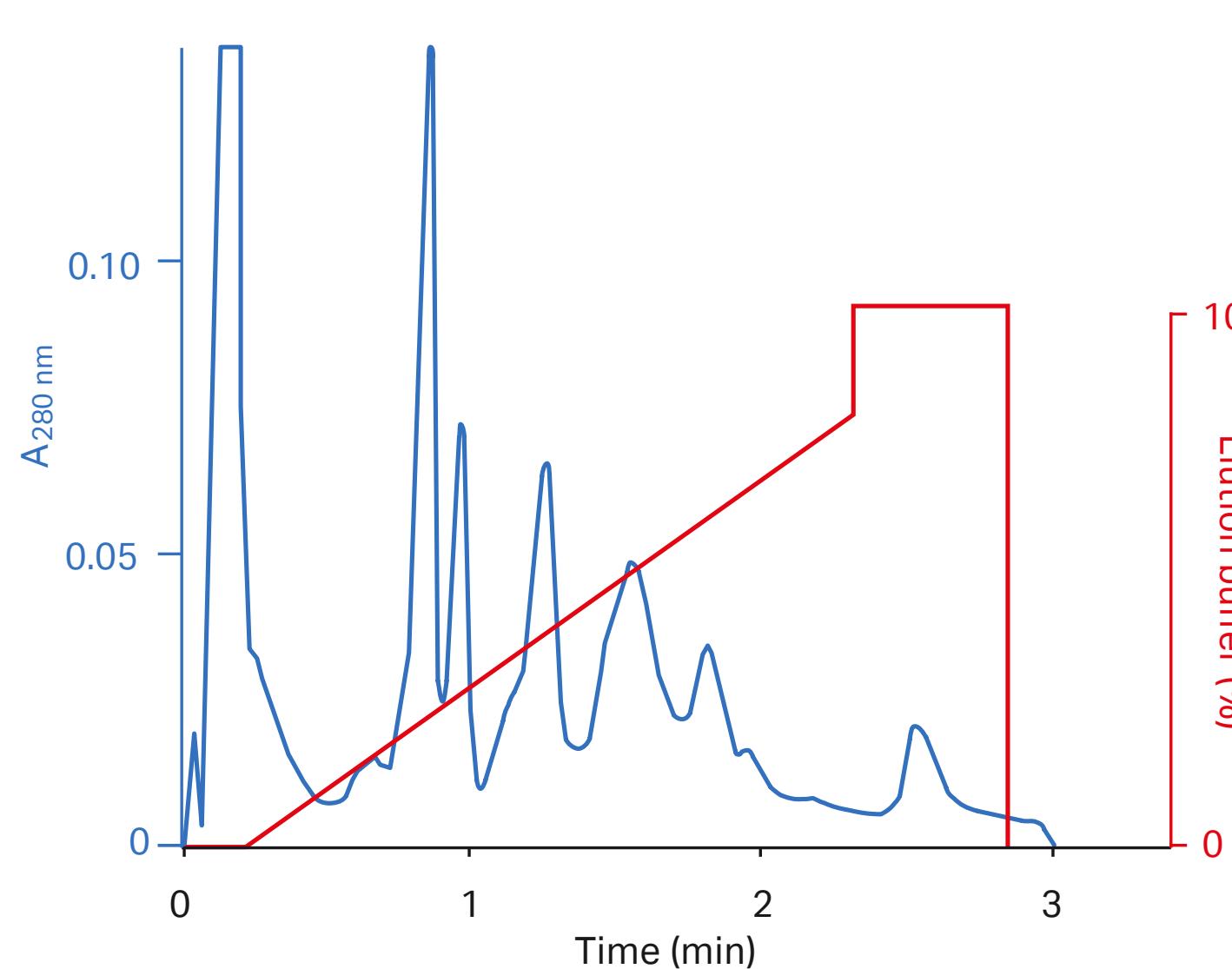
**Table 3.7.** Packing of SOURCE 15 and SOURCE 30 chromatography media in XK columns

	<b>Volume (mL)</b>	<b>Bed height (cm)</b>
<b>SOURCE 15</b>		
Tricorn 10/100	up to 8	up to 10
Tricorn 10/150	up to 12	up to 15
Tricorn 10/200	up to 16	up to 20
<b>SOURCE 30</b>		
XK 16/20	up to 30	up to 15
XK 26/20	up to 80	up to 15
XK 26/40	up to 196	> 15

## Purification examples

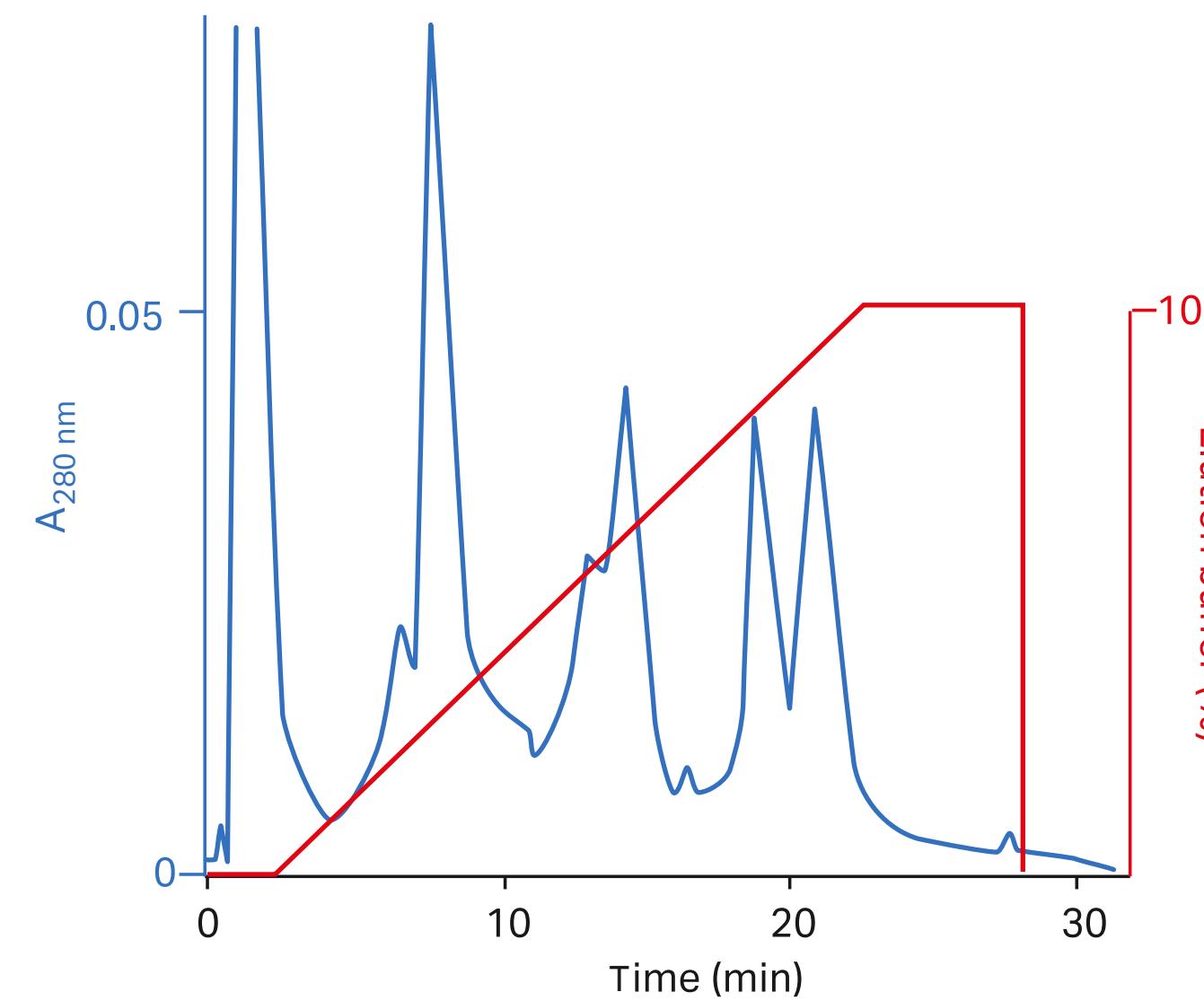
### Fast, high resolution separations

**Column:** RESOURCE Q 1 mL  
**Sample:** Pancreatin 5 mg/mL  
**Sample volume:** 200  $\mu$ L  
**Start buffer:** 20 mM bis-Tris-propane, pH 7.5  
**Elution buffer:** 20 mM bis-Tris-propane, 500 mM NaCl, pH 7.5  
**Flow rate, flow velocity:** 9.6 mL/min, 1800 cm/h  
**Gradient:** 0% to 80% elution buffer in 20 CV



**Fig 3.15.** Separation of pancreatin on RESOURCE Q, 1 mL in 3 min.

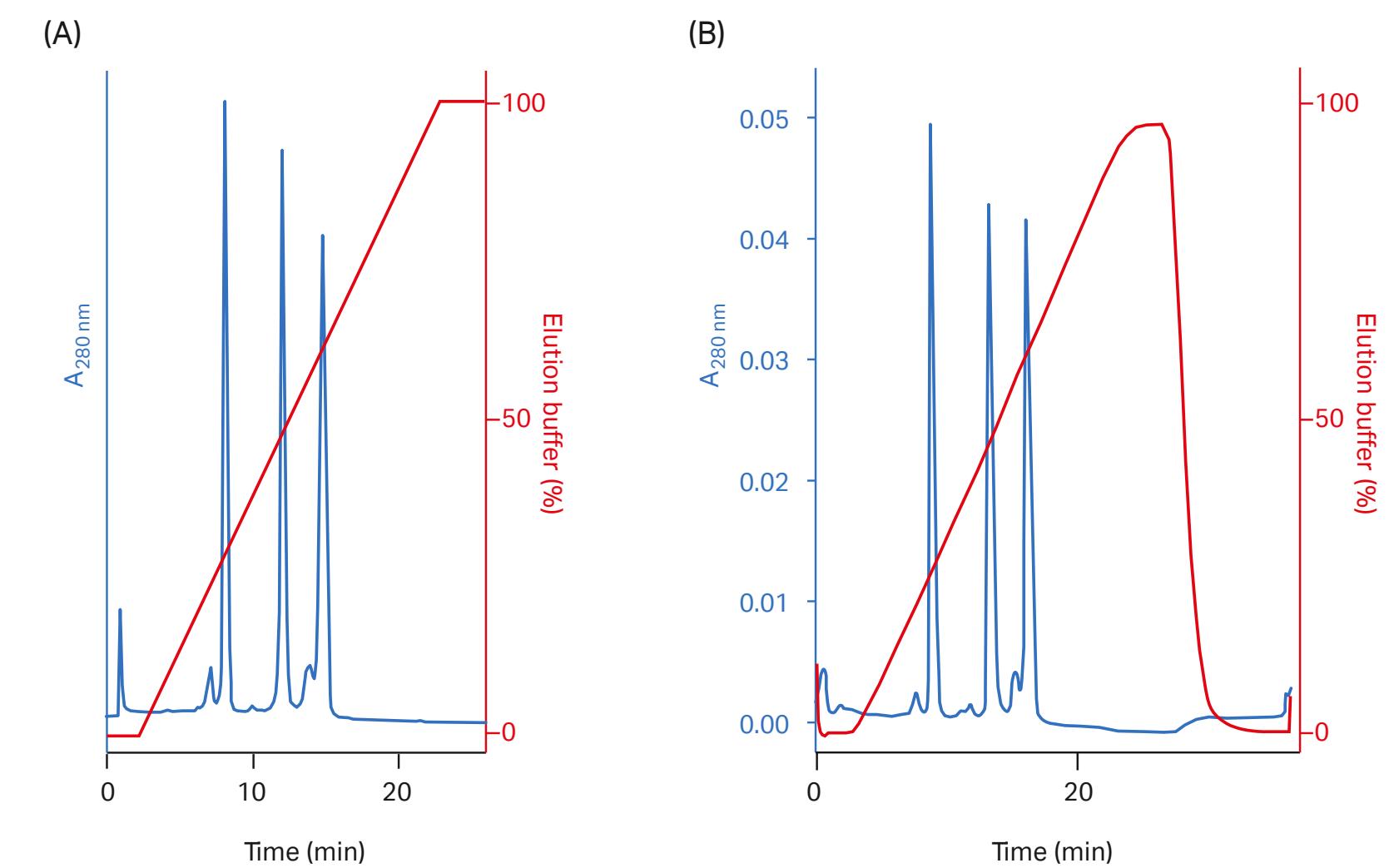
**Column:** RESOURCE S 1 mL  
**Sample:** Snake venom, 4 mg/mL  
**Sample volume:** 100  $\mu$ L  
**Start buffer:** 20 mM sodium phosphate, pH 6.8  
**Elution buffer:** 20 mM sodium phosphate, 400 mM NaCl, pH 6.8  
**Flow rate, flow velocity:** 1 mL/min, 180 cm/h  
**Gradient:** 0% to 100% elution buffer in 20 CV



**Fig 3.16.** Separation of snake venom on RESOURCE S, 1 mL at 1 mL/min (180 cm/h).

### Scaling up: resolution maintained

**Columns:** (A) SOURCE 15S, 2.2 mL  
**Samples:** Ribonuclease, cytochrome C and lysozyme  
**Sample load:** (A) 0.46 mg in 200  $\mu$ L  
**Start buffer:** 20 mM sodium phosphate, pH 6.8  
**Elution buffer:** 20 mM sodium phosphate, 400 mM NaCl, pH 6.8  
**Flow rates (flow velocities):** (A) 2.2 mL/min (300 cm/h)  
**Gradient:** 0% elution buffer (2 CV)  
0% to 100% elution buffer (21 CV)

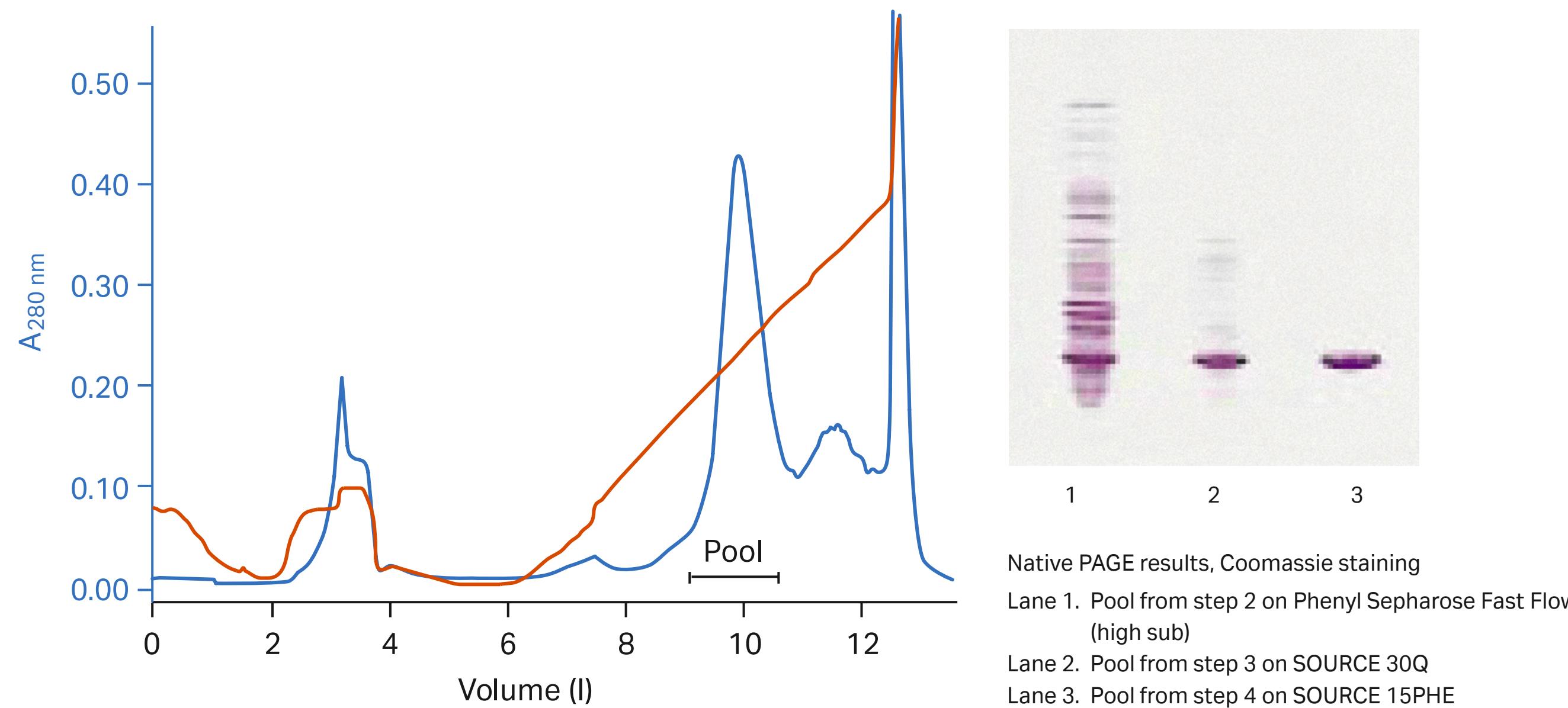


**Fig 3.17.** Separation of proteins scaled up from a 2.2 mL column to a 390 mL column.

## Intermediate purification

Figure 3.18 shows an example of SOURCE 30Q used for an intermediate purification step in a large-scale process. Recombinant *P. aeruginosa* exotoxin A, produced as a periplasmic protein in *E. coli*, was initially purified with STREAMLINE DEAE expanded bed adsorption, followed by hydrophobic interaction chromatography (HIC) on Phenyl Sepharose 6 Fast Flow (high sub). The fraction of interest was then further purified on SOURCE 30Q before a final HIC polishing step on SOURCE 15PHE to remove the final contaminants.

Columns:	SOURCE 30Q, FineLINE 100 (375 mL)
Sample:	Partially purified recombinant <i>P. aeruginosa</i> exotoxin A, diluted 1:3 with water
Sample:	1.8 g total protein (0.29 g exotoxin A) in 1.5 L
Start buffer:	20 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.4
Elution buffer:	20 mM sodium phosphate, 1 M NaCl, pH 7.4
Flow rate (flow velocity):	785 mL/min (600 cm/h)
Gradient:	0% to 50% elution buffer in 20 CV

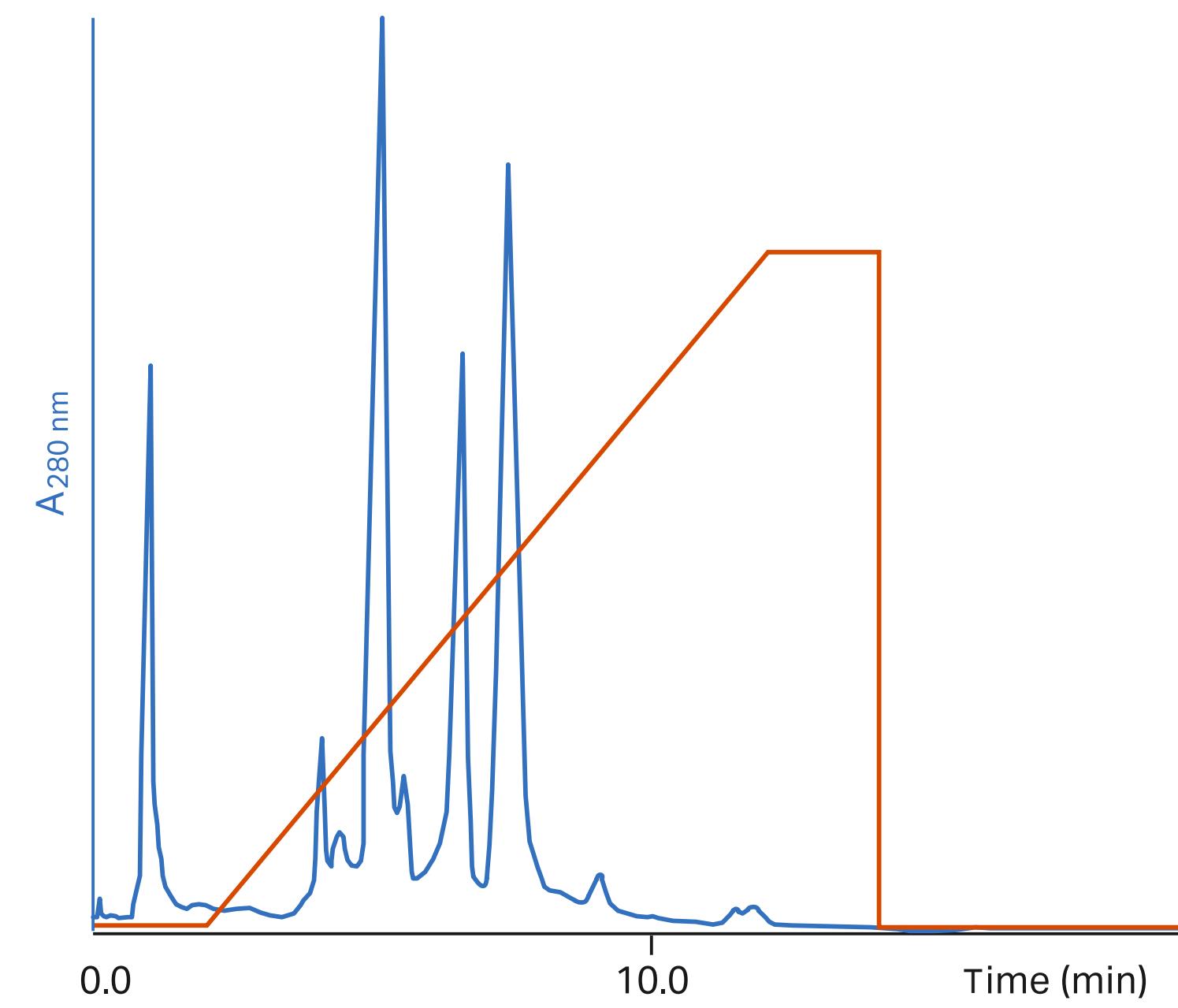


**Fig 3.18.** Intermediate purification of recombinant *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin A on SOURCE 30Q.

## Separations under extreme pH conditions

The high pH stability of SOURCE media makes them well-suited for applications requiring conditions of extreme pH such as purification of certain peptides and synthetic oligo-nucleotides, as shown in Figures 3.19 and 3.20.

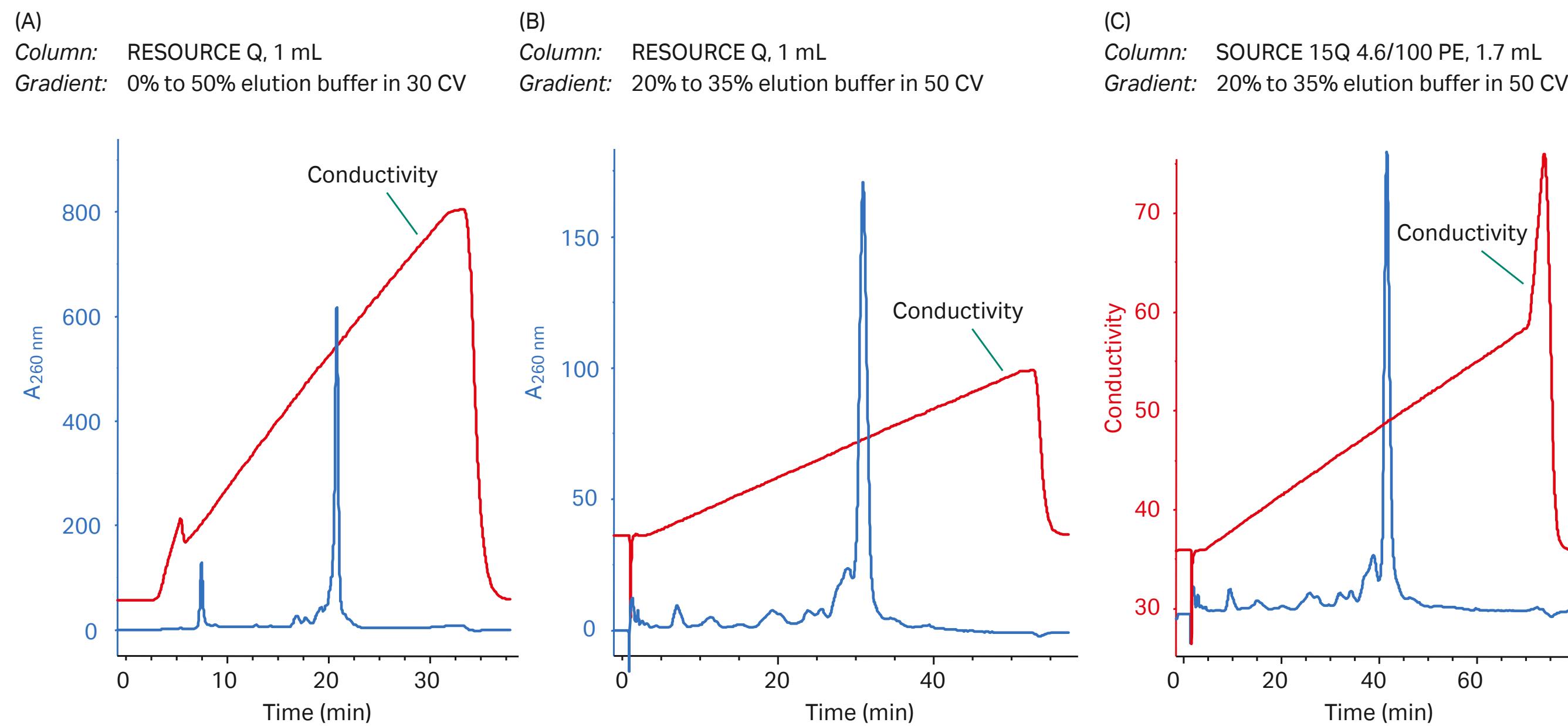
Column:	RESOURCE S, 1 mL
Sample:	Partially purified bacitracin, 5 mg/mL
Sample volume:	100 µL
Start buffer:	5 mM potassium phosphate, pH 2.8, 30% acetonitrile
Elution buffer:	5 mM potassium phosphate, 400 mM KCl, pH 2.8, 30% acetonitrile
Flow rate (flow velocity):	1 mL/min (180 cm/h)
Gradient:	0% to 100% elution buffer in 10 CV



**Fig 3.19.** Intermediate purification of the peptide bacitracin from *Bacillus subtilis* on RESOURCE Q, 1 mL.

## Method optimization

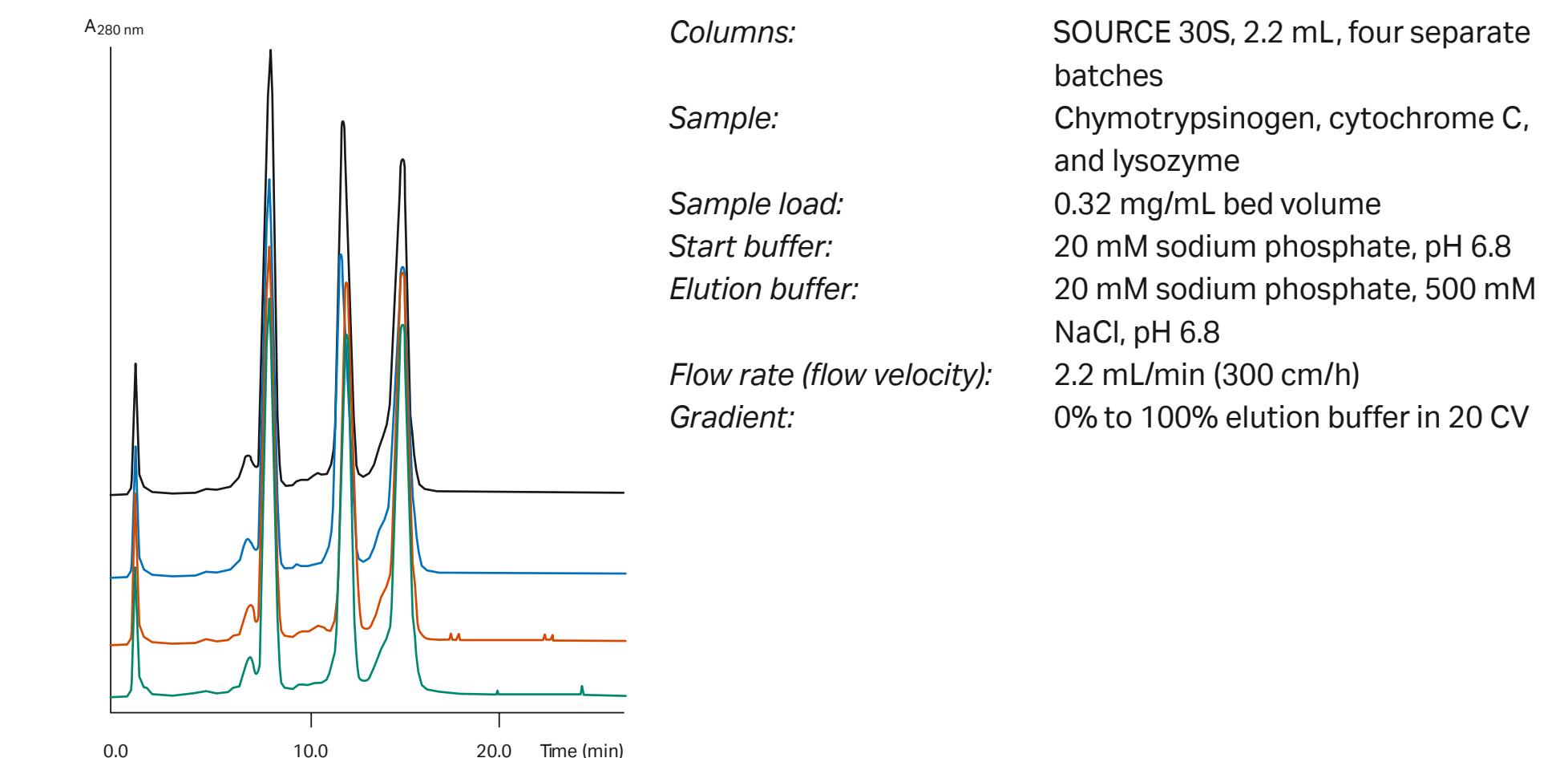
**Sample:** Crude oligonucleotide 20-mer (10 µg)  
**Start buffer:** 10 mM NaOH, pH 12  
**Elution buffer:** 10 mM NaOH, 2 M NaCl, pH 12  
**Flow rate:** 1 mL/min



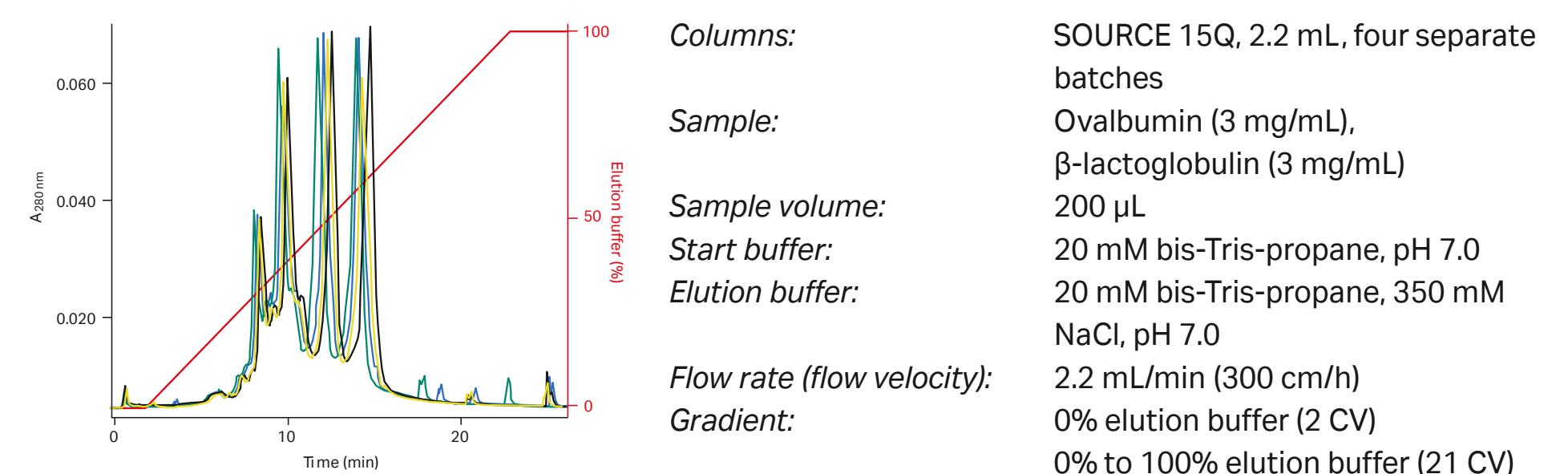
**Fig 3.20.** Manipulation of gradient slope and shape to maximize resolution. Initial purification of a 20 mer oligonucleotide was optimized on RESOURCE Q, 1 mL and transferred to SOURCE Q PE 4.6/100 to further increase resolution by increasing bed height to 10 cm.

## Batch-to-batch reproducibility

Batch-to-batch reproducibility is particularly important for media used for scaling-up and large scale industrial applications which are under strict regulatory control. Figures 3.21 and 3.22 demonstrate the high batch-to-batch reproducibility of SOURCE 15 and SOURCE 30 media.



**Fig 3.21.** Selectivity tests on four production batches of SOURCE 30S.



**Fig 3.22.** Selectivity tests on four production batches of SOURCE 15Q.

## Performing a separation

Guidelines for selection of media, buffer, pH and ionic strength conditions, and method optimization are given in Chapter 2. Use the instructions given here as a basis from which to optimize a separation.

-  Correct sample and buffer preparation is essential in order to achieve optimal separation and avoid any deterioration in column performance. Samples must be fully dissolved and free from particles or other material likely to interfere with the separation. Refer to Chapter 2 and Appendix 1 for recommendations and advice on sample preparation.
-  Filter buffers *after* all salts and additives have been included. Use high quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions using filters of 0.45 µm or 0.22 µm for 30 µm particles and 0.22 µm filters for 15 µm particles. To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, ensure that column and buffers are at the same temperature when preparing for a run.
-  The pH of the start buffer should be at least 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit above the pI of the target substance when using an anion exchanger (Q) and 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit below the pI of the target substance when using a cation exchanger (S). See Appendix 2 for recommendations on volatile and nonvolatile buffer systems for anion and cation exchangers.

For samples with unknown charge properties, try the following:

### **anion exchange (Q)**

start buffer: 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0

elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 8.0

### **cation exchange (S)**

start buffer: 20 mM 2-(N-Morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid (MES), pH 6.0

elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 6.0

-  Users of ÄKTA systems with automatic buffer preparation functionality can select one of the buffer recipes recommended for anion exchange chromatography at pH 8.0 or cation exchange chromatography at pH 6.0, see *ÄKTA Laboratory-scale Chromatography Systems: Instrument Management Handbook*, 29010831.

## First-time use or after long-term storage

1. To remove ethanol, wash with 5 CV of distilled water at 2 mL/min (SOURCE 15 4.6/100 PE), 4 mL/min (RESOURCE 1 mL), 6 mL/min (RESOURCE 6 mL), or 200 cm/h for SOURCE packed in larger columns. This step ensures removal of ethanol and avoids the risk of precipitation if buffer salts were to come into contact with the ethanol. The step can be omitted if precipitation is not likely to be a problem.
2. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer, at 2 mL/min (SOURCE 15 4.6/100 PE), 4 mL/min (RESOURCE 1 mL), 6 mL/min (RESOURCE 6 mL), or 200 cm/h for SOURCE packed in larger columns.
3. Wash with 5 CV of elution buffer, same flow as step 2.
4. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer, same flow as step 2.

## Separation by gradient elution

Flow rates: 2 mL/min (SOURCE 15 4.6/100 PE), 4 mL/min (RESOURCE 1 mL), 6 mL/min (RESOURCE 6 mL), or 200 cm/h for SOURCE packed in larger columns.

Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV and an increasing ionic strength up to 0.5 M NaCl (50%*B*).
5. Wash with 5 CV of 1 M NaCl (100%*B*) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

## Separation by step elution

Flow rates: 2 mL/min (SOURCE 15 4.6/100 PE), 4 mL/min (RESOURCE 1 mL), 6 mL/min (RESOURCE 6 mL), or 200 cm/h for SOURCE packed in larger columns.

Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH, and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Elute the target protein with 5 CV of start buffer containing NaCl at chosen ionic strength.
5. If necessary: repeat step 4 at higher ionic strengths until the target protein(s) has been eluted.
6. Wash with 5 CV of a high salt solution (1 M NaCl in start buffer) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
7. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

-  Save time by using higher flow rates during the high salt wash and re-equilibration steps. Do not exceed the maximum recommended flow for the medium.
-  If ionic detergents have been used, wash the column with 5 CV of distilled water, followed by 2 CV of 2 M NaCl. Re-equilibrate with at least 10 CV of start buffer until the UV baseline, eluent pH, and/or conductivity are stable. Organic solvents such as ethanol can be used to remove nonionic detergents. When selecting an organic solvent, check the chemical stability of the medium to determine a suitable concentration.
-  Check column performance regularly by determining column efficiency and peak symmetry. See Appendix 3.

## Cleaning

Correct preparation of samples and buffers and application of a high salt wash (1 M NaCl) at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing back pressure or complete blockage are all indications that the medium needs to be cleaned using more stringent procedures in order to remove contaminants.

-  Reverse the direction of flow during column cleaning so that contaminants do not need to pass through the entire length of the column. The number of column volumes and time required for each cleaning step varies according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure to remove common contaminants does not restore column performance, change the top filter (when possible) before trying alternative cleaning methods. Care should be taken when changing a filter as this can affect the column packing and interfere with performance.

## Removing common contaminants

Flow rates: 0.2 mL/min (SOURCE 15 4.6/100 PE), 1 mL/min (RESOURCE 1 mL), 6 mL/min (RESOURCE 6 mL), or 40 cm/h with a contact time of 1 to 2 h for SOURCE packed in larger columns

1. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl.
2. Wash with at least 4 CV of 1 M NaOH.
3. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl.
4. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water until the UV-baseline and the eluent pH are stable.
5. Wash with at least 4 CV of start buffer or storage buffer until eluent pH and conductivity have reached the required values.

To remove precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins, refer to Appendix 1.

## Chemical stability

For daily use, SOURCE media are stable in all common, aqueous buffers pH 2 to 12, denaturing agents (8 M urea, 6 M guanidine hydrochloride), 75% acetic acid, 1 M NaOH, 1 M HCl, 70% ethanol, 30% acetonitrile, and with additives such as nonionic detergents.

-  Avoid cationic detergents with SOURCE S. Avoid anionic detergents with SOURCE Q. Avoid oxidizing agents.

## Storage

For column storage, wash with 5 CV of distilled water followed by 5 CV of 20% ethanol. Include 200 mM sodium acetate in the 20% ethanol solution for SOURCE S. Degas the ethanol/water mixture thoroughly and apply at a low flow rate to avoid overpressuring the column. Store at room temperature or, for long periods, store at 4°C to 8°C. Ensure that the column is sealed well to avoid drying out. Whenever possible, use the storage and shipping device if supplied by the manufacturer. Store unused media at 4°C to 30°C in 20% ethanol. Do not freeze.

## Sepharose High Performance: purification with high resolution

- 👉 Use Sepharose High Performance for intermediate purification steps that require high capacity and high resolution (flow velocities up to 150 cm/h).
- 👉 Run Sepharose High Performance columns on ÄKTA chromatography systems. Appendix 4 provides guidance on selecting the right ÄKTA system.

Sepharose High Performance media are based on a matrix of 34 µm particles made from 6% agarose and highly cross-linked for chemical and physical stability. The small particle size ensures fast binding and dissociation even at high sample loads and flow rates which, in combination with high selectivity, give high-resolution separations. Particle size and bed volumes remain stable, despite changes in ionic strength or pH, to ensure fast separations at high flow rates. The strong ion exchange groups (Q and SP) maintain their charge over a broad pH range, allowing selection of the most suitable pH for each application.

### Media characteristics

Composition: sulfopropyl (SP) or quaternary amino (Q) groups coupled to highly cross-linked 6% agarose via chemically stable ether bonds, see Table 3.8.

**Table 3.8.** Characteristics of Sepharose High Performance media

Product	Functional group	pH stability <sup>1</sup>	Mean particle size (µm)
Q Sepharose High Performance	-CH <sub>2</sub> -N <sup>+</sup> -(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 1 to 14	34
SP Sepharose High Performance	-CH <sub>2</sub> -SO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Long term: 4 to 13 Short term: 3 to 14	34

<sup>1</sup> Long-term pH stability refers to the pH interval where the medium is stable over a long period of time without adverse side effects on chromatography performance. Short-term pH stability refers to the pH interval for regeneration, cleaning-in-place, and sanitization procedures. All ranges are estimates based on experience and knowledge gained at Cytiva.

## Purification options

Sepharose Q and SP High Performance are available in chromatography media packs, in convenient prepacked HiTrap columns for small-scale work, HiPrep columns for purification scale-up, and HiScreen columns (Fig 3.23). The purification options for these prepacked formats are found in Table 3.9.

**Table 3.9.** Purification options for Sepharose High Performance media and prepacked columns

Product	Binding capacity per column or per mL medium	Recommended working flow <sup>1</sup>	Maximum flow <sup>1</sup>	Working pH range <sup>2</sup>	Maximum operating back pressure <sup>3</sup> (MPa/psi)
<b>Strong anion exchangers</b>					
Q Sepharose High Performance	70 mg/mL (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	30 to 150 cm/h	150 cm/h	2 to 12	0.5/72
HiTrap Q HP, 1 mL	50 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	up to 1 mL/min	4 mL/min	2 to 12	0.3/43
HiTrap Q HP, 5 mL	250 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	2 to 12	0.3/43
HiPrep Q HP, 20 mL	1000 mg (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	2 to 12	
HiScreen Q HP, 4.7 mL	70 mg/mL (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	0.6 mL/min	1.2 mL/min	2 to 12	0.3/43
<b>Strong cation exchangers</b>					
SP Sepharose High Performance	55 mg/mL (ribonuclease, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	30 to 150 cm/h	150 cm/h	4 to 13	0.5/72
HiTrap SP HP, 1 mL	55 mg (ribonuclease, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	up to 1 mL/min	4 mL/min	4 to 13	0.3/43
HiTrap SP HP, 5 mL	275 mg (ribonuclease, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	4 to 13	0.3/43
HiPrep SP HP 16/10, 20 mL	1100 mg (ribonuclease, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	4 to 13	
HiScreen S HP, 4.7 mL	55 mg/mL (ribonuclease, M <sub>r</sub> 13 500)	0.6 mL/min	1.2 mL/min	4 to 12	0.3/43

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix 5 to convert flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rate (mL/min) and vice versa.

<sup>2</sup> Working pH range refers to the pH interval where the medium can be operated as intended without adverse long-term effects.

<sup>3</sup> Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the medium begins to compress.



**Fig 3.23.** Q and SP Sepharose High Performance media are available prepacked in HiTrap, HiPrep, and HiScreen columns or in media packs.

- 👉 Use prepacked HiTrap columns (1 mL or 5 mL) for media selection, method scouting, group separations, small-scale purification, sample concentration, or clean-up. Connect up to three HiTrap columns in series to scale-up.
- 👉 Use prepacked HiPrep columns (20 mL) for method development, group separations, larger scale purification, or sample concentration.
- 👉 Use prepacked HiScreen columns (4.7 mL, bed height 10 cm) for method development and screening before scaling up with bed height maintained.

For column packing in Tricorn and XK columns, see Table 3.10.

**Table 3.10.** Packing volumes and bed heights for Sepharose Q and SP High Performance media packed in Tricorn and XK columns

Column	Volume (mL)	Bed height (cm)
Tricorn 10/100	up to 8	up to 10
Tricorn 10/150	up to 12	up to 15
Tricorn 10/200	up to 16	up to 20
XK 16/20	up to 30	up to 15
XK 26/20	up to 80	up to 15
XK 26/40	up to 196 mL	> 15 cm

## Purification examples

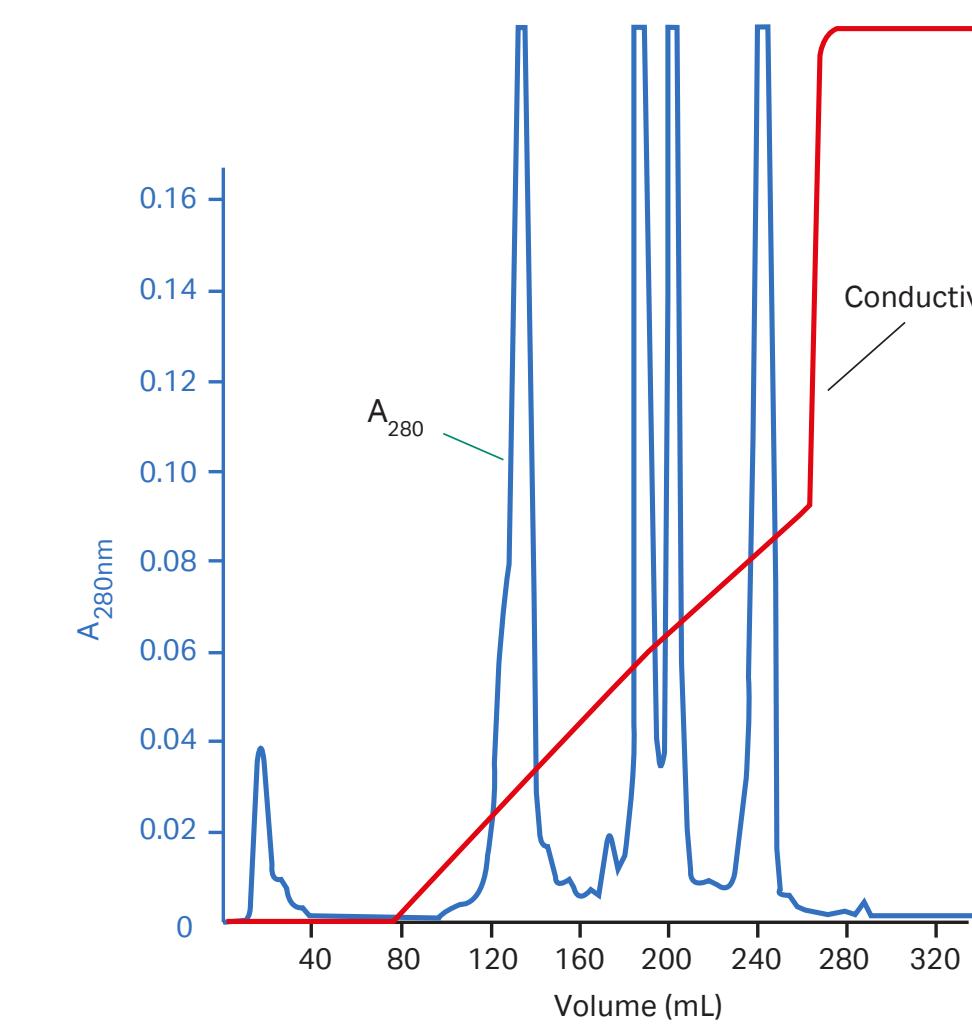
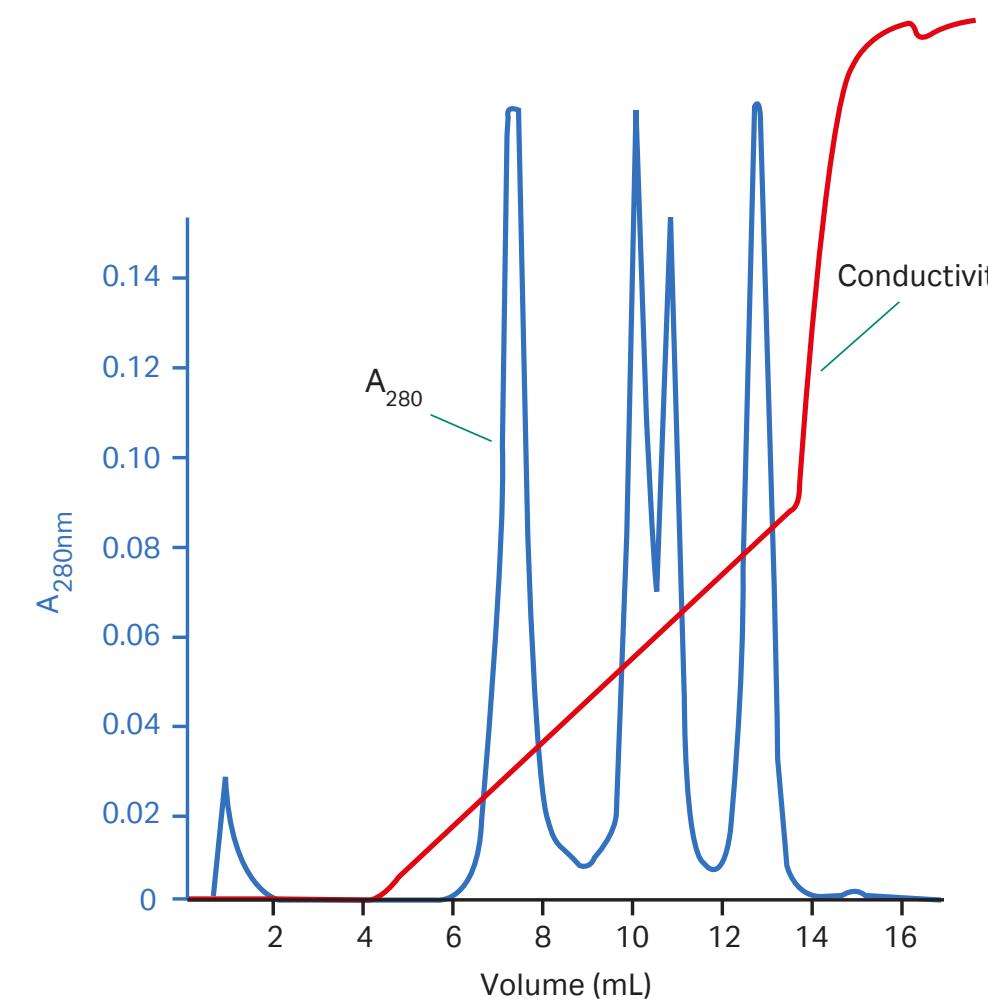
Figure 3.24 shows scaling up from HiTrap SP HP to HiPrep SP HP 16/10. A number of factors were kept constant, such as sample load/mL medium, flow rates and number of CV in the gradient. The separation was maintained through a 20-fold scale-up. The scale-up resulted in similar separation of the sample, which comprised four standard proteins.

### HiTrap SP HP, 1 mL

**Sample:** Concanavalin A, ribonuclease A,  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsinogen A, lysozyme, 4 mg protein/mL (3:3:1:1) in start buffer  
**Sample load:** 1 mg protein/mL medium  
**Sample volume:** 0.25 mL, 25% of CV  
**Flow rate (flow velocity):** 0.5 mL/min (75 cm/h)  
**Start buffer:** 50 mM MES, pH 6.0  
**Elution buffer:** 50 mM MES, 1 M NaCl, pH 6.0  
**Gradient:** 0% to 43% elution buffer over 10 mL (10 CV)

### HiPrep SP HP 16/10, 20 mL

**Sample:** Concanavalin A, ribonuclease A,  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsinogen A, lysozyme, 4 mg protein/mL (3:3:1:1) in start buffer  
**Sample load:** 1 mg protein/mL medium  
**Sample volume:** 5.0 mL, 25% of CV  
**Flow rate (flow velocity):** 2.5 mL/min (75 cm/h)  
**Start buffer:** 50 mM MES, pH 6.0  
**Elution buffer:** 50 mM MES, 1 M NaCl, pH 6.0  
**Gradient:** 0% to 43% elution buffer over 200 mL (10 CV)

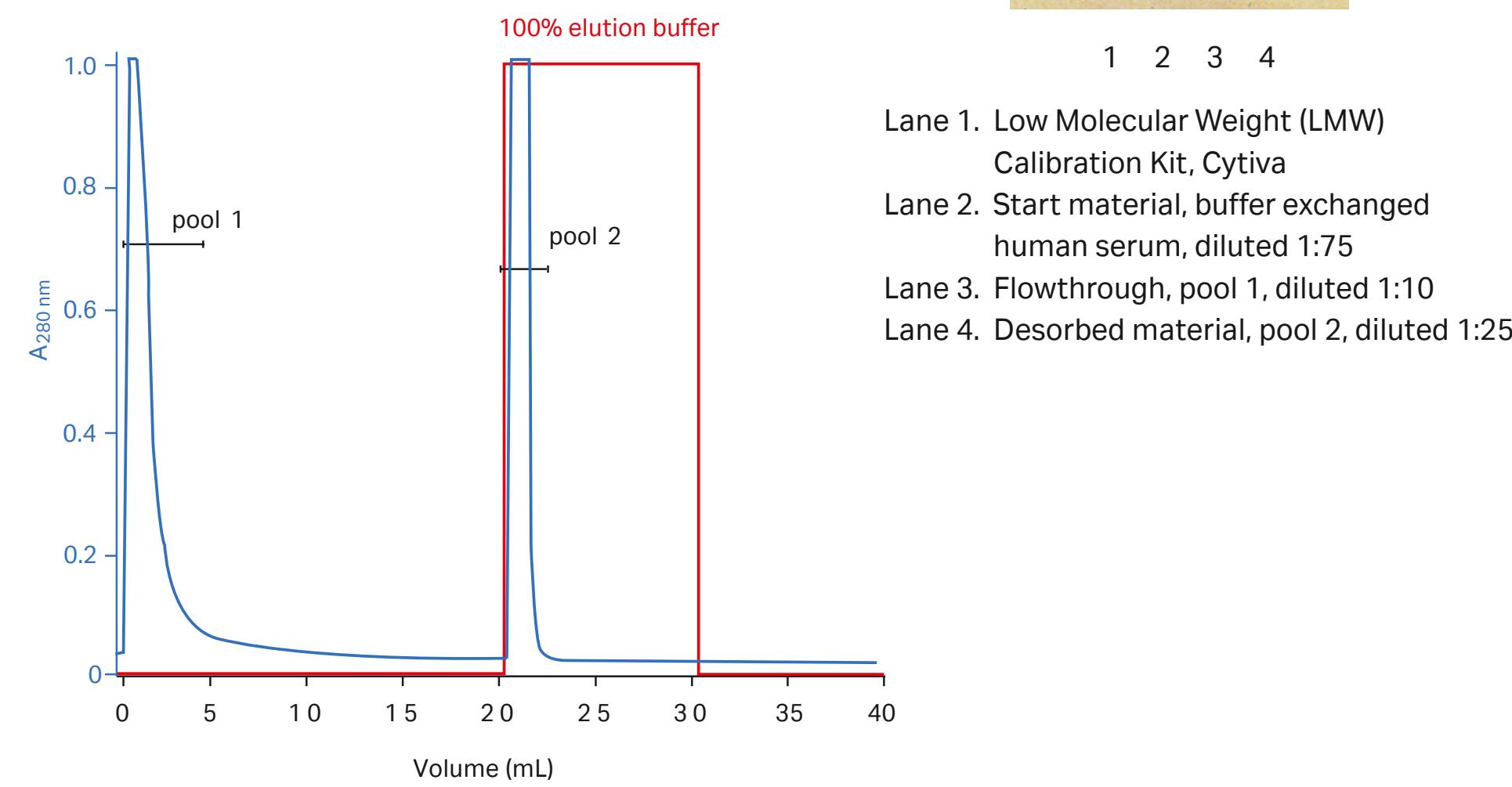


**Fig. 3.24.** Scaling up the separation of four standard proteins from HiTrap SP to HiPrep SP HP 16/10.

## Group separations

Figure 3.25 shows a group separation of human serum proteins on HiTrap Q HP using a one-step elution that had been optimized to ensure that IgG flowed through the column leaving other serum components to be eluted separately.

Column:	HiTrap Q HP 1 mL
Sample:	Human serum, filtered (0.45 µm filter) and buffer exchanged to start buffer on a PD-10 Desalting column
Sample volume:	1.0 mL
Flow rate (flow velocity):	0.5 mL/min (75 cm/h)
Start buffer:	75 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0
Elution buffer:	75 mM Tris-HCl, 1.0 M NaCl, pH 8.0



**Fig 3.25.** Separation of IgG from human serum proteins on HiTrap Q HP 1 mL, using one-step elution. Analysis by SDS-PAGE (silver staining).

## Sample concentration

Concentrating a sample prior to SEC minimizes sample volume and facilitates a rapid, high-resolution size separation. HiTrap columns offer a convenient, ready-to-use solution for sample concentration. Table 3.11 gives examples of the high concentration factors achieved when concentrating proteins from very dilute starting material using HiTrap columns prepacked with Sepharose HP medium. Similar results can be achieved with HiTrap columns prepacked with Sepharose Fast Flow or Sepharose XL media.

**Table 3.11.** Sample concentration using 1 mL HiTrap ion exchange columns

Column	Sample	Sample concentration (µg/mL)	Sample volume (mL)	Eluted concentration (µg/mL)	Volume eluted (mL)	Concentration factor (volume)	Yield (%)
HiTrap Q HP, 1 mL	Human IgG	23	450	3180	3.0	150	92
		10	100	4700	2.0	50	93
		1010	10	3370	3.0	3	100
HiTrap SP HP, 5 mL	Lysozyme	333	150	3170	16.0	9	100
		33	1500	3720	13.2	114	98

## Performing a separation

Guidelines for selection of media, buffer, pH, and ionic strength conditions and method optimization are given in Chapter 2. Use the instructions given here as a basis from which to optimize a separation.

-  Correct sample and buffer preparation is essential in order to achieve optimal separation and avoid any deterioration in column performance. Samples must be fully dissolved and free from particles or other material likely to interfere with the separation. Refer to Chapter 2 and Appendix 1 for recommendations and advice on sample preparation.
-  Filter buffers *after* all salts and additives have been included. Use high-quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions through 0.45 µm or 0.22 µm filters. To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, ensure that column and buffers are at the same temperature when preparing for a run.
-  The pH of the start buffer should be at least 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit above the pI of the target substance when using an anion exchanger (Q) and 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit below the pI of the target substance when using a cation exchanger (S). See Appendix 2 for recommendations on volatile and nonvolatile buffer systems for anion and cation exchangers.

For samples with unknown charge properties, try the following:

### **anion exchange (Q)**

start buffer: 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0

elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 8.0

### **cation exchange (S)**

start buffer: 20 mM 2-(N-Morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid (MES), pH 6.0

elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 6.0

-  Users of ÄKTA systems with automatic buffer preparation functionality can select one of the buffer recipes recommended for anion exchange chromatography at pH 8.0 or cation exchange chromatography at pH 6.0, see *ÄKTA Laboratory-scale Chromatography Systems: Instrument Management Handbook*, 29010831.

## First-time use or after long-term storage

1. To remove ethanol, wash with 1 CV of distilled water at 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 0.6 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL), 0.8 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 25 cm/h for Sepharose High Performance packed in larger columns. This step ensures removal of ethanol and avoids the risk of precipitation if buffer salts were to come into contact with the ethanol. The step can be omitted if precipitation is not likely to be a problem.
2. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer at 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL) 0.6 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL), 3 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL) or at 50 cm/h for Sepharose High Performance packed in larger columns.
3. Wash with 5 CV of elution buffer, same flow as step 2.
4. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer, same flow as step 2.
5. Run a blank elution before applying sample.

## Separation by gradient elution

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 0.6 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL), 3 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 50 to 100 cm/h for Sepharose High Performance packed in larger columns. Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV and an increasing ionic strength up to 0.5 M NaCl (50%B).
5. Wash with 5 CV of 1 M NaCl (100%B) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

## Separation by step elution

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), 0.6 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL), or at 50 to 100 cm/h for Sepharose High Performance packed in larger columns.

Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH and conductivity are stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Elute the target protein with 5 CV of start buffer containing NaCl at chosen ionic strength.
5. If necessary: repeat step 4 at higher ionic strengths until the target protein(s) has been eluted.
6. Wash with 5 CV of a high salt solution (1 M NaCl in start buffer) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
7. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

 Save time by using higher flow rates during the high salt wash and re-equilibration steps. Do not exceed the maximum recommended flow for the medium.

 If ionic detergents have been used, wash the column with 5 CV of distilled water, followed by 2 CV of 2 M NaCl. Re-equilibrate with at least 10 CV of start buffer until the UV baseline, eluent pH and/or conductivity are stable. Organic solvents such as ethanol can be used to remove nonionic detergents. When selecting an organic solvent, check the chemical stability of the medium to determine a suitable concentration.

 Check column performance regularly by determining column efficiency and peak symmetry. See Appendix 3. Note that this does not apply to HiTrap columns.

## Cleaning

Correct preparation of samples and buffers and application of a high salt wash (1 M NaCl) at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing back pressure or complete blockage are all indicators that the medium needs to be cleaned using more stringent procedures to remove contaminants.

 Reverse the direction of flow during column cleaning so that contaminants do not need to pass through the entire length of the column. The number of column volumes and time required for each cleaning step varies according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure to remove common contaminants does not restore column performance, change the top filter (when possible) before trying alternative cleaning methods. Care should be taken when changing a filter as this can affect column packing and interfere with performance.

## Removing common contaminants

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 0.6 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL), 3 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 40 cm/h with a contact time of 1 to 2 h for Sepharose High Performance packed in larger columns.

1. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl at 0.6 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL) 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 3 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 40 cm/h with a contact time of 1 to 2 h for Sepharose High Performance packed in larger columns.
2. Wash with at least 4 CV of 1 M NaOH.
3. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl.
4. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water until the UV-baseline and the eluent pH are stable.
5. Wash with at least 4 CV of start buffer or storage buffer until eluent pH and conductivity have reached the required values.

 To remove precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins, refer to Appendix 1.

## Chemical stability

For daily use, Sepharose High Performance media are stable in all common, aqueous buffers, 1 M NaOH, denaturing agents (8 M urea, 6 M guanidine hydrochloride), 70% ethanol, 1 M acetic acid, 30% acetonitrile, and with additives such as nonionic detergents.

Sepharose High Performance can be used with organic solvents such as dimethylsulfoxide, dimethylformamide, tetrahydrofuran, acetone, chloroform, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, and dichloroethane/pyridine (50:50) as well as polar solvents and aqueous/organic solutions. The water in the medium can be exchanged by the alternative solvent with very little effect on the pore size of the matrix.

 Avoid cationic detergents with SP Sepharose High Performance. Avoid anionic detergents with Q Sepharose High Performance. Avoid oxidizing agents.

## Storage

For column storage, wash with 2 CV of distilled water followed by 2 CV of 20% ethanol. Include 0.2 M sodium acetate in the 20% ethanol solution for columns packed with SP Sepharose High Performance. Degas the ethanol/water mixture thoroughly and apply at a low flow rate to avoid overpressuring the column. Store at room temperature or, for long periods, store at 4°C to 8°C. Ensure that the column is sealed well to avoid drying out. Whenever possible, use the storage and shipping device if supplied by the manufacturer. Store unused media at 4°C to 30°C in 20% ethanol. Do not freeze.

 To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, ensure that column and buffers are at the same temperature when preparing for a run.

## Sepharose Fast Flow: purification with good resolution and easy scale-up

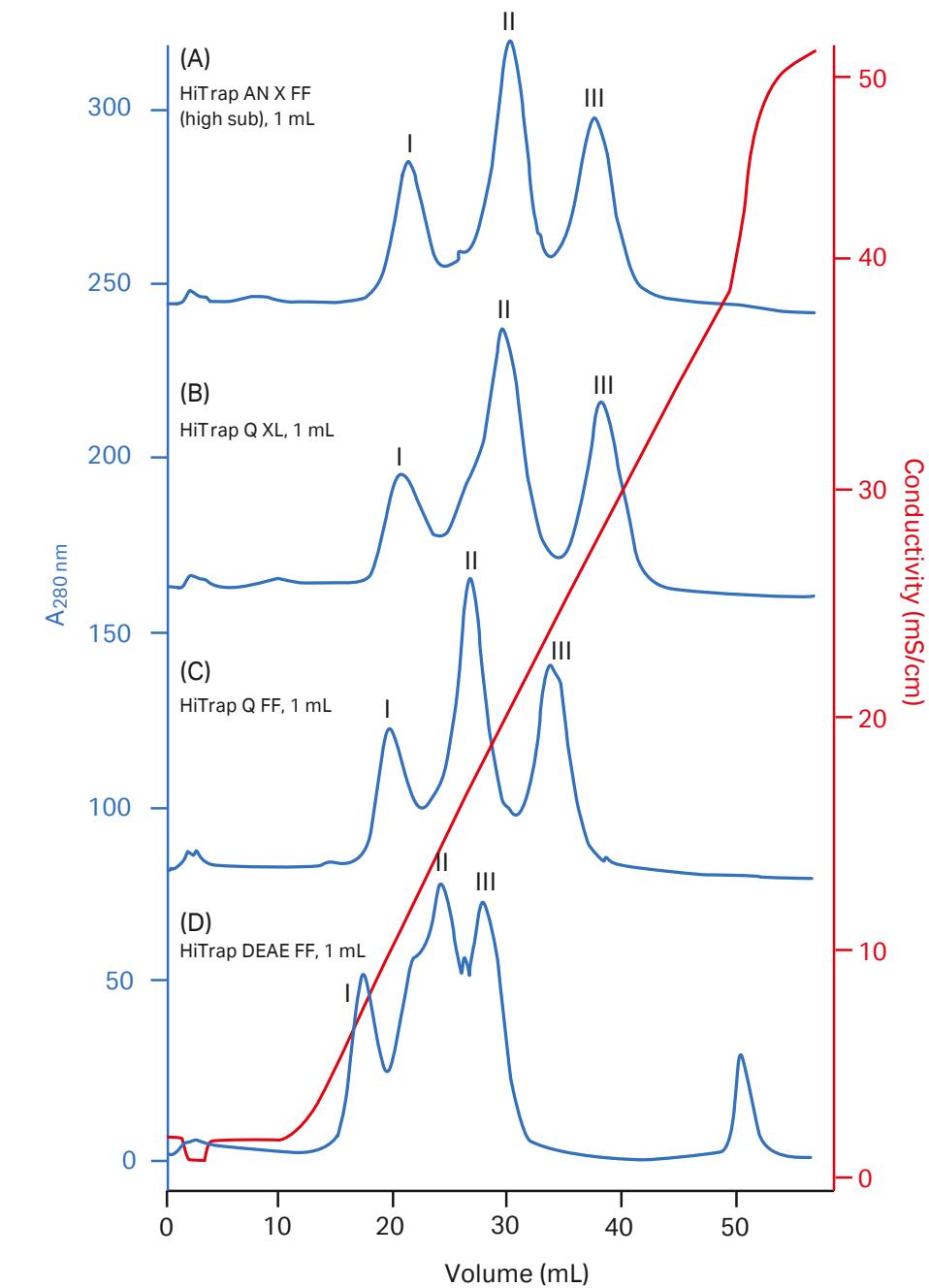
- Use Sepharose Fast Flow for capture or intermediate purification steps that require good resolution (flow velocity up to 300 cm/h).
- Use a weak ion exchanger such as DEAE, CM, or ANX Sepharose Fast Flow, if a strong ion exchanger (substituted with Q or SP) does not give the required selectivity.
- Run Sepharose Fast Flow columns on ÄKTA chromatography systems, HPLC systems, or systems using peristaltic pumps. Appendix 4 provides guidance on selecting the right ÄKTA system.

Sepharose Fast Flow media are based on a matrix of 90 µm particles made from 6% agarose and highly cross-linked for chemical and physical stability. ANX Sepharose 4 Fast Flow (high sub) is based on 4% agarose to form a medium that maintains a high binding capacity when separating large molecules such as thyroglobulin ( $M_r = 650\,000$ ), particularly suitable for large-scale production when total binding capacity becomes economically significant.

Sepharose Fast Flow matrices are substituted with a range of ion exchange groups (Q, DEAE, ANX, SP, and CM) giving the opportunity to test and use different selectivities (see Chapter 1 for an explanation of strong and weak ion exchangers). Ion exchangers containing strong ion exchange groups (Q and SP) maintain their charge over a broad pH range, allowing selection of the most suitable pH for each application.

Ion exchangers containing weak ion exchange groups (DEAE, CM, and ANX) offer alternative selectivities, but over a narrower pH working range. Figure 3.26 illustrates how the selectivity of Sepharose Fast Flow media changes according to the anion exchange group.

Particle size and bed volumes remain stable, despite changes in ionic strength or pH, to ensure fast separations at high flow rates with good resolution. Methods can be easily scaled up from columns such as HiTrap Q FF (1 mL, prepacked with Q Sepharose Fast Flow) through to large-scale columns such as FineLINE. The performance of Sepharose Fast Flow is well documented and there are many examples of the smooth transfer from the laboratory to pilot scale and on to production.



**Fig 3.26.** Separation of conalbumin (I),  $\alpha$ -lactalbumin (II) and soya bean trypsin inhibitor (III) on a range of anion exchange HiTrap columns demonstrates the difference in selectivity according to the anion exchange group.

Columns:	(A) HiTrap ANX FF (high sub), 1 mL (B) HiTrap Q XL, 1 mL (C) HiTrap Q FF, 1 mL (D) HiTrap DEAE FF, 1 mL
Sample:	0.4 mg conalbumin ( $pI = 6.3$ ), 0.8 mg $\alpha$ -lactoglobulin ( $pI = 5.8$ ), 1.2 mg soya bean trypsin inhibitor ( $pI = 4.5$ ) dissolved in 2 mL start buffer
Sample volume:	2 mL
Start buffer:	20 mM Tris-HCl pH 7.4
Elution buffer:	20 mM Tris-HCl, 500 mM NaCl pH 7.4
Flow rate:	1 mL/min (150 cm/h)
Gradient:	0% elution buffer (25 CV), 0% to 80% elution buffer (40 CV)
Wash:	5 mL start buffer
Elution:	40 mL, linear gradient, 0% to 80% elution buffer

## Media characteristics

Composition:

- Sulfopropyl (SP), carboxymethyl (CM), quaternary amino (Q) or diethylaminoethyl (DEAE) groups coupled to highly cross-linked 6% agarose via chemically stable ether bonds
- Diethylaminopropyl (ANX) group coupled to highly cross-linked 4% agarose via chemically stable ether bonds

The characteristics of Sepharose Fast Flow media are shown in Table 3.12.

**Table 3.12.** Characteristics of Sepharose Fast Flow media

Product	Functional group	pH stability <sup>1</sup>	Mean particle size ( $\mu\text{m}$ )
Q Sepharose Fast Flow	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}^+-(\text{CH}_3)_3$	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 2 to 14	90
SP Sepharose Fast Flow	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{SO}_3^-$	Long term: 4 to 13 Short term: 3 to 14	90
DEAE Sepharose Fast Flow	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}^+-(\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_3)_2$	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 2 to 14	90
ANX Sepharose 4 Fast Flow	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CHOH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}^+-(\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_3)_2$	Long term: 3 to 13 Short term: 2 to 14	90
CM Sepharose Fast Flow	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{COO}^-$	Long term: 4 to 13 Short term: 2 to 14	90

<sup>1</sup> Long-term pH stability refers to the pH interval where the medium is stable over a long period of time without adverse side effects on the chromatography performance. Short-term, pH stability refers to the pH interval for regeneration, cleaning-in-place, and sanitization procedures. All ranges are estimates based on experience and knowledge gained at Cytiva.

## Purification options

Sepharose Fast Flow media, with a range of selectivities, are available prepacked in HiTrap, HiScreen, and HiPrep columns and in media packs (Fig 3.27). Purification options for the media and prepacked columns are shown in Table 3.13.



**Fig 3.27.** The range of Sepharose Fast Flow is available in media packs and prepacked HiTrap, HiPrep, and HiScreen columns. The media are also available in high-throughput process development (HTPD) format, see Chapter 5, *Large-scale purification*.

**Table 3.13.** Purification options for Sepharose Fast Flow media and prepacked columns

Product	Binding capacity per column or per mL medium	Recommended working flow <sup>1</sup>	Maximum flow <sup>1</sup>	Working pH range <sup>2</sup>	Maximum operating back pressure <sup>3</sup> (MPa/psi) 1 MPa = 10 bar
<b>Strong anion exchangers</b>					
Q Sepharose Fast Flow	3 mg/mL (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000) 120 mg/mL (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000) 110 mg/mL, ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300)	50 to 400 cm/h	750 cm/h	2 to 12	0.3/43
HiTrap Q FF, 1 mL	3 mg (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000) 120 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000) 110 mg ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300)	up to 1 mL/min	4 mL/min	2 to 12	0.3/43
HiTrap Q FF, 5 mL	15 mg (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000) 600 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000) 550 mg ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	2 to 12	0.3/43
HiScreen Q FF, 4.7 mL	120 mg/mL (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	2.3 mL/min	3.5 mL/min	2 to 12	0.15/22
HiPrep Q FF 16/10, 20 mL	60 mg (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000) 2400 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000) 2200 mg ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300)	2 to 10 mL/min	10 mL/min	2 to 12	0.15/22
<b>Weak anion exchangers</b>					
DEAE Sepharose Fast Flow	100 mg/mL ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300) 110 mg/mL (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	50 to 400 cm/h	750 cm/h	2 to 9	0.3/43
ANX Sepharose 4 Fast Flow (high sub)	43 mg/mL (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000) 5 mg/mL (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000)	50 to 300 cm/h	400 cm/h	3 to 10	0.1/14
HiTrap DEAE FF, 1 mL	100 mg ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300) 110 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	up to 1 mL/min	4 mL/min	2 to 9	0.3/43
HiTrap DEAE FF, 5 mL	500 mg ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300) 550 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	2 to 9	0.3/43
HiScreen DEAE FF	110 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	2.3 mL/min	3.5 mL/min	2 to 9	0.15/22
HiPrep DEAE FF 16/10, 20 mL	2000 mg ( $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, M <sub>r</sub> 14 300) 2200 mg (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	2 to 10 mL/min	10 mL/min	2 to 9	0.15/22
HiTrap ANX FF (high sub), 1 mL	43 mg (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000) 5 mg (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000)	up to 1 mL/min	4 mL/min	3 to 10	0.3/43
HiTrap ANX FF (high sub), 5 mL	215 mg (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000) 25 mg (thyroglobulin, M <sub>r</sub> 669 000)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	3 to 10	0.3/43

Continues on following page

Table 3.13 cont.

Product	Binding capacity per column or per mL medium	Recommended working flow <sup>1</sup>	Maximum flow <sup>1</sup>	Working pH range <sup>2</sup>	Maximum operating back pressure <sup>3</sup> (MPa/psi) 1 MPa = 10 bar
<b>Strong cation exchangers</b>					
SP Sepharose Fast Flow	50 mg/mL (bovine COHb, M <sub>r</sub> 69 000) 50 mg/mL (human IgG, M <sub>r</sub> 160 000) 70 mg/mL (ribonuclease A, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	50 to 400 cm/h	750 cm/h	4 to 13	0.3/43
HiTrap SP FF, 1 mL	50 mg (bovine COHb, M <sub>r</sub> 69 000) 50 mg (human IgG, M <sub>r</sub> 160 000) 70 mg (ribonuclease A, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	up to 1 mL/min	4 mL/min	4 to 13	0.3/43
HiTrap SP FF, 5 mL	250 mg (bovine COHb, M <sub>r</sub> 69 000) 250 mg (human IgG, M <sub>r</sub> 160 000) 350 mg (ribonuclease A, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	4 to 13	0.3/43
HiScreen SP FF, 4.7 mL	110 mg/mL (HSA, M <sub>r</sub> 68 000)	2.3 mL/min	3.5 mL/min	4 to 13	0.15/22
HiPrep SP FF 16/10, 20 mL	1000 mg (bovine COHb, M <sub>r</sub> 69 000) 1000 mg (human IgG, M <sub>r</sub> 160 000) 1400 mg (ribonuclease A, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	2 to 10 mL/min	10 mL/min	4 to 13	0.15/22
<b>Weak cation exchangers</b>					
CM Sepharose Fast Flow	50 mg/mL medium (ribonuclease A, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	50 to 400 cm/h	750 cm/h	6 to 10	0.3/43
HiTrap CM FF, 1 mL	50 mg (ribonuclease A, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	up to 1 mL/min	4 mL/min	6 to 10	0.3/43
HiTrap CM FF, 5 mL	250 mg (ribonuclease A, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	6 to 10	0.3/43
HiPrep CM FF 16/10, 20 mL	1000 mg (ribonuclease A, M <sub>r</sub> 13 700)	2 to 10 mL/min	10 mL/min	6 to 10	0.15/22

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix 5 to convert flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rate (mL/min) and vice versa.<sup>2</sup> Working pH range refers to the pH interval where the medium can be operated as intended without adverse long-term effects.<sup>3</sup> Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the medium begins to compress.

- 👉 Use prepacked HiTrap columns (1 mL or 5 mL) for media selection, method scouting, group separations, small-scale purification, sample concentration, or clean-up. Connect up to three HiTrap columns in series to scale-up.
- 👉 Use prepacked HiPrep columns (20 mL) for method development, group separations, larger scale purification, sample concentration or clean-up. Connect several HiPrep columns in series to increase binding capacity.
- 👉 Use prepacked HiScreen columns (4.7 mL, bed height 10 cm) for method development and screening before scaling up with bed height maintained.

For column packing in Tricorn and XK columns, see Table 3.14. Select a production column such as BPG or Chromaflow for larger volumes.

**Table 3.14.** Packing volumes and bed heights for Sepharose Fast Flow media packed in Tricorn and XK columns

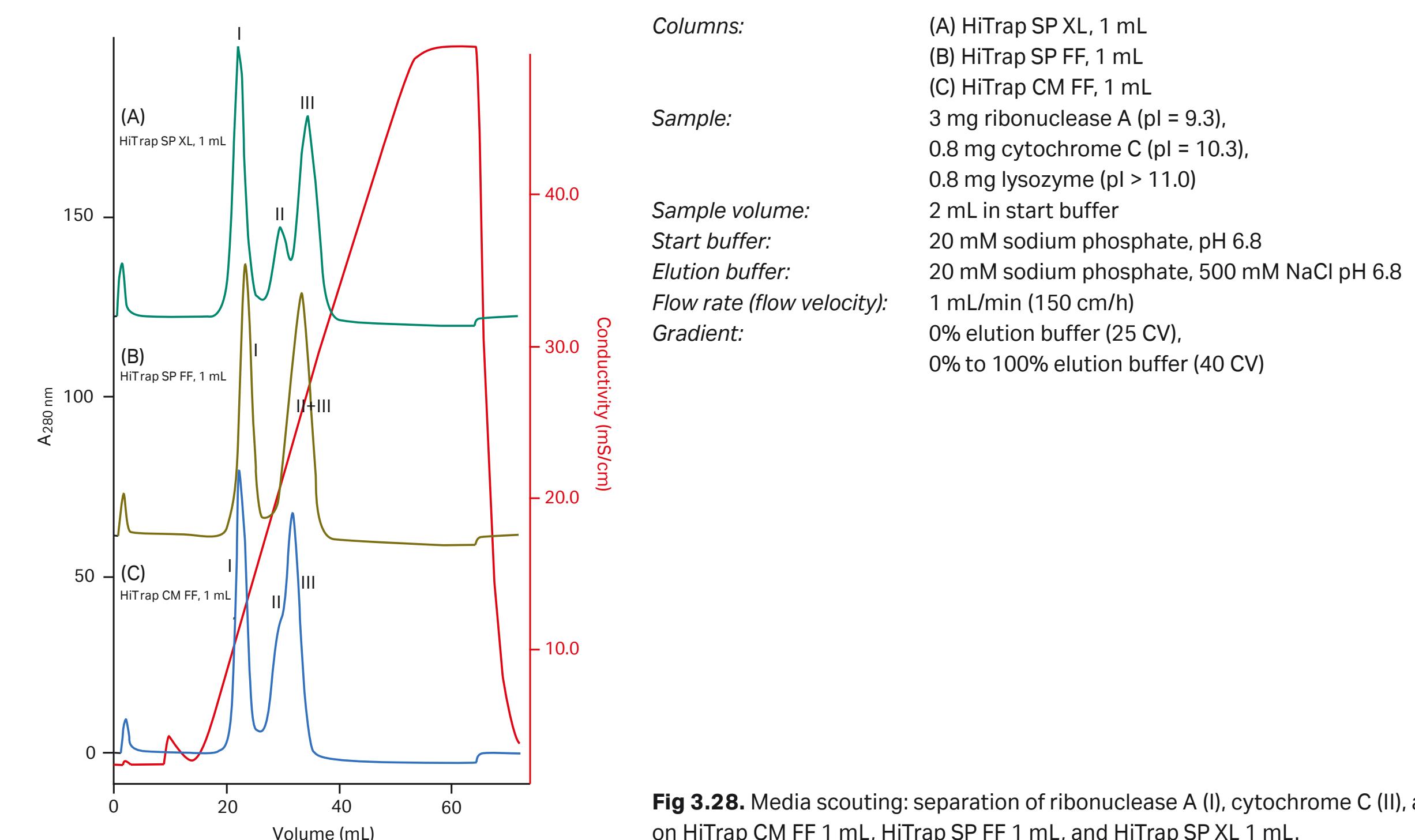
Column	Volume (mL)	Bed height (cm)
Tricorn 10/100	up to 8	up to 10
Tricorn 10/150	up to 12	up to 15
Tricorn 10/200	up to 16	up to 20
XK 16/20	up to 30	up to 15
XK 26/20	up to 80	up to 15
XK 26/40	up to 196	> 15
XK 50/20	up to 274	up to 14
XK 50/30	up to 559	up to 28.5

## Purification examples

### Media scouting

Using 1 mL HiTrap columns the most suitable matrix and charged group for a separation can be quickly and easily selected before optimization and scale-up. In Figure 3.28, a comparison of elution profiles for the same sample separated under identical conditions on three different Sepharose media illustrates the differences in selectivity and resolution that can result from changing the charge group and the particle size. The most suitable medium can be selected and optimized according to the requirements for the separation, for example to isolate a single, well-resolved peak or to maximize resolution between several peaks of interest.

- 👉 Begin by scouting on the strong ion exchangers (Q, S, or SP) in order to find the greatest differences in charge between the molecules of interest.

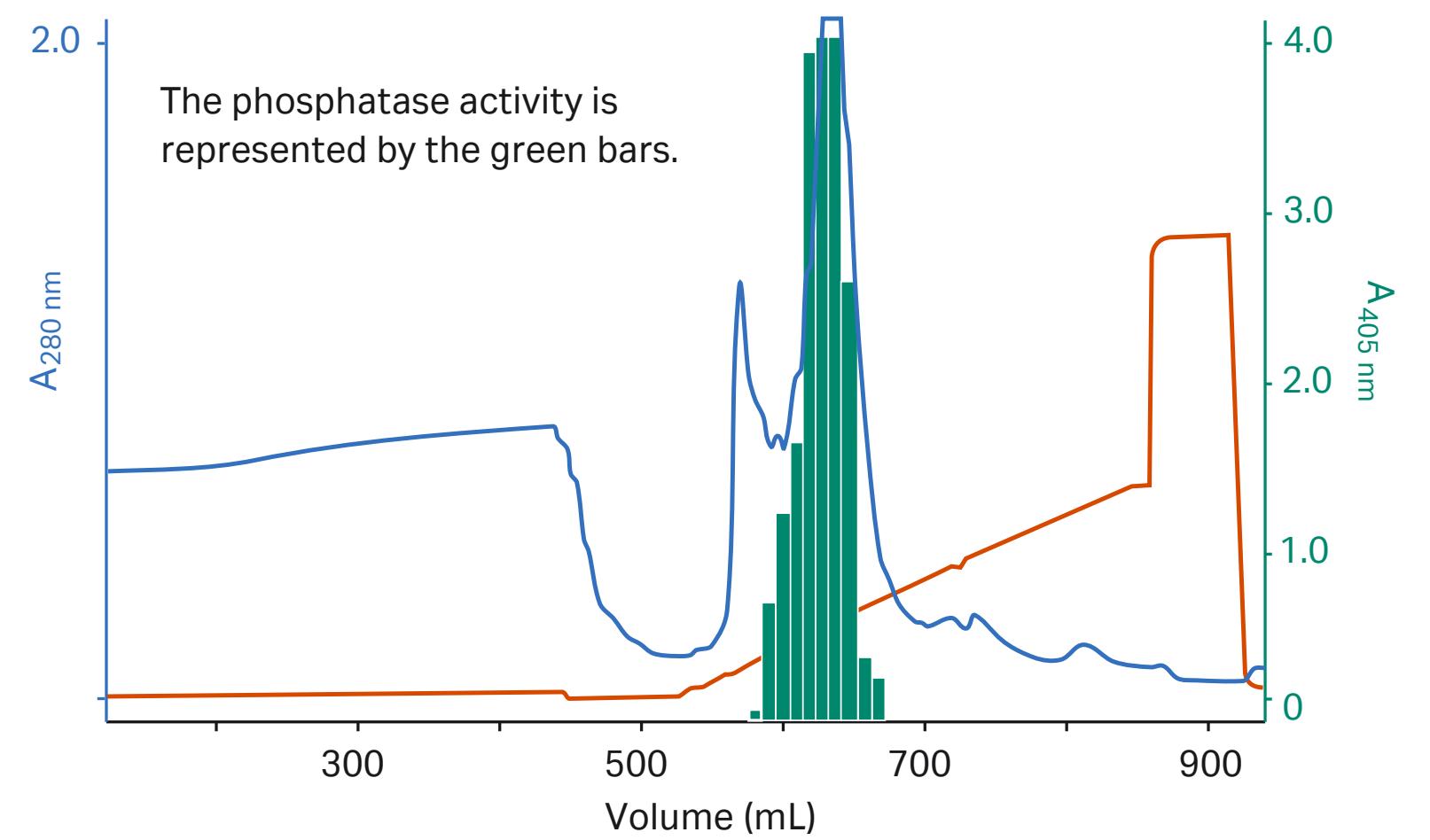


**Fig 3.28.** Media scouting: separation of ribonuclease A (I), cytochrome C (II), and lysozyme (III) on HiTrap CM FF 1 mL, HiTrap SP FF 1 mL, and HiTrap SP XL 1 mL.

## Capture

An example of capture using Sepharose DEAE Fast Flow medium prepacked in HiPrep DEAE FF 16/10 is shown in Figure 3.29.

*Column:* HiPrep DEAE FF 16/10, 20 mL  
*Sample:* 200 mL clarified *E. coli* supernatant, diluted 1:2 with water, pH 6.6,  
conductivity 2.6 mS/cm  
*Start buffer:* 25 mM Tris-HCl, 10% glycerol, 1 mM EDTA, 2 mM DTT, pH 7.4  
*Elution buffer:* 1 M NaCl, 25 mM Tris-HCl, 10% glycerol, 1 mM EDTA, 2 mM DTT, pH 7.4  
*Flow rate (flow velocity):* 5 mL/min (150 cm/h)  
*Gradient:* 0% elution buffer (6 CV)  
0% to 50% elution buffer (20 CV)  
50% elution buffer (1 CV)  
100% elution buffer (2 CV)



**Fig 3.29.** A HiPrep DEAE FF 16/10 column is used as the capture step to concentrate rPhosphatase and remove most of the contaminants.

## Scaling-up

Figure 3.30 shows the ease with which separations can be scaled up on columns prepacked with Sepharose Fast Flow. Beginning with a 1 mL HiTrap column the reproducibility of the separation has been maintained through a 20-fold scale-up.

Sample:  
1. Conalbumin, 2 mg/mL  
2.  $\alpha$ -lactalbumin, 4 mg/mL  
3. Soy trypsin inhibitor, 6 mg/mL

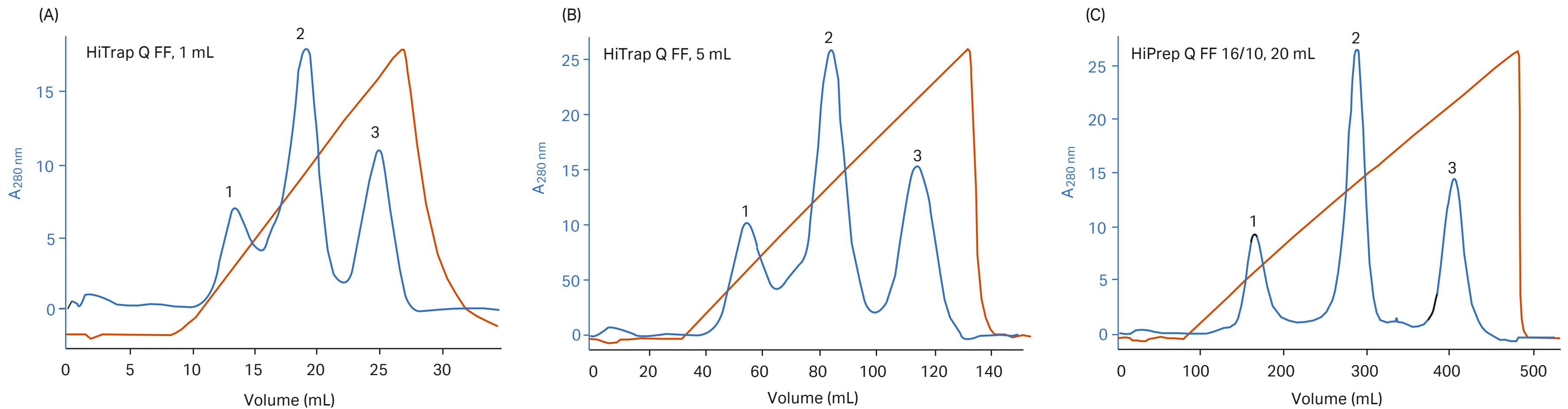
Sample volume:  
1 CV  
(A) 1 mL, (B) 5 mL, (C) 20 mL

Start buffer:  
50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.3

Elution buffer:  
50 mM Tris-HCl, 500 mM NaCl, pH 7.3

Flow velocity (flow rates):  
150 cm/h (1 mL/min using HiTrap 1 mL, 5 mL/min using HiTrap 5 mL and HiPrep 16/10 columns)  
0% to 100% elution buffer in 20 CV (A) 20 mL, (B) 100 mL, (C) 400 mL

Gradient:  
0% to 100% elution buffer in 20 CV (A) 20 mL, (B) 100 mL, (C) 400 mL



**Fig 3.30.** Five-fold and 20-fold scale-up using prepakced Q Sepharose Fast Flow prepakced columns.

## Sample concentration

It can be an advantage to concentrate a sample prior to SEC in order to minimize sample volume and facilitate a rapid, high-resolution size separation. HiTrap columns offer a convenient, ready-to-use solution for sample concentration.

Table 3.11 earlier in the chapter gives examples of the high concentration factors achieved when concentrating proteins from very dilute starting material using HiTrap columns prepakced with Sepharose High Performance medium. Similar results can be achieved with HiTrap columns prepakced with Sepharose Fast Flow or Sepharose XL media.

## Performing a separation

Guidelines for selection of media, buffer, pH, and ionic strength conditions and method optimization are given in Chapter 2. Use the instructions given here as a basis from which to optimize a separation.

-  Correct sample and buffer preparation is essential in order to achieve optimal separation and avoid any deterioration in column performance. Samples must be fully dissolved and free from particles or other material likely to interfere with the separation. Refer to Chapter 2 and Appendix 1 for recommendations and advice on sample preparation.
-  Filter buffers *after* all salts and additives have been included. Use high quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions using filters of 1 µm or less. To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, maintain buffers and columns at a constant temperature before and during a run.
-  The pH of the start buffer should be at least 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit above the pI of the target substance when using an anion exchanger (Q, DEAE, or ANX) and 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit below the pI of the target substance when using a cation exchanger (SP, CM). See Appendix 2 for recommendations on volatile and nonvolatile buffer systems for anion and cation exchangers.

For samples with unknown charge properties, try the following:

### **anion exchange (Q)**

start buffer: 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0

elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 8.0

### **cation exchange (SP)**

start buffer: 20 mM 2-(N-Morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid (MES), pH 6.0

elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 6.0

-  If selectivity is not satisfactory when using a strong ion exchanger (Q or SP), try a weak ion exchanger (DEAE, ANX, or CM) instead.
-  Users of ÄKTA systems with automatic buffer preparation functionality can select one of the buffer recipes recommended for anion exchange chromatography at pH 8.0 or cation exchange chromatography at pH 6.0, see *ÄKTA Laboratory-scale Chromatography Systems: Instrument Management Handbook*, 29010831.

## First-time use or after long-term storage

1. To remove ethanol, wash with 1 CV of distilled water at 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL, HiScreen 4.7 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 2 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 50 cm/h for Sepharose Fast Flow packed in larger columns. This step ensures removal of ethanol and avoids the risk of precipitation if buffer salts were to come into contact with the ethanol. The step can be omitted if precipitation is not likely to be a problem.
2. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer at 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 2.3 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), or 5 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL).
3. Wash with 5 CV of elution buffer, same flow as step 2.
4. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer, same flow as step 2.

## Separation by gradient elution

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 2.3 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL), 5 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 150 cm/h for Sepharose Fast Flow packed in larger columns. Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable, i.e., when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV and an increasing ionic strength up to 0.5 M NaCl (50% B).
5. Wash with 5 CV of 1 M NaCl (100% B) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

## Separation by step elution

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 2.3 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL), 5 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 150 cm/h for Sepharose Fast Flow packed in larger columns.

Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Elute the target protein with 5 CV of start buffer containing NaCl at chosen ionic strength.
5. If necessary: repeat step 4 at higher ionic strengths until the target protein(s) has been eluted.
6. Wash with 5 CV of a high salt solution (1 M NaCl in start buffer) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
7. Re-equilibrate 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

- ☞ Save time by using higher flow rates during the high salt wash and re-equilibration steps. Do not exceed the maximum recommended flow for the medium.
- ☞ If ionic detergents have been used, wash the column with 5 CV of distilled water, followed by 2 CV of 2 M NaCl. Re-equilibrate with at least 10 CV of start buffer until the UV baseline, eluent pH and/or conductivity are stable. Organic solvents such as ethanol can be used to remove nonionic detergents. When selecting an organic solvent, check the chemical stability of the medium to determine a suitable concentration.
- ☞ Refer to Chapter 2 for advice on optimizing the separation.
- ☞ Check column performance regularly by determining column efficiency and peak symmetry, see Appendix 3. Note that Appendix 3 does not apply to HiTrap or HiPrep columns.

## Cleaning

Correct preparation of samples and buffers and application of a high salt wash (1 M NaCl) at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing back pressure or complete blockage are all indications that the medium needs to be cleaned using more stringent procedures in order to remove contaminants.

- ☞ Reverse the direction of flow during column cleaning so that contaminants do not need to pass through the entire length of the column. The number of column volumes and time required for each cleaning step varies according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure to remove common contaminants does not restore column performance, change the top filter (when possible) before trying alternative cleaning methods. Care should be taken when changing a filter as this can affect the column packing and interfere with performance.

## Removing common contaminants

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL, HiScreen 4.7 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 5 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 40 cm/h with a contact time of 1 to 2 h for Sepharose Fast Flow packed in larger columns.

1. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl.
2. Wash with at least 4 CV of 1 M NaOH.
3. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl.
4. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water (same flow as step 1) until the UV-baseline and the eluent pH are stable.
5. Wash with at least 4 CV of start buffer or storage buffer until eluent pH and conductivity have reached the required values.

To remove precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins, refer to Appendix 1.

## Chemical stability

For daily use, Sepharose Fast Flow media are stable in all common, aqueous buffers, 1 M NaOH, denaturing agents (8 M urea, 6 M guanidine hydrochloride), with additives such as nonionic detergents, 70% ethanol, 1 M acetic acid, and 30% isopropanol.

Sepharose Fast Flow can be used with organic solvents such as dimethylsulfoxide, dimethylformamide, tetrahydrofuran, acetone, chloroform, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, and dichloroethane/pyridine (50:50) as well as polar solvents and aqueous/organic solutions. The water in the medium can be exchanged by the alternative solvent with very little effect on the pore size of the matrix.

- ☞ Avoid cationic detergents with SP or CM Sepharose Fast Flow. Avoid anionic detergents with Q, DEAE, or ANX Sepharose Fast Flow. Avoid oxidizing agents.

## Storage

For column storage, wash with 2 CV of distilled water followed by 2 CV of 20% ethanol. Include 0.2 M sodium acetate in the 20% ethanol solution for SP Sepharose Fast Flow. Degas the ethanol/water mixture thoroughly and apply at a low flow rate to avoid over-pressuring the column. Store at room temperature or, for long periods, store at 4°C to 8°C. Ensure that the column is sealed well to avoid drying out. Whenever possible, use the storage and shipping device if supplied by the manufacturer. Store unused media at 4°C to 30°C in 20% ethanol. Do not freeze.

- ☞ To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, ensure that column and buffers are at the same temperature when preparing for a run.

## Sepharose XL: for selected proteins that require very high binding capacity to increase productivity, easy scale-up

-  Use Sepharose XL media for purification of proteins when improved binding capacity compared to other Sepharose media has been confirmed for the selected protein.
-  Use Sepharose XL at the beginning of a purification scheme for initial capture when a high binding capacity and rapid separation is required for a selected protein from clarified samples.
-  Run columns packed with Sepharose XL on systems such as ÄKTA, HPLC, or systems using peristaltic pumps. Appendix 4 provides guidance on selecting the right ÄKTA system.

Sepharose XL media are based on a matrix of 90 µm particles, made from 6% agarose and highly cross-linked for chemical and physical stability, substituted with quaternary ammonium (Q) or sulfopropyl (SP) groups. The ionic groups are bound to long, flexible dextran chains which have been coupled to the agarose. This increases the exposure of the Q or SP groups thereby raising the binding capacity to a very high level without restricting the passage of charged molecules. The strong ion exchange groups maintain their charge over a broad pH range, allowing selection of the most suitable pH for each application. Particle size and bed volumes remain stable, despite changes in ionic strength or pH, to ensure fast separations at high flow rates with good resolution.

### Media characteristics

Composition: sulfopropyl (SP) or quaternary amino (Q) groups attached via chemically stable ether bonds to long, flexible dextran chains that are covalently coupled to highly cross-linked 6% agarose (Table 3.15).

**Table 3.15.** Characteristics of Sepharose XL media

Product	Functional group	pH stability <sup>1</sup>	Mean particle size (µm)
Q Sepharose XL	-CH <sub>2</sub> -N <sup>+</sup> -(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 2 to 14	90
SP Sepharose XL	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -SO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Long term: 4 to 13 Short term: 3 to 14	90

<sup>1</sup> Long-term pH stability refers to the pH interval where the medium is stable over a long period of time without adverse side effects on the chromatography performance. Short-term pH stability refers to the pH interval for regeneration, cleaning-in-place, and sanitization procedures. All ranges are estimates based on experience and knowledge gained at Cytiva.

## Purification options

Q and SP Sepharose XL are available in chromatography media packs as well as convenient prepacked HiTrap columns for small-scale purification and HiPrep columns for scale-up (Fig 3.31). Purification options for the media and prepacked columns are shown in Table 3.16.

**Table 3.16.** Purification options for Sepharose XL media and prepacked columns

Product	Binding capacity per column or per mL medium	Recommended working flow <sup>1</sup>	Maximum flow <sup>1</sup>	Working pH range <sup>2</sup>	Maximum operating back pressure <sup>3</sup> (MPa/psi) 1 MPa = 10 bar
<b>Strong anion exchangers</b>					
Q Sepharose XL	> 130 mg/mL (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000)	300 to 500 cm/h	700 cm/h	2 to 12	0.3/43
HiTrap Q XL, 1 mL	> 130 mg (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000)	up to 1 mL/min	4 mL/min	2 to 12	0.3/43
HiTrap Q XL, 5 mL	> 650 mg (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	2 to 12	0.3/43
HiPrep Q XL 16/10, 20 mL	> 2600 mg (BSA, M <sub>r</sub> 67 000)	2 to 10 mL/min	10 mL/min	2 to 12	0.15/22
<b>Strong cation exchangers</b>					
SP Sepharose XL	> 160 mg/mL (lysozyme, M <sub>r</sub> 14 500)	300 to 500 cm/h	700 cm/h	4 to 13	0.3/43
HiTrap SP XL, 1 mL	> 160 mg (lysozyme, M <sub>r</sub> 14 500)	up to 1 mL/min	4 mL/min	4 to 13	0.3/43
HiTrap SP XL, 5 mL	> 800 mg (lysozyme, M <sub>r</sub> 14 500)	up to 5 mL/min	20 mL/min	4 to 13	0.3/43
HiPrep SP XL 16/10, 20 mL	> 3200 mg (lysozyme, M <sub>r</sub> 14 500)	2 to 10 mL/min	10 mL/min	4 to 13	0.15/22

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix 5 to convert linear flow (cm/h) to volumetric flow rate (mL/min) and vice versa.

<sup>2</sup> Working pH range refers to the pH interval where the medium can be operated as intended without adverse long-term effects.

<sup>3</sup> Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the medium begins to compress.

- 👉 Use prepacked HiTrap columns (1 mL or 5 mL) for media selection, method scouting, group separations, small-scale purification, sample concentration, or clean-up. Connect up to three HiTrap columns in series to scale-up.
- 👉 Use prepacked HiPrep columns (20 mL) for method development, group separations, larger scale purification, sample concentration or clean-up. Connect several HiPrep columns in series to increase binding capacity.



**Fig 3.31.** Q and SP Sepharose XL are available in prepacked HiTrap and HiPrep columns, in chromatography media packs, and in the HiTrap IEX Selection Kit, 17600233.

For column packing in Tricorn and XK columns, see Table 3.17. Select a production column such as BPG or Chromaflow for larger volumes.

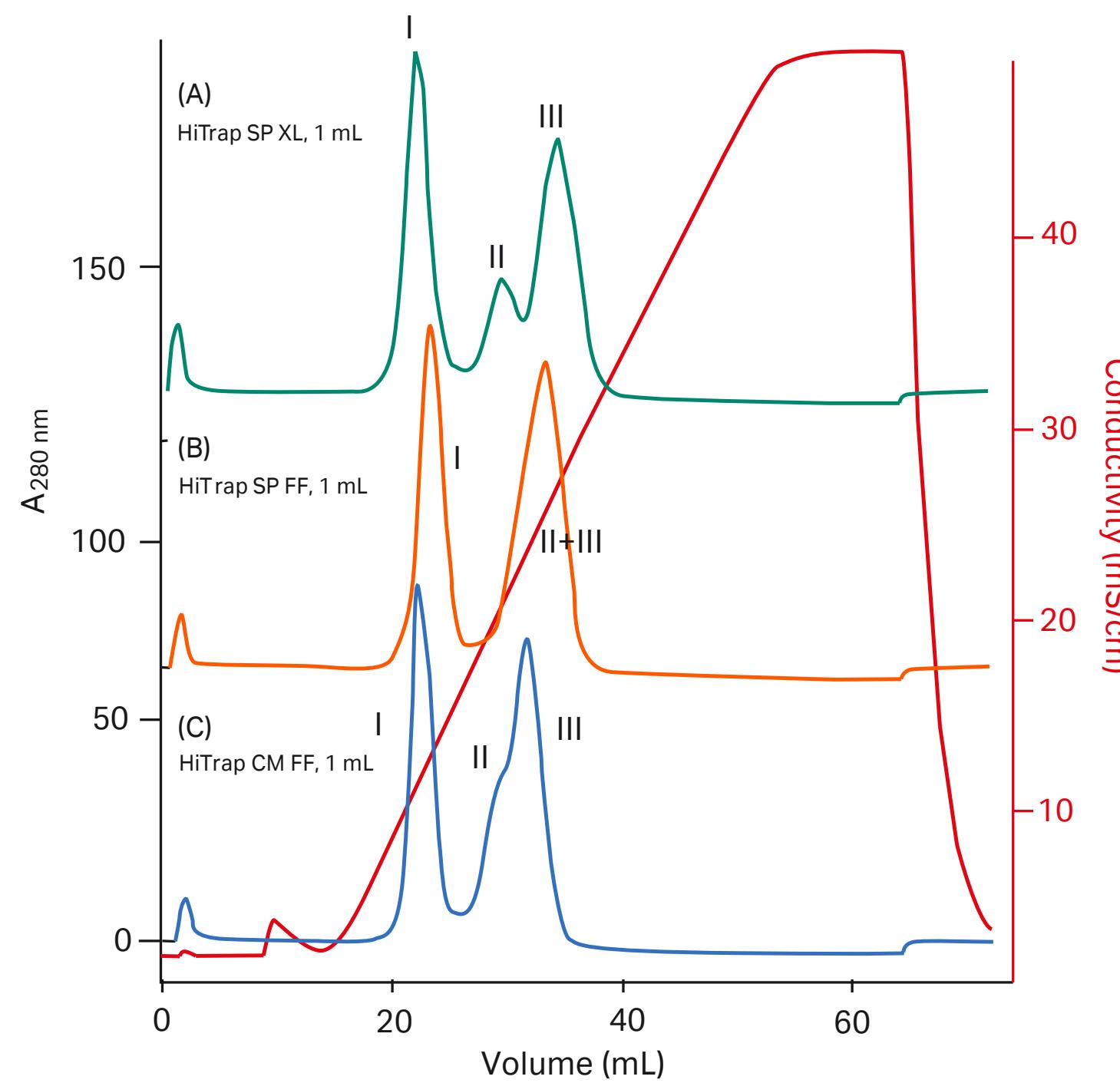
**Table 3.17.** Packing volumes and bed heights for Sepharose XL media packed in Tricorn and XK columns

Column	Volume (mL)	Bed height (cm)
Tricorn 10/100	up to 8	up to 10
Tricorn 10/150	up to 12	up to 15
Tricorn 10/200	up to 16	up to 20
XK 16/20	up to 30	up to 15
XK 26/20	up to 80	up to 15
XK 26/40	up to 196	> 15
XK 50/20	up to 274	up to 14
XK 50/30	up to 559	up to 28.5

## Purification examples

### Media selection

The most suitable matrix and charged group for a separation can be selected quickly and easily by using 1 mL HiTrap columns. In Figure 3.32, a comparison of elution profiles for the same sample separated under identical conditions on three different media illustrates the differences in selectivity and resolution that can result from changing the charge group and matrix. The most suitable medium can be selected and conditions optimized according to the requirements for the purification. In this example, Sepharose XL resolves the three components and optimization of elution conditions could further improve the resolution. However, any of these media would be suitable if the aim was to isolate the first major peak (ribonuclease A).

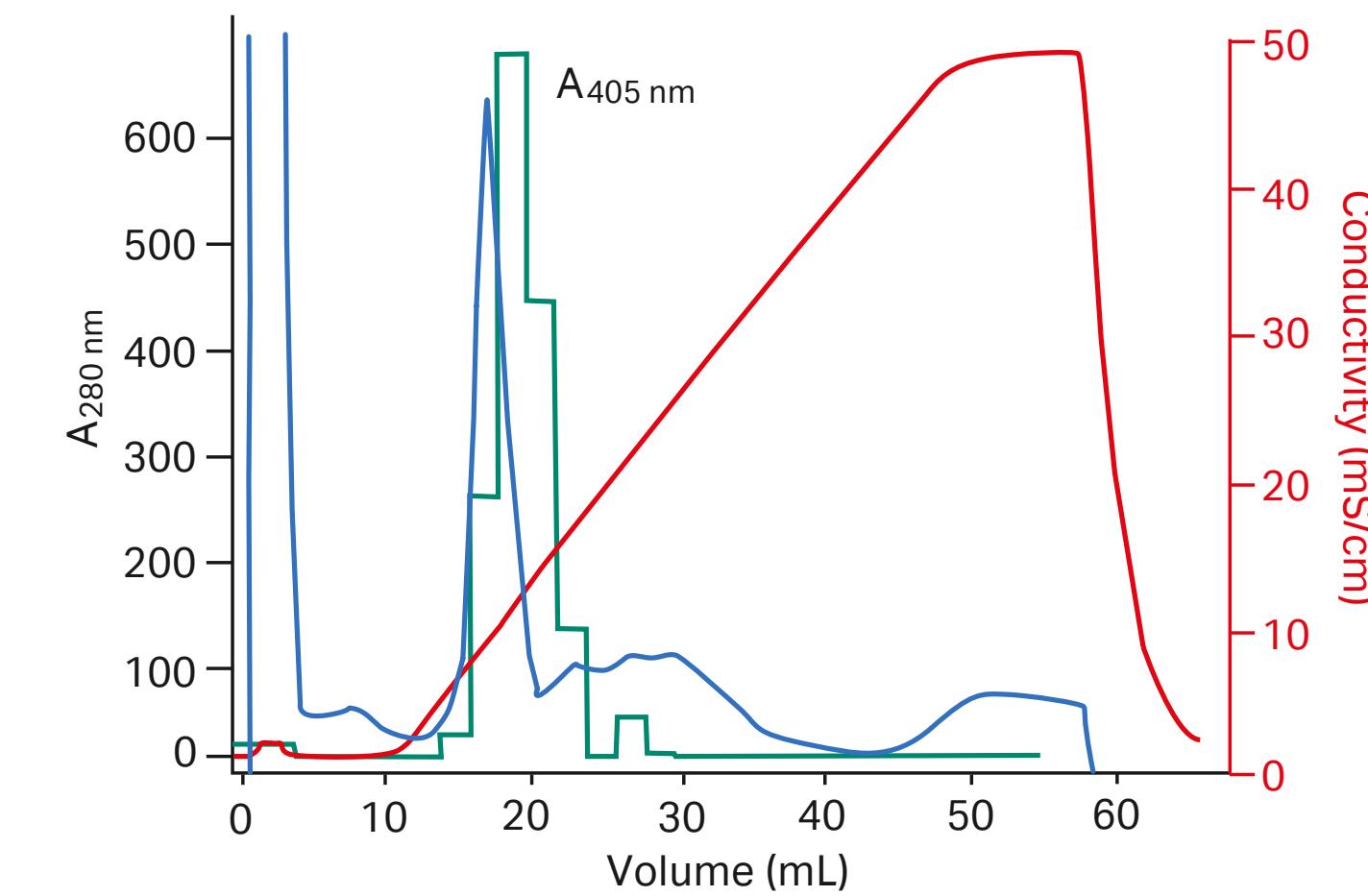


**Fig 3.32.** Media scouting: separation of ribonuclease A (I), cytochrome C (II), and lysozyme (III) on a range of anion exchange HiTrap columns.

### Capture

Capture of alkaline phosphatase from a clarified lysate of *E. coli* using a HiTrap Q XL 1 mL column is shown in Figure 3.33. Separation was monitored at  $A_{280\text{ nm}}$  and phosphatase activity assayed by a spectrophotometric method at  $A_{405\text{ nm}}$ .

**Column:** HiTrap Q XL, 1 mL  
**Sample:** 2 mL of *E. coli* lysate clarified by centrifugation  
**Sample volume:** 2 mL  
**Start buffer:** 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.4  
**Elution buffer:** 20 mM Tris-HCl, 500 mM NaCl, pH 7.4  
**Flow rate:** 1 mL/min (150 cm/h)  
**Gradient:** 0% elution buffer (30 CV), 0% to 100% elution buffer (40 CV)



**Fig 3.33.** Clarified *E. coli* lysate on HiTrap Q XL, absorbance values at 450 nm relate to phosphatase activity in eluted fractions.

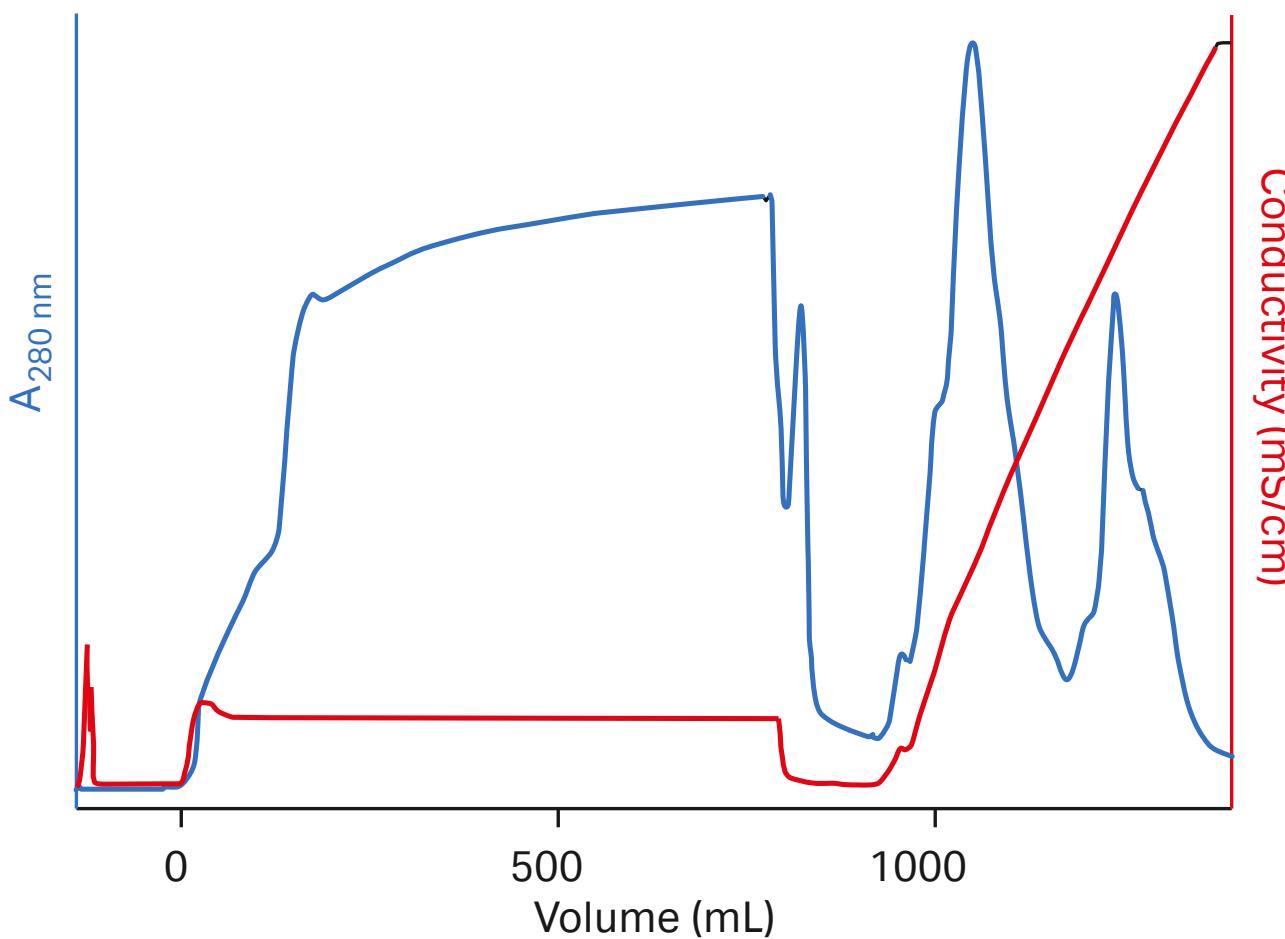
## Capture and scale-up

Figure 3.34 shows a pilot scale purification performed on a Sepharose XL ion exchanger. The separation was developed on Q Sepharose XL packed in an XK 16/20 column in order to select optimal pH and to determine maximum binding capacity available. Adding  $\text{CaCl}_2$  to the sample precipitated DNA and so increased the binding capacity for the target protein. Final loading was reduced to 75% of the maximum capacity and the result verified before scaling-up to a larger, INdEX column.

## Sample concentration

It can be an advantage to concentrate a sample prior to SEC in order to minimize sample volume and facilitate a rapid, high resolution size separation. HiTrap columns offer a convenient, ready-to-use solution for sample concentration. Table 3.9 earlier in the chapter gives examples of the high concentration factors achieved when concentrating proteins from very dilute starting material using HiTrap columns prepacked with Sepharose High Performance medium. Similar results can be achieved with HiTrap columns prepacked with Sepharose Fast Flow or Sepharose XL media.

Column:	Q Sepharose XL in INdEX 70 column, 385 mL bed volume
Sample:	Recombinant $\alpha$ -amylase produced in <i>E. coli</i> , homogenized, 2.2 L diluted in distilled water to 15.4 L, 7.2 mS/cm, 10 mM $\text{CaCl}_2$ , centrifuged
Start buffer:	20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 10 mM $\text{CaCl}_2$
Elution buffer:	20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 1 M NaCl, 10 mM $\text{CaCl}_2$
Flow flow:	300 cm/h, 12 L/h
Gradient:	20 CV 0 to 1 M NaCl
Eluent:	1.48 L, 3.8 CV Spec.
Spec. act. $\alpha$ -amylase	6420 U/L



**Fig 3.34.** Capture of recombinant  $\alpha$ -amylase from *E. coli* on Q Sepharose XL pilot scale column. The first peak during gradient elution contained  $\alpha$ -amylase.

## Performing a separation

Guidelines for selection of media, buffer, pH and ionic strength conditions, and method optimization are given in Chapter 2. Use the instructions given here as a basis from which to optimize a separation.

-  Correct sample and buffer preparation is essential in order to achieve optimal separation and avoid any deterioration in column performance. Samples must be fully dissolved and free from particles or other material likely to interfere with the separation. Refer to Chapter 2 and Appendix 1 for recommendations and advice on sample preparation.
-  Filter buffers *after* all salts and additives have been included. Use high quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions using filters of 1 µm or smaller. To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, maintain buffers and columns at a constant temperature before and during a run.
-  The pH of the start buffer should be at least 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit above the pI of the target substance when using an anion exchanger (Q) and 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit below the pI of the target substance when using a cation exchanger (SP). See Appendix 2 for recommendations on volatile and nonvolatile buffer systems for anion and cation exchangers.

For samples with unknown charge properties, try the following:

### **anion exchange (Q)**

start buffer: 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0

elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 8.0

### **cation exchange (SP)**

start buffer: 20 mM 2-(N-Morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid (MES), pH 6.0

elution buffer: start buffer including 1 M NaCl, pH 6.0

-  Users of ÄKTA systems with automatic buffer preparation functionality can select one of the buffer recipes recommended for anion exchange chromatography at pH 8.0 or cation exchange chromatography at pH 6.0, see *ÄKTA Laboratory-scale Chromatography Systems: Instrument Management Handbook*, 29010831.

## First-time use or after long-term storage

1. To remove ethanol, wash with 1 CV of distilled water at 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 5 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 50 cm/h for Sepharose XL packed in larger columns. This step ensures removal of ethanol and avoids the risk of precipitation if buffer salts were to come into contact with the ethanol. The step can be omitted if precipitation is not likely to be a problem.
2. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer at 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 5 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 150 cm/h for Sepharose XL packed in larger columns.
3. Wash with 5 CV of elution buffer, same flow as step 2.
4. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer, same flow as step 2.
5. Run a blank elution before applying sample.

## Separation by gradient elution

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 5 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 150 cm/h for Sepharose XL packed in larger columns. Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV and an increasing ionic strength up to 0.5 M NaCl (50%*B*).
5. Wash with 5 CV of 1 M NaCl (100%*B*) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
6. Re-equilibrate 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

## Separation by step elution

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 5 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 150 cm/h for Sepharose XL packed in larger columns.

Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and ionic strength and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
4. Elute the target protein with 5 CV of start buffer containing NaCl at chosen ionic strength.
5. If necessary: repeat step 4 at higher ionic strengths until the target protein(s) has been eluted.
6. Wash with 5 CV of a high salt solution (1 M NaCl in start buffer) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
7. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until eluent pH and conductivity reach the required values.

 Save time by using higher flow rates during the high salt wash and re-equilibration steps. Do not exceed the maximum recommended flow for the medium.

 If ionic detergents have been used, wash the column with 5 CV of distilled water, followed by 2 CV of 2 M NaCl. Re-equilibrate with at least 10 CV of start buffer until the UV baseline, eluent pH and/or conductivity are stable.

Organic solvents such as ethanol can be used to remove nonionic detergents. When selecting an organic solvent, check the chemical stability of the medium to determine a suitable concentration.

 Check column performance regularly by determining column efficiency and peak symmetry. See Appendix 3.

## Cleaning

Correct preparation of samples and buffers and application of a high salt wash (1 M NaCl) at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing back pressure, or complete blockage are all indications that the medium needs to be cleaned using more stringent procedures in order to remove contaminants.

 Reverse the direction of flow during column cleaning so that contaminants do not need to pass through the entire length of the column. The number of column volumes and time required for each cleaning step varies according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure to remove common contaminants does not restore column performance, change the top filter (when possible) before trying alternative cleaning methods. Care should be taken when changing a filter as this can affect the column packing and interfere with performance.

## Removing common contaminants

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 5 mL/min (HiPrep 20 mL), or at 40 cm/h with a contact time of 1 to 2 h for Sepharose XL packed in larger columns.

1. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl.
2. Wash with at least 4 CV of 1 M NaOH (same flow as step 1).
3. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl (same flow as step 1).
4. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water (same flow as step 1) until the UV-baseline and the eluent pH are stable.
5. Wash with at least 4 CV of start buffer or storage buffer (same flow as step 1) until eluent pH and conductivity have reached the required values.

To remove precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins, refer to Appendix 1.

## Chemical stability

For daily use, Sepharose XL media are stable in all common, aqueous buffers, 1 M NaOH, denaturing agents (8 M urea, 6 M guanidine hydrochloride), with additives such as nonionic detergents, 70% ethanol, 1 M acetic acid, and 30% isopropanol.

Sepharose XL can be used with organic solvents such as dimethylsulfoxide, dimethyl-formamide, tetrahydrofuran, acetone, chloroform, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, and dichloroethane/pyridine (50:50) as well as polar solvents and aqueous/organic solutions. The water in the medium can be exchanged by the alternative solvent with very little effect on the pore size of the matrix.

 Avoid cationic detergents with SP Sepharose XL. Avoid anionic detergents with Q Sepharose XL. Avoid oxidizing agents.

## Storage

For column storage, wash with 2 CV of distilled water followed by 2 CV of 20% ethanol. Include 0.2 M sodium acetate in the storage solution for SP Sepharose XL. Degas the ethanol/water mixture thoroughly and apply at a low flow rate to avoid overpressuring the column. Store at room temperature or, for long periods, store at 4°C to 8°C. Ensure that the column is sealed well to avoid drying out. Whenever possible, use the storage and shipping device if supplied by the manufacturer. Store unused media at 4°C to 30°C in 20% ethanol. Do not freeze.

 To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, ensure that column and buffers are at the same temperature when preparing for a run.

## Sepharose Big Beads: purification from crude, viscous samples at large scale

- 👉 Use Sepharose Big Beads for purification of proteins from crude, viscous samples.
- 👉 Use Sepharose Big Beads when handling large volumes of crude or viscous samples that must be bound rapidly and when resolution is less important.
- 👉 Use Sepharose Big Beads for capture steps, when viscosity and back pressure can limit the throughput attainable with ion exchangers of smaller particle size.
- 👉 Run columns packed with Sepharose Big Beads on systems such as ÄKTA, HPLC, or systems using peristaltic pumps. Appendix 4 gives guidance on how to select the most suitable ÄKTA system.

Sepharose Big Beads are ion exchangers designed for large-scale industrial applications. Sepharose Big Beads are based on 100 to 300 µm, cross-linked 6% agarose particles, substituted with quaternary ammonium (Q) or sulfopropyl (SP) groups. The large particle size, together with a high degree of cross-linking for extreme physical and chemical stability, ensures that high flow rates can be maintained when processing very viscous samples. For example, a flow of 500 cm/h can be maintained in an industrial process at viscosities up to 2.5 times the viscosity of water. More dilute samples can be run at 1000 cm/h. Particle size and bed volumes remain stable, despite changes in ionic strength or pH. The strong ion exchange groups (Q and SP) maintain their charge over a broad pH range, allowing selection of the most suitable pH for each application.

Figures 3.35 and 3.36 show the excellent flow characteristics and typical binding capacities for Sepharose Big Beads media.

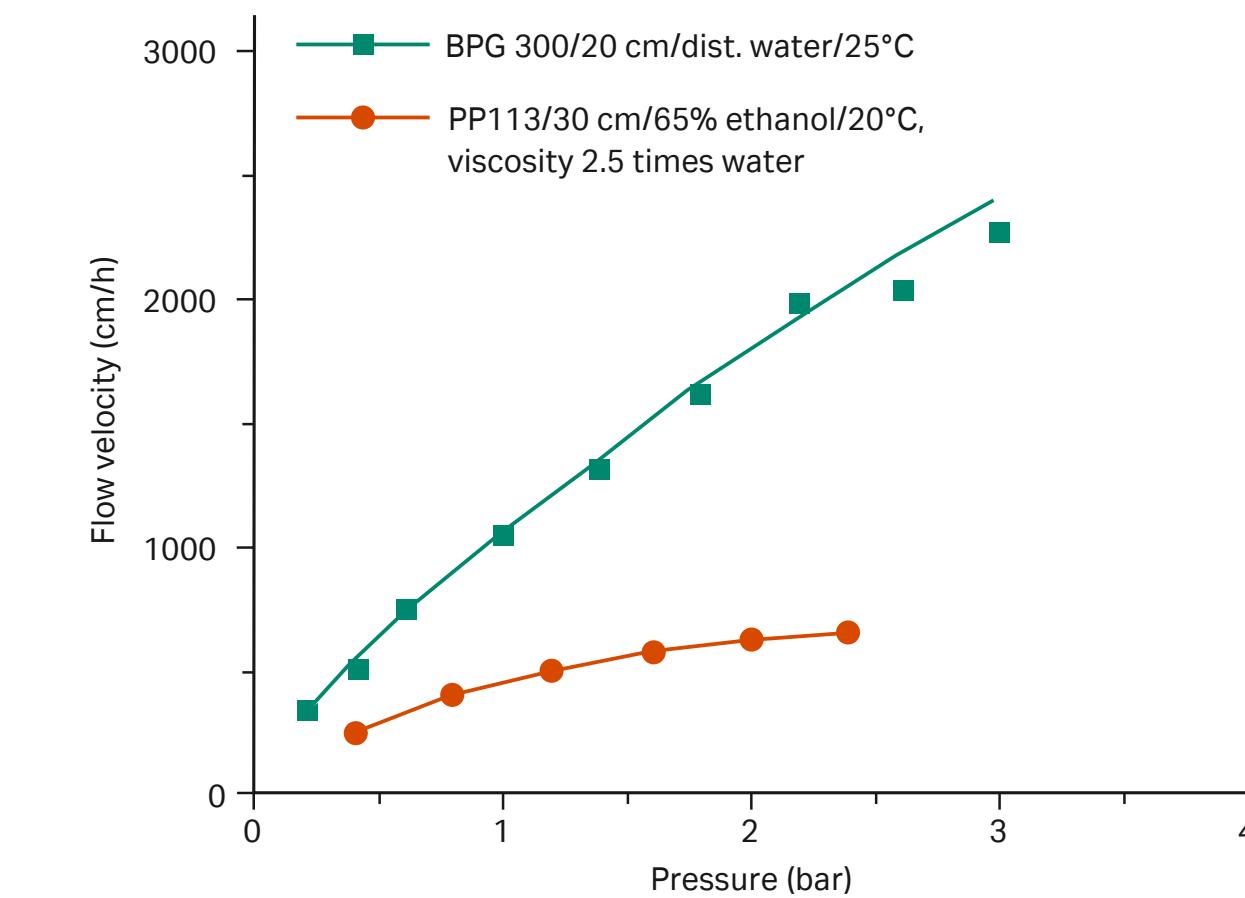
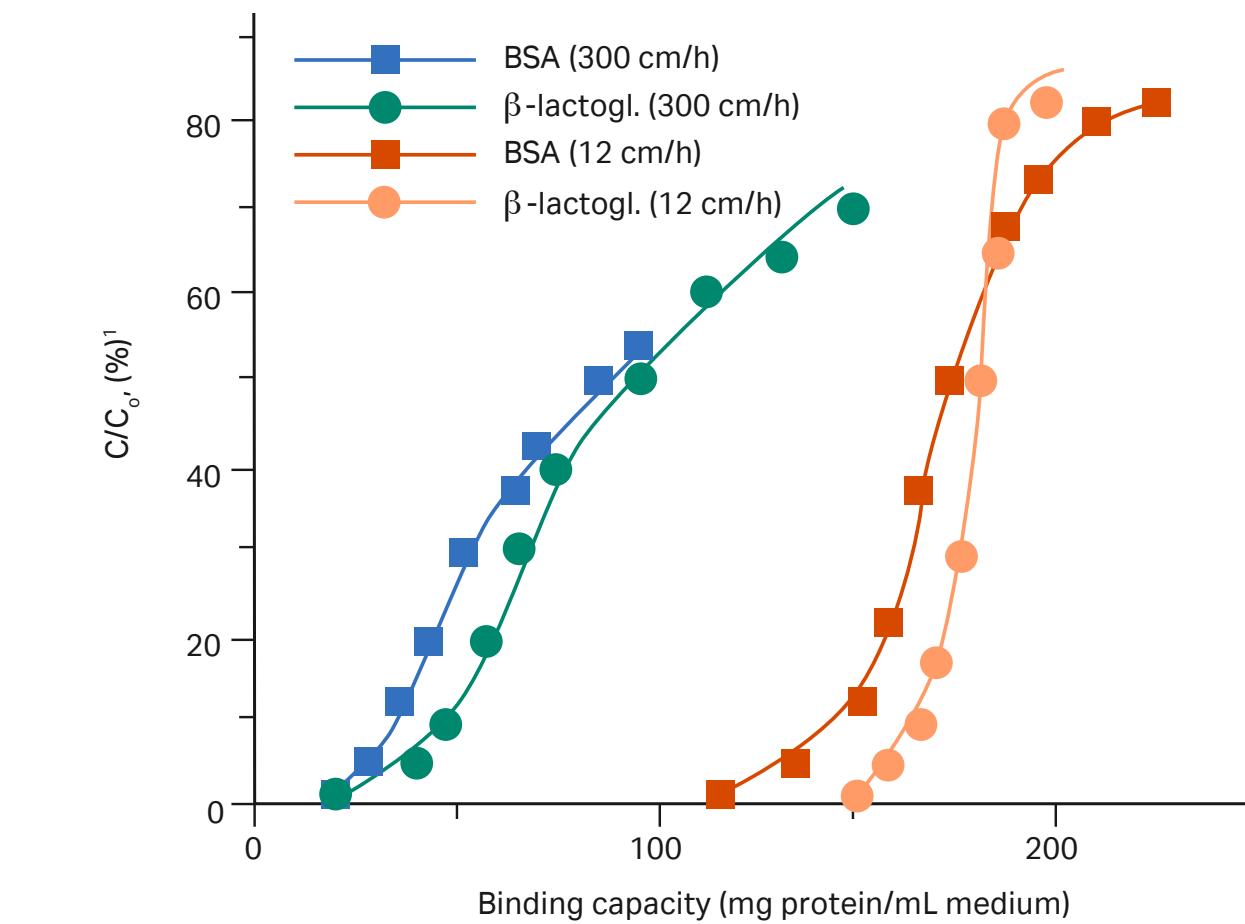


Fig 3.35. Sepharose Big Beads allow high flow rates with high-viscosity samples.



<sup>1</sup> Concentration in eluate (C) as fraction of concentration in sample (C<sub>o</sub>).

Fig 3.36. Typical binding capacities of SP Sepharose Big Beads. Binding capacity measured in acetate pH 5.0 for bovine serum albumin (BSA) and formate pH 4.1 for β-lactoglobulin at flow velocities of 12 and 300 cm/h.

## Media characteristics

Composition: sulfopropyl (SP) or quaternary amino (Q) groups coupled to highly cross-linked 6% agarose via chemically stable ether bonds, see Table 3.18.

**Table 3.18.** Characteristics of Sepharose Big Beads

Product	Functional group	pH stability <sup>1</sup>	Mean particle size ( $\mu\text{m}$ )
<b>Strong anion exchanger</b>			
Q Sepharose Big Beads	-CH <sub>2</sub> -N <sup>+</sup> -(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 2 to 14	200
<b>Strong cation exchanger</b>			
SP Sepharose Big Beads	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -SO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Long term: 4 to 13 Short term: 3 to 14	200

<sup>1</sup> Long-term pH stability refers to the pH interval where the medium is stable over a long period of time without adverse side effects on the chromatography performance. Short-term pH stability refers to the pH interval for regeneration, cleaning-in-place, and sanitization procedures. All ranges are estimates based on experience and knowledge gained at Cytiva.

## Purification options

Purification options for Q and SP Sepharose Big Beads are described in Table 3.19.

**Table 3.19.** Purification options for Sepharose Big Beads

Product	Binding capacity per column or per mL medium	Recommended working flow <sup>1</sup>	Maximum flow <sup>1</sup>	Working pH range <sup>2</sup>	Maximum operating back pressure <sup>3</sup> (MPa/psi) 1 MPa = 10 bar
<b>Strong anion exchanger</b>					
Q Sepharose Big Beads	Tested for each specific application	up to 300 cm/h	1800 cm/h	2 to 12	0.3/43
<b>Strong cation exchanger</b>					
SP Sepharose Big Beads	Tested for each specific application	up to 300 cm/h	1800 cm/h	4 to 13	0.3/43

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix 5 to convert flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rate (mL/min) and vice versa.

<sup>2</sup> Working pH range refers to the pH interval where the medium can be operated as intended without adverse long-term effects.

<sup>3</sup> Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the medium begins to compress.

For column packing in XK columns during method development, particularly when handling crude, viscous samples, see Table 3.20.

**Table 3.20.** Packing volumes and bed heights for Sepharose Q and SP High Performance packed in XK columns

Column	Volume (mL)	Bed height (cm)
XK 16/20	up to 30	up to 15
XK 26/20	up to 80	up to 15
XK 26/40	up to 196	> 15
XK 50/20	up to 274	up to 14
XK 50/30	up to 559	up to 28.5

Select a production scale column such as BPG or Chromaflow for larger volumes. Sepharose Big Beads can be packed in large scale columns by applying constant pressure between 0.1 to 0.3 MPa (1.0 to 3.0 bar, 14.5 to 43.5 psi) by slurry sedimentation followed by adapter compression, or by suction packing. Follow the instructions supplied with the medium.

## Performing a separation

Guidelines for selection of media, buffer, pH, and ionic strength conditions, and method optimization are given in Chapter 2. See Appendix 2 for recommendations on volatile and nonvolatile buffer systems.

-  Correct sample and buffer preparation is essential in order to achieve optimal separation and avoid any deterioration in column performance. Refer to Chapter 2 and Appendix 1 for recommendations and advice.
-  Filter buffers *after* all salts and additives have been included. Use high quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions through 1 µm filters. To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, maintain buffers and columns at a constant temperature before and during a run.

## First-time use or after long-term storage

1. Wash with 5 CV of distilled water at 300 cm/h.
2. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer, same flow as step 1.
3. Wash with 5 CV of elution buffer, same flow as step 1.
4. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer, same flow as step 1.

## Gradient or step elution

Conditions for a large scale-purification using Sepharose Big Beads will be determined during method development and relate to the specific application. Refer to Chapter 2 for advice on optimizing a separation. Typical separation flow rates should be 200 to 500 cm/h.

-  If ionic detergents have been used, wash the column with 5 CV of distilled water, followed by 2 CV of 2 M NaCl. Re-equilibrate with at least 10 CV of start buffer until the UV baseline, eluent pH and/or conductivity are stable. Organic solvents such as ethanol can be used to remove nonionic detergents. When selecting an organic solvent, check the chemical stability of the medium to determine a suitable concentration.
-  Check column performance regularly by determining column efficiency and peak symmetry. See Appendix 3.

## Cleaning

Correct preparation of samples and buffers and regeneration with a high salt wash (1 M NaCl) at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing back pressure, or complete blockage are all indications that the medium needs to be cleaned using more stringent procedures in order to remove contaminants.

-  Reverse the direction of flow during column cleaning so that contaminants do not need to pass through the entire length of the column. The number of column volumes and time required for each cleaning step varies according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure to remove common contaminants does not restore column performance, change the top filter (when possible) before trying alternative cleaning methods. Care should be taken when changing a filter as this can affect the column packing and interfere with performance.

## Removing common contaminants

1. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl at 40 cm/h for a contact time of 1 to 2 h.
2. Wash with at least 4 CV of 1 M NaOH (same flow as step 1).
3. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl (same flow as step 1).
4. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water (same flow as step 1) until the UV-baseline and the eluent pH are stable.
5. Wash with at least 4 CV of start buffer or storage buffer (same flow as step 1) until eluent pH and conductivity have reached the required values.

To remove precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins, refer to Appendix 1.

## **Chemical stability**

For daily use, Sepharose Big Beads are stable in all common, aqueous buffers, 1 M NaOH, denaturing agents (8 M urea, 6 M guanidine hydrochloride), with additives such as nonionic detergents, 70% ethanol, 1 M acetic acid, 30% acetonitrile, and 30% isopropanol.

Sepharose Big Beads can be used with organic solvents such as dimethylsulfoxide, dimethyl-formamide, tetrahydrofuran, acetone, chloroform, dichloromethane, dichloroethane and dichloroethane/pyridine (50:50), as well as polar solvents and aqueous/organic solutions. The water in the medium can be exchanged by the alternative solvent with very little effect on the pore size of the matrix.

-  Avoid cationic detergents with SP Sepharose Big Beads. Avoid anionic detergents with Q Sepharose Big Beads.  
Avoid oxidizing agents.

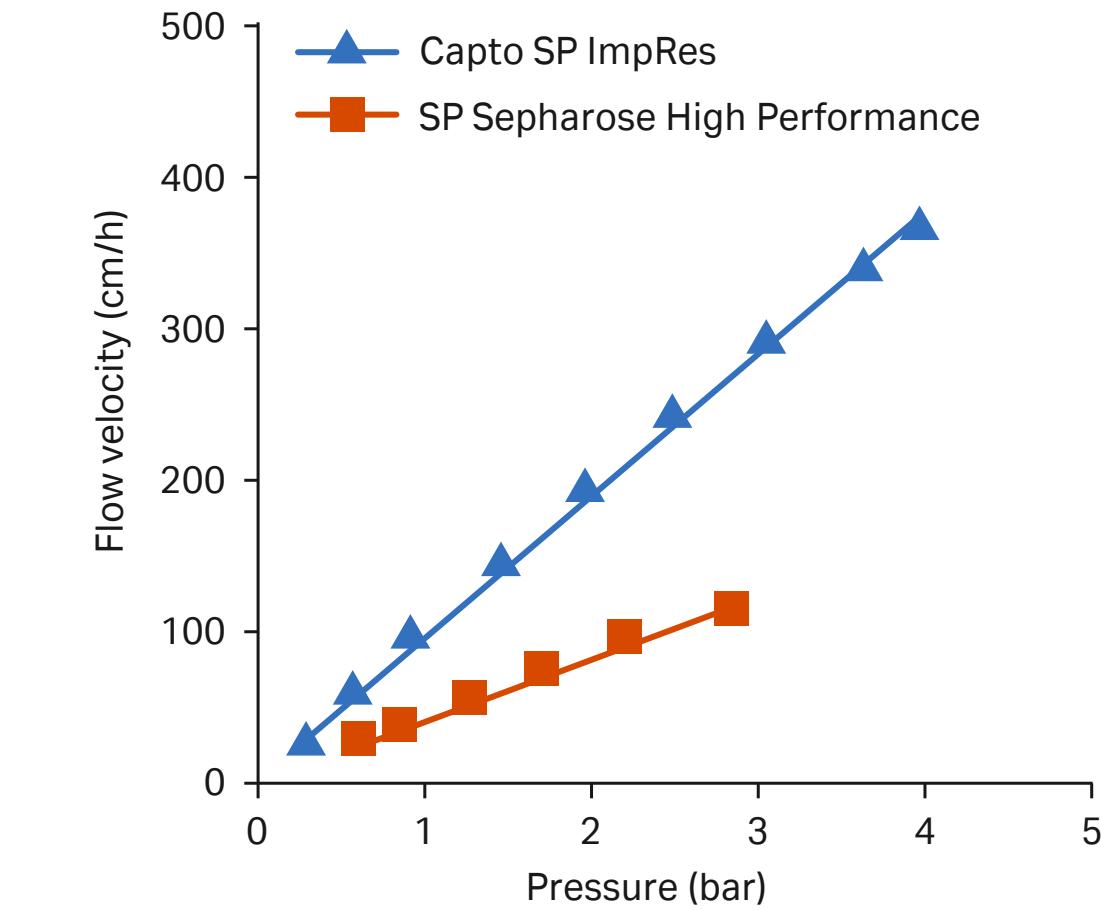
## **Storage**

For column storage, wash with 2 CV of distilled water followed by 2 CV of 20% ethanol. Include 200 mM sodium acetate in the storage solution for SP Sepharose Big Beads. For small-scale columns, degas the ethanol/water mixture thoroughly, for large-scale columns ensure that an air trap is included before the column. Add storage solution at a low flow rate, checking the back pressure as the column equilibrates. Alternatively, store at neutral pH in buffer containing 20% ethanol or in 100 mM NaOH.

Store at room temperature or, for long periods, store at 4°C to 8°C. Ensure that the column is sealed well to avoid drying out. Store unused media at 4°C to 30°C in 20% ethanol. Do not freeze.

## Capto: high-flow media with high resolution

- Use Capto media, including Capto, Capto ImpRes and Capto ImpAct, for screening of selectivity and method conditions before scaling up, as well as for small-scale purification.
- Use Capto media with high flow-properties for capture, intermediate purification, and polishing of a wide range of biomolecules.
- Run Capto media in an optimal way with liquid chromatography systems such as ÄKTA. Appendix 4 provides guidance on selecting the right ÄKTA system.
- Capto media are based on the high-flow agarose base matrix, which gives excellent pressure-flow properties, making the media suitable for process-scale applications (Fig 3.37).



**Fig 3.37.** The pressure-flow properties of Capto ImpRes are improved compared with Sepharose High Performance due to the increased mechanical stability of the base matrix. Running conditions: AxiChrom™ 300 column, 20 cm bed height with water at 20°C.

Capto media are high capacity ion exchangers where the ligands are coupled to a chemically modified, high-flow agarose matrix. The high-flow agarose matrix provides particle rigidity without compromising the pore size. This allows for fast mass transfer resulting in high dynamic binding capacities at high flow rates, making the media suitable for process-scale applications.

Capto Q, Capto S, and Capto DEAE are used for capture and intermediate purification of proteins. Capto Q ImpRes and Capto SP ImpRes are high-resolution media designed for intermediate purification and polishing. Capto S ImpAct is especially suitable for intermediate purification and polishing of MAbs, where a common main challenge is to selectively remove impurities similar to the target product.

## Media characteristics

Composition: Quaternary amine (Q), sulfopropyl (SP), and sulfonate (S) coupled to highly cross-linked high-flow agarose. The characteristics of Capto media are shown in Table 3.21.

**Table 3.21.** Characteristics Capto media

Product	Functional group	pH stability <sup>1</sup>	Mean particle size ( $\mu\text{m}$ )
Capto Q	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}^+-(\text{CH}_3)_3$	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 2 to 14	90
Capto DEAE	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}^+-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 2 to 14	90
Capto S	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{SO}_3^-$	Long term: 4 to 12 Short term: 3 to 14	90
Capto Q ImpRes	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}^+-(\text{CH}_3)_3$	Long term: 2 to 12 Short term: 2 to 14	40
Capto SP ImpRes	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{SO}_3^-$	Long term: 4 to 12 Short term: 3 to 14	40
Capto S ImpAct	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{SO}_3^-$	Long term: 4 to 12 Short term: 3 to 14	50

<sup>1</sup> Long-term pH stability refers to the pH interval where the medium is stable over a long period of time without adverse side effects on the chromatography performance. Short-term pH stability refers to the pH interval for regeneration, cleaning-in-place, and sanitization procedures. All ranges are estimates based on experience and knowledge gained at Cytiva.

## Purification options

Anion and cation exchanger Capto media are available prepacked in HiTrap and HiScreen columns and in chromatography media packs (Fig 3.38). Table 3.22 is a presentation of different Capto media for ion exchange chromatography. Some of the media are also available in PreDictor™ filter plates, PreDictor RoboColumn™, and ReadyToProcess™ columns (see Chapter 5, *Large-scale purification*).



**Fig. 3.38.** Capto media are available in bulk packs, and prepacked HiTrap and HiScreen columns. The media are also available in high-throughput process development (HTPD) format.

**Table 3.22.** Purification options for Capto media

	<b>Binding capacity</b>	<b>Recommended working flow rate</b>	<b>Maximum flow rate</b>	<b>Working pH range</b>
<b>Strong anion exchangers</b>				
Capto Q	> 100 mg (BSA)/mL medium	up to 700 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	700 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	2 to 12
Capto Q ImpRes	> 55 mg (BSA)/mL medium	up to 220 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	220 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	2 to 12
HiTrap Capto Q, 1 mL	> 100 mg (BSA)	1.0 mL/min	4.0 mL/min	2 to 12
HiTrap Capto Q, 5 mL	> 500 mg (BSA)	5.0 mL/min	20.0 mL/min	2 to 12
HiTrap Capto Q ImpRes, 1 mL	> 55 mg (BSA)	1.0 mL/min	4.0 mL/min	2 to 12
HiTrap Capto Q ImpRes, 5 mL	> 275 mg (BSA)	5.0 mL/min	20.0 mL/min	2 to 12
HiScreen Capto Q, 4.7 mL	> 470 mg (BSA)	1.2 mL/min	2.3 mL/min	2 to 12
HiScreen Capto Q ImpRes, 4.7 mL	> 260 mg (BSA)	1.2 mL/min	2.3 mL/min	2 to 12
<b>Weak anion exchangers</b>				
Capto DEAE	> 90 mg (ovalbumin)/mL medium	up to 700 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	700 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	2 to 12
HiTrap Capto DEAE, 1 mL	> 90 mg (ovalbumin)	1.0 mL/min	4.0 mL/min	2 to 12
HiTrap Capto DEAE, 5 mL	> 450 mg (ovalbumin)	5.0 mL/min	20.0 mL/min	2 to 12
HiScreen Capto DEAE, 4.7 mL	> 420 mg (ovalbumin)	1.2 mL/min	2.3 mL/min	2 to 12
<b>Strong cation exchangers</b>				
Capto S	> 120 mg (lysozyme)/mL medium	up to 700 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	700 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	4 to 12
Capto SP ImpRes	> 70 mg (lysozyme)/mL medium	up to 220 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	220 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	4 to 12
Capto S ImpAct	> 90 mg (lysozyme)/mL medium	up to 220 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	220 cm/h <sup>1</sup>	4 to 12
HiTrap Capto S, 1 mL	> 120 mg (lysozyme)	1.0 mL/min	4.0 mL/min	4 to 12
HiTrap Capto S, 5 mL	> 600 mg (lysozyme)	5.0 mL/min	20.0 mL/min	4 to 12
HiTrap Capto SP ImpRes, 1 mL	> 70 mg (lysozyme)	1.0 mL/min	4.0 mL/min	4 to 12
HiTrap Capto SP ImpRes, 5 mL	> 350 mg (lysozyme)	5.0 mL/min	20.0 mL/min	4 to 12
HiTrap Capto S ImpAct, 1 mL	> 90 mg (lysozyme)	1.0 mL/min	4.0 mL/min	4 to 12
HiTrap Capto S ImpAct, 5 mL	> 450 mg (lysozyme)	5.0 mL/min	20.0 mL/min	4 to 12
HiScreen Capto S, 4.7 mL	> 560 mg (lysozyme)	1.2 mL/min	2.3 mL/min	4 to 12
HiScreen Capto SP ImpRes, 4.7 mL	> 330 mg (lysozyme)	1.2 mL/min	2.3 mL/min	4 to 12
HiScreen Capto S ImpAct, 4.7 mL	> 420 mg (lysozyme)	1.2 mL/min	2.3 mL/min	4 to 12

<sup>1</sup> Flow velocity in a 1 m column with 20 cm bed height at 20°C using process buffers with the same viscosity as water at < 0.3 MPa (3 bar, 43.5 psi). See Appendix 5 to convert flow velocities (cm/h) to volumetric flow rate (mL/min) and vice versa.

<sup>2</sup> Working pH range refers to the pH interval where the medium can be operated as intended without adverse long-term effects.

Molecular weights ( $M_r$ ) of proteins in the table: BSA, 67 000; ovalbumin, 45 000; lysozyme, 14 500.

-  Use prepacked HiTrap columns (1 mL or 5 mL) for media selection, group separations, and small-scale purification.
-  Use prepacked HiScreen columns (4.7 mL, 10 cm bed height) for method development and optimization before scaling up.
-  For column packing: Capto media can be used with most modern chromatography equipment from laboratory to production scale. Due to the higher rigidity of Capto media, packing procedures differ slightly compared with Sepharose (for details of packing laboratory-scale columns, see the appropriate Instructions).

Table 3.23 lists suitable empty columns for packing of Capto media from Cytiva.

**Table 3.23.** Example of columns suitable for packing of Capto media

Column family	Inner diameter (mm)
<b>Laboratory scale</b>	
Tricorn	5, 10
HiScale™	16, 26, 50
<b>Pilot and production scale</b>	
AxiChrom	50 to 1000 <sup>1</sup>
BPG	100 to 300 <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Maximum bed height for AxiChrom 1000 is 20 cm.

<sup>2</sup> Note that the pressure rating of BPG 450 column is too low for Capto ImpRes media.

## Purification examples

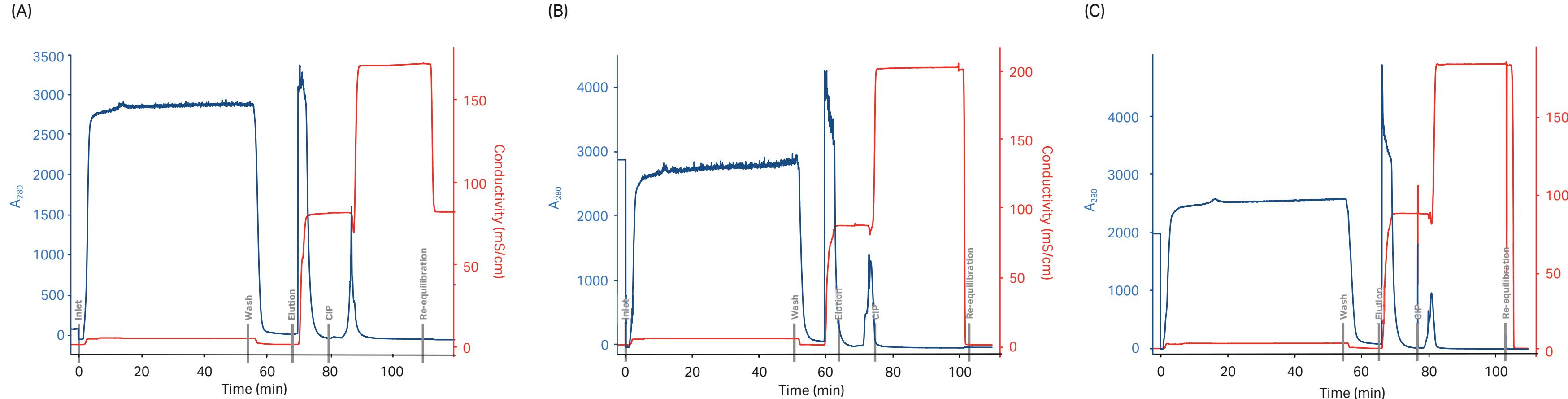
### Capture and scale-up

Capto media belong to the BioProcess™ range of media that are developed and supported for production-scale chromatography. The small prepacked column formats, HiTrap 1 mL and 5 mL and HiScreen (4.7 mL), are convenient to use together with a chromatography system when developing efficient and robust separation methods. Further development and optimization using Tricorn or HiScale columns then permits straightforward scale-up. Figure 3.39 shows an example of scaling up an optimized purification of  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin on Capto S, starting from a Tricorn column.

**Column:** Tricorn 5/100 (bed height 9.7 cm, CV = 1.9 mL)  
**Medium:** Capto S  
**Sample:**  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin in *E. coli* homogenate, 4 mg/mL to 50 mL  
**Start buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 4.8  
**Elution buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, 1 M NaCl, pH 4.8  
**Flow velocity:** 285 cm/h  
**Gradient:** 0% to 100% 0 CV, 100% 5 CV  
**Residence time:** 2 min

**Column:** XK 16/40 (bed height 20.7 cm, CV = 41.5 mL)  
**Medium:** Capto S  
**Sample:**  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin in *E. coli* homogenate, 4 mg/mL to 1040 mL  
**Start buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 4.8  
**Elution buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, 1 M NaCl, pH 4.8  
**Flow velocity:** 624 cm/h  
**Gradient:** 0% to 100% 0 CV, 100% 5 CV  
**Residence time:** 2 min

**Column:** AxiChrom 50 (bed height 22 cm, CV = 431 mL)  
**Medium:** Capto S  
**Sample:**  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin in *E. coli* homogenate, 4 mg/mL to 10.8 L  
**Start buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 4.8  
**Elution buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, 1 M NaCl, pH 4.8  
**Flow velocity:** 645 cm/h  
**Gradient:** 0% to 100% 0 CV, 100% 5 CV  
**Residence time:** 2 min



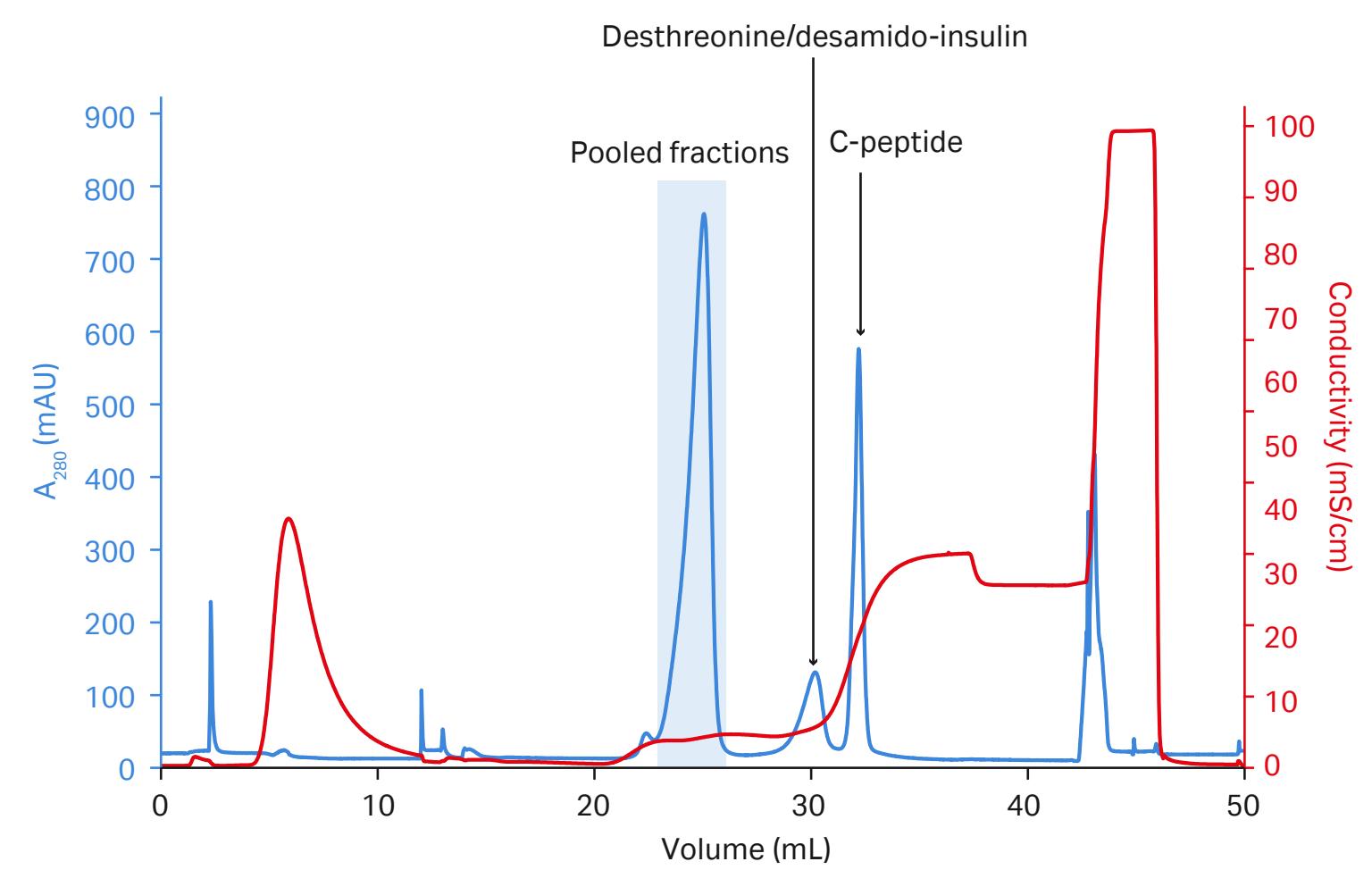
**Fig 3.39.** A 200-fold scale up of  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin on Capto S packed in (A) Tricorn 5/100, (B) XK 16/40 and, (C) AxiChrom columns.

## Intermediate purification of insulin

Capto SP ImpRes was used for intermediate purification where the purpose was to separate insulin from components remaining from the initial capture step. The resulting chromatogram is shown in Figure 3.40. Insulin (first peak) was well-resolved from truncated insulin impurities (middle peak) and C-peptides (third peak). Pooled fractions were analyzed by RPC, which showed an increase of insulin purity from 64% to 91%. The truncated insulin content was reduced from 11.5% to 2.8%.

Column: Tricorn 5/50 CV 1 mL  
Medium: Capto SP ImpRes  
Sample: 18 mg cleaved insulin\*  
Start buffer: 50 mM acetate, 47.5% ethanol, pH 4  
Elution buffer: 50 mM acetate, 47.5% ethanol, 1 M NaCl, pH 4  
Elution: First step: 47.5% ethanol, 130 mM NaCl, pH 4 (10 CV)  
Second step: 47.5% ethanol, 1 M NaCl, pH 4 (5 CV)  
Flow rate (flow velocity): 0.4 mL/min (120 cm/h)  
Residence time: 2.5 min

\* Kindly provided by Biomm S.A. (Brazil).



**Fig 3.40.** The intermediate step purification of insulin on Capto SP ImpRes removes contaminants such as desthreonine- and desamido-insulin.

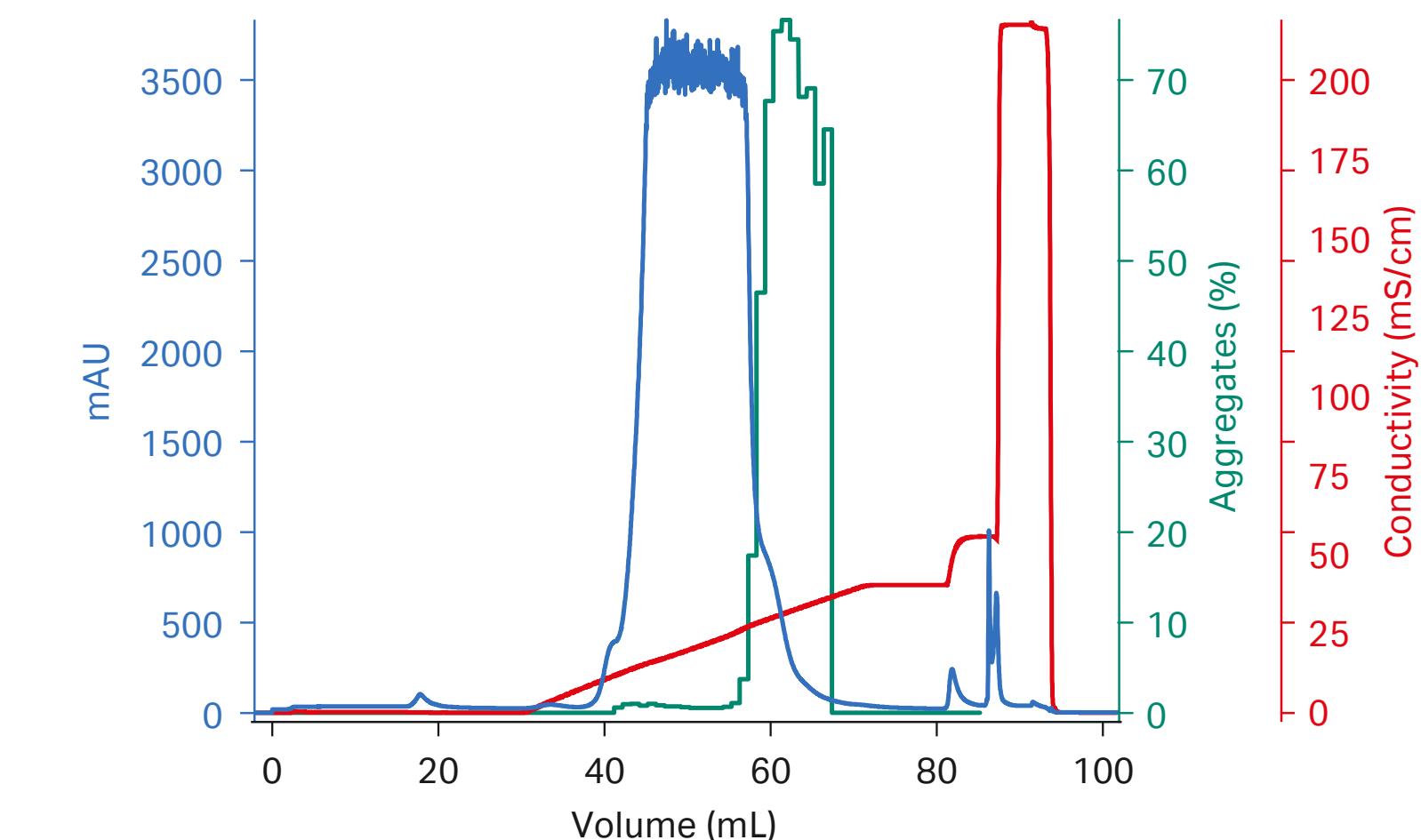
## Polishing of MAb

To evaluate Capto S ImpAct for removal of aggregates, four different MAb purified on MabSelect SuRe™ medium were run using linear gradient elution in Tricorn columns. Fractions from the elution peaks were collected and analyzed by analytical SEC for aggregate content. HCP and protein A content were analyzed using a Gyrolab™ workstation and a commercial ELISA assay, respectively. As can be seen in Table 3.24, Capto S ImpAct demonstrates effective aggregate and HCP removal at a high monomer recovery. Figure 3.41 shows the chromatogram for MAb E, illustrating that aggregates (green) elute at the tail of the elution peak. For this MAb, the aggregate level was reduced to 0.6% at 90% monomer recovery. The initial aggregate content was 2%.

**Table 3.24.** Results from the purification of four MAb using Capto S ImpAct

	MAb A	MAb C	MAb D	MAb E
DBC (mg/mL medium)	108	92	118	122
Load (mg/mL medium)	80	64	80	85
Start aggregate content (%)	7	2	4	2
Aggregates at 90% monomer recovery (%)	0.9	0.6	1.2	0.6
Start HCP content (ppm)	34	1800	300	454
HCP at 90% monomer recovery (ppm)	8	42	25	43
Start protein A content (ppm)	4	1	1	< 1
Protein A at 90% monomer recovery (ppm)	< 1	< 1	< 1	< 1
Elution pool volume (CV)	5.1	5.4	4.0	6.3
Elution pool concentration at 90% monomer recovery (mg/mL)	13.6	10.6	17.8	12.3

**Medium:** Capto S ImpAct  
**Column:** Tricorn 5/100, bed height 10 cm  
**Sample:** MAb E, purified on MabSelect SuRe medium  
**Sample load:** 85 mg/mL medium  
**Start buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 5.3  
**Elution buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate + 500 mM NaCl, pH 5.3  
**Flow rate:** 0.35 mL/min, residence time 5.4 min  
**Gradient:** Linear, 0 to 350 mM NaCl in 20 CV



**Fig 3.41.** Chromatogram from purification of MAb E using Capto S ImpAct in a Tricorn 5/100 column. Histogram in green represents aggregates in fractions. SEC was used for aggregate content analysis, using a prepacked Superdex™ 200 Increase 10/300 GL column.

## Performing a separation

Guidelines for selection of media, buffer, pH and ionic strength conditions and method optimization are given in Chapter 2. Use the instructions given here as a basis from which to optimize a separation.

-  Correct sample and buffer preparation is essential in order to achieve optimal separation and avoid any deterioration in column performance. Samples must be fully dissolved and free from particles or other material likely to interfere with the separation. Refer to Chapter 2 and Appendix 1 for recommendations and advice on sample preparation.
-  Filter buffers *after* all salts and additives have been included. Use high quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions using filters of 1 µm or less. To avoid formation of air bubbles in a packed column, maintain buffers and columns at constant temperature before and during a run.
-  The pH of the start buffer should be at least 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit above the pI of the target substance when using an anion exchanger (Q, DEAE) and 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit below the pI of the target substance when using a cation exchanger (S, SP).

For samples with unknown charge properties, try the following:

### Anion exchange (Q)

Start buffer: 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0

Elution buffer: 20 mM Tris-HCl, 1 M NaCl, pH 8.0

### Cation exchange (SP)

Start buffer: 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 5.0

Elution buffer: 50 mM sodium acetate, 1 M NaCl, pH 5.0

or

Start buffer: 50 mM 2-(N-Morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid (MES), pH 6.0

Elution buffer: 50 mM MES, 1 M NaCl, pH 6.0

-  Users of ÄKTA systems with automatic buffer preparation functionality can select one of the buffer recipes recommended for anion exchange chromatography at pH 8.0 or cation exchange chromatography at pH 6.0, see *ÄKTA Laboratory-scale Chromatography Systems: Instrument Management Handbook*, 29010831.

## First-time use or after long-term storage

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 1.2 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL).

1. Remove the stopper and connect the column to the system (or syringe) with a drop-to-drop connection to avoid introducing air into the column.
2. Remove the snap-off end at the column outlet and wash with 1 column volume (CV) of distilled water. This step ensures removal of ethanol and avoids the precipitation of buffer salts upon exposure to ethanol. The step can be omitted if precipitation is not likely to be a problem.
3. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer.
4. Wash with 5 CV of elution buffer.
5. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer.

## Separation by gradient elution

Linear ionic strength gradients should always be used for method development or when starting with an unknown sample. Linear ionic strength gradients are easy to prepare and very reproducible when generated by a suitable chromatography system. The results obtained can then serve as a base from which to optimize the separation.

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 1.2 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL). Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate the column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the UV baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and conductivity and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until no material appears in the effluent.
4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV and an increasing salt concentration up to 500 mM NaCl (50% elution buffer).
5. Wash with 5 CV of 1 M NaCl (100% elution buffer) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the UV baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity reach the required values.

## Separation by step elution

Reduce separation time and buffer consumption by transferring to a step elution.

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 1.2 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL). Collect fractions throughout the separation.

1. Equilibrate the column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer until the UV baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
2. Adjust the sample to the chosen starting pH and conductivity and apply to the column.
3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until no material appears in the effluent.
4. Elute the target protein with 5 CV of start buffer including NaCl at chosen concentration.
5. If necessary: repeat step 4 at higher NaCl concentrations until the target protein has been eluted.
6. Wash with 5 CV of a high salt solution (1 M NaCl in start buffer) to elute any remaining ionically bound material.
7. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the UV baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity reach the required values.

 Save time by using higher flow rates during the high salt wash and re-equilibration steps.

 Do not exceed the maximum recommended flow and back pressure for the column.

## Cleaning

Correct preparation of samples and buffers, including a high salt wash (1 to 2 M NaCl) after each purification, should maintain columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, increased back pressure or blockage indicates that the medium needs cleaning.

### Removing common contaminants

Flow rates: 1 mL/min (HiTrap 1 mL), 5 mL/min (HiTrap 5 mL), 1.2 mL/min (HiScreen 4.7 mL).

1. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl.
2. Wash with at least 4 CV of 1 M NaOH.
3. Wash with at least 2 CV of 2 M NaCl.
4. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water.
5. Wash with at least 5 CV of start buffer until eluent pH and conductivity have reached the required values.

To remove precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins, refer to Appendix 1.

## Chemical stability

For daily use, Capto media are stable in all common, aqueous buffers, 1 M NaOH, denaturing agents (8 M urea, 6 M guanidine hydrochloride), 70% ethanol, 30% acetonitrile, and with additives such as nonionic detergents.

-  Avoid cationic detergents with Capto S, Capto SP ImpRes, and Capto S ImpAct.
-  Avoid anionic detergents with Capto Q and Capto Q ImpRes.
-  Avoid oxidizing agents.

## Storage

Wash with 2 CV of distilled water followed by 2 CV of 20% ethanol (Capto Q, Capto DEAE, Capto Q ImpRes) or 20% ethanol containing 200 mM sodium acetate (Capto S, Capto SP ImpRes, Capto S ImpAct). Store at 4°C to 30°C. Do not freeze. Ensure that the column is sealed well to avoid drying out.

### Capto media with multimodal functionality

Some Capto media have ligands with multimodal functionality, where the ligand interacts with the target protein through two or more modes of action. This multimodal functionality gives a different selectivity compared to standard ion exchangers, which allows multimodal ion exchangers a wider window of operation in circumstances where traditional media are not as effective as desired. Such circumstances can be encountered, for example, when the loading conductivity of the sample is too high for traditional IEX media, when there is a need to reduce the number of purification steps, or when the selectivity of traditional media is insufficient to provide the required purity of the target protein. See the *Multimodal Chromatography Handbook*, 29054808 for more information about our multimodal Capto media.

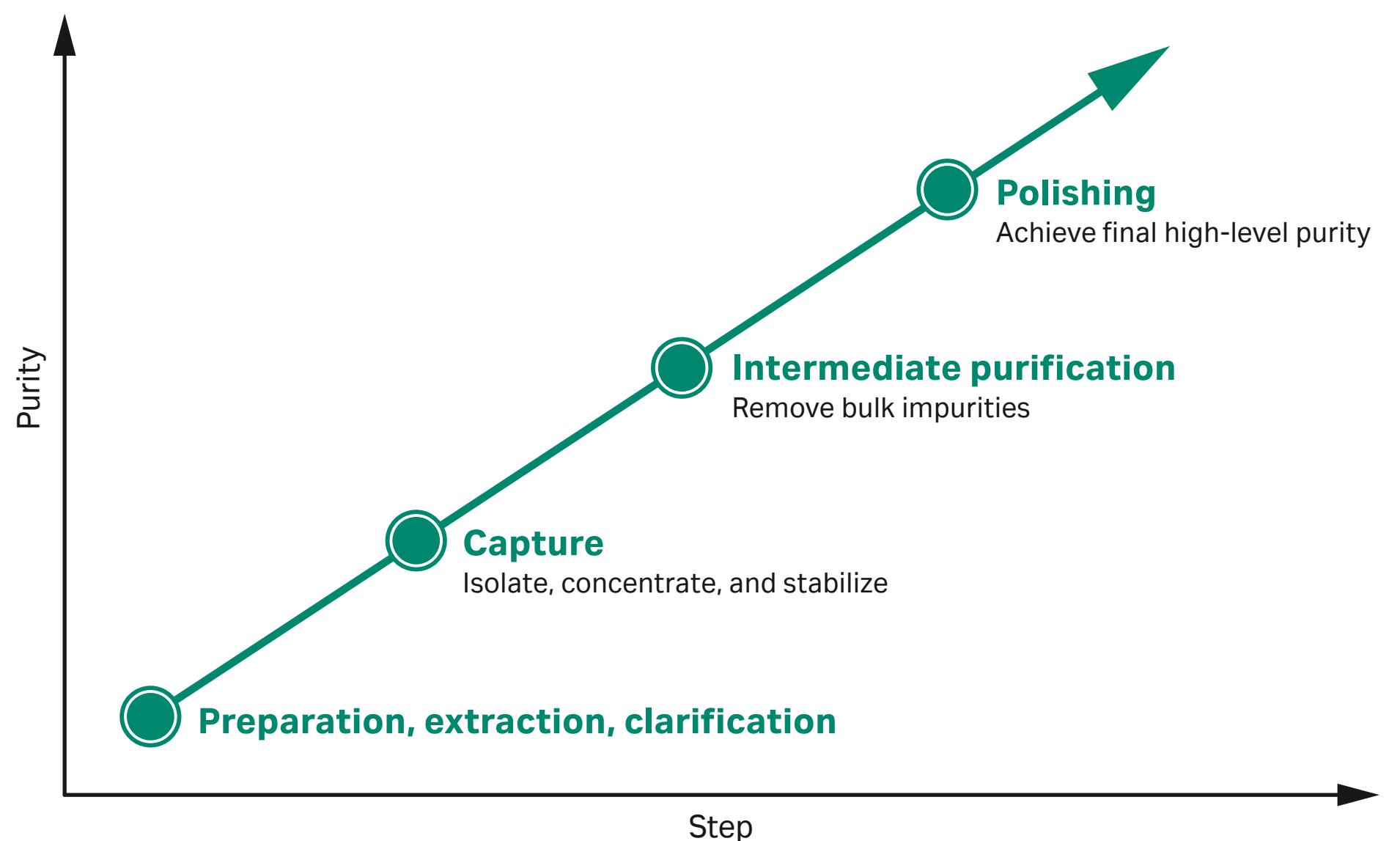
04

# Ion exchange in a Purification Strategy (CIPP)

To ensure efficient, reproducible purification giving the required degree of purity, it is beneficial to develop a multistep process using the purification strategy of Capture, Intermediate Purification, and Polishing (C<sub>IPP</sub>), shown in Figure 4.1.

C<sub>IPP</sub> is used in both the pharmaceutical industry and in the research laboratory to ensure faster method development, a shorter time to pure product and good economy. This chapter gives a brief overview of this approach which is recommended for any multi-step protein purification. The *Strategies for Purification Handbook* from Cytiva is a definitive guide for planning efficient and effective protein purification strategies. An important first step for any purification is correct sample preparation and this is covered in more detail in Appendix 1 and Chapter 2.

IEX plays a significant and highly flexible role in most multistep purification schemes. If a specific affinity medium is not available or if little is known about the target molecule, IEX is recommended as the first step to consider for any purification. The technique can be used for capture, intermediate purification, or polishing, according to the demands of the specific application. Since IEX offers different selectivities (using anion or cation exchangers) and since the pH of the purification can be modified to alter the charge characteristics of the sample components, it is possible to use the technique more than once in the same purification scheme. In addition, IEX can be used with step elution for a rapid capture step or with gradient elution to achieve the highest resolution in a polishing step.



**Fig 4.1.** Preparation and C<sub>IPP</sub>.

## Applying CIPP

Imagine the purification has three phases: Capture, Intermediate Purification, and Polishing.

- Assign a specific objective to each step within the purification process.

The issues associated with a particular purification step will depend greatly upon the properties of the starting material. Thus, the objective of a purification step will vary according to its position in the process.

In the *capture phase*, the objectives are to *isolate, concentrate, and stabilize* the target product. The product should be concentrated and transferred to an environment that will conserve potency/activity.

During the *intermediate purification phase*, the objectives are to *remove most of the bulk impurities*, such as other proteins and nucleic acids, endotoxins, and viruses.

In the *polishing phase*, most impurities have already been removed. The objective is to *achieve final purity* by removing any remaining trace impurities or closely related substances.

- The optimal selection and combination of purification techniques for *Capture, Intermediate Purification, and Polishing* is crucial for an efficient purification.

- CIPP does not mean that there must always be three purification steps. For example, capture and intermediate purification might be achievable in a single step, as might intermediate purification and polishing. Similarly, purity demands can be so low that a rapid capture step is sufficient to achieve the desired result. For purification of therapeutic proteins, a fourth or fifth purification step might be required to fulfill the highest purity and safety demands. The number of steps used will always depend upon the purity requirements and intended use of the protein.

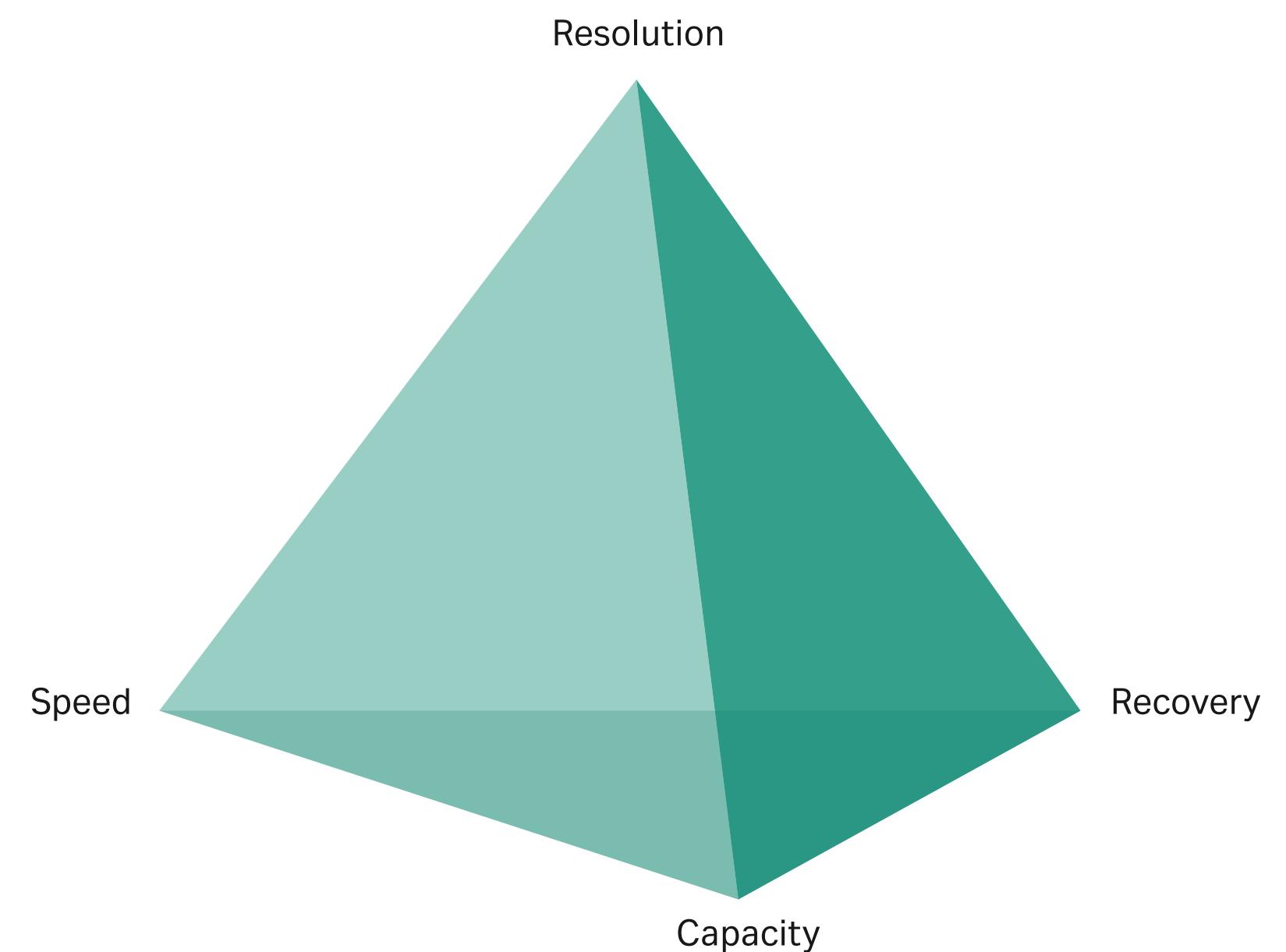
## Selection and combination of purification techniques

Proteins are purified using purification techniques that separate according to differences in specific properties, as shown in Table 4.1.

**Table 4.1.** Protein properties used during purification

Protein property	Technique
Size	Size exclusion chromatography (SEC)
Charge	Ion exchange chromatography (IEX)
Hydrophobicity	Hydrophobic interaction chromatography (HIC), Reversed phase chromatography (RPC)
Biorecognition (ligand specificity)	Affinity chromatography (AC)

There are four important performance parameters to consider when planning each purification step: resolution, capacity, speed, and recovery. Optimization of any one of these four parameters can be achieved only at the expense of the others, and each purification step will be a compromise (Fig. 4.2). The importance of each parameter will vary depending on whether a purification step is used for capture, intermediate purification, or polishing. Purification methods should be selected and optimized to meet the objectives for each purification step.



**Fig 4.2.** Key performance parameters for protein purification. Each purification step should be optimized for one or two of the parameters.

**Capacity**, in the simple model shown, refers to the amount of target protein loaded during purification. In some cases the amount of sample that can be loaded will be limited by volume (as in SEC) or by large amounts of contaminants rather than the amount of the target protein.

**Speed** is most important at the beginning of purification where contaminants such as proteases must be removed as quickly as possible.

**Recovery** becomes increasingly important as the purification proceeds because of the increased value of the purified product. Recovery is influenced by destructive processes in the sample and by unfavorable conditions on the column.

**Resolution** is achieved by the selectivity of the technique and the efficiency and selectivity of the chromatography matrix in producing narrow peaks. In general, resolution is most difficult to achieve in the final stages of purification when impurities and target protein are likely to have very similar properties.

 Select a technique to meet the objectives for the purification step.

 Choose logical combinations of purification techniques based on the main benefits of the technique and the condition of the sample at the beginning or end of each step.

A guide to the suitability of each purification technique for the stages in C<sub>IPP</sub> is shown in Table 4.2.

**Table 4.2.** Suitability of purification techniques for C<sub>IPP</sub>

Method	Typical characteristics		Purification phase			Sample start conditions	Sample end conditions
	Resolution	Capacity	Capture	Intermediate	Polishing		
AC	+++ or ++	+++ or ++	+++	++	+	Various binding conditions	Specific elution conditions
IMAC	+++	++	+++	++	+	Low concentration of imidazole, pH > 7.0	High concentration of imidazole, 500 mM NaCl, pH > 7.0
SEC	++	+	+		+++	Most conditions acceptable, limited sample volume	Buffer exchange possible, diluted sample
IEX	+++	+++	+++	+++	+++	Low ionic strength. pH depends on protein and IEX type	High ionic strength or pH changed
HIC	+++	++	++	+++	+++	High ionic strength, addition of salt required	Low ionic strength
RPC	+++	++		+	++	Ion-pair reagents and organic modifiers might be required	Organic solvents (risk for loss of biological activity)

-  Minimize sample handling between purification steps by combining techniques to avoid the need for sample conditioning. The product should be eluted from the first column in conditions suitable for the start conditions of the next column (see Table 4.2).
-  Ammonium sulfate, often used for sample clarification and concentration (see Appendix 1), leaves the sample in a high salt environment. Consequently HIC, which requires high salt to enhance binding to the media, becomes the excellent choice as the capture step. The salt concentration and the total sample volume will be significantly reduced after elution from the HIC column. Dilution of the fractionated sample or rapid buffer exchange using a desalting column will prepare it for the next IEX or AC step.
-  SEC is a nonbinding technique unaffected by buffer conditions, but with limited volume capacity. SEC is well-suited for use after any of the concentrating techniques (IEX, HIC, AC) since the target protein will be eluted in a reduced volume and the components from the buffer will not affect the size exclusion process.

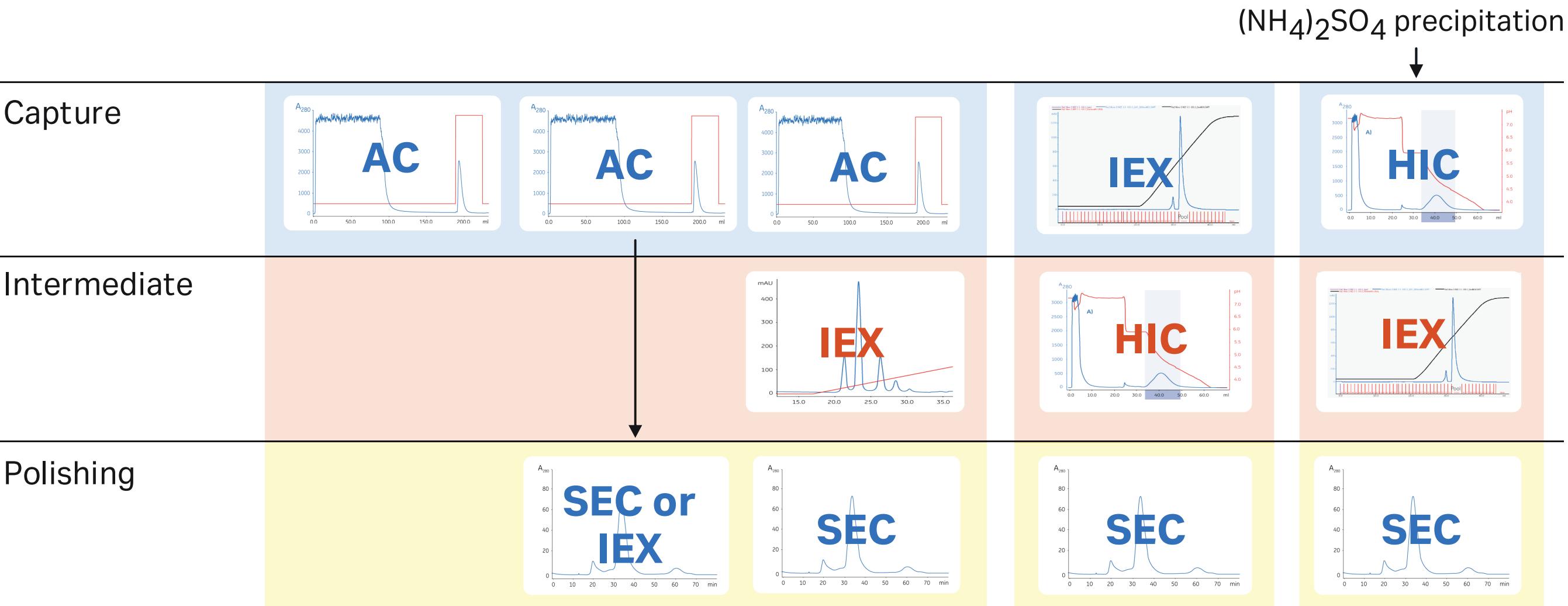
Selection of the final strategy will always depend upon specific sample properties and the required level of purification. Logical combinations of techniques are shown in Figure 4.3.

 For any capture step, select the technique showing the most effective binding to the target protein while binding as few of the contaminants as possible, that is, the technique with the highest selectivity and/or capacity for the target protein.

A sample is purified using a combination of techniques and alternative selectivities. For example, in an IEX-HIC-SEC strategy, the capture step selects according to differences in charge (IEX), the intermediate purification step according to differences in hydrophobicity (HIC), and the final polishing step according to differences in size (SEC).

 If nothing is known about the target protein, use IEX-HIC-SEC. This combination of techniques can be regarded as a standard protocol.

 Consider the use of both anion and cation exchange chromatography to give different selectivities within the same purification strategy.



**Fig 4.3.** Examples of logical combinations of chromatography steps.

## Ion exchange as a capture step

When IEX is used as a capture step, the objective is to quickly adsorb the protein(s) of interest from the crude sample and isolate them from critical contaminants such as proteases and glycosidases. The target protein(s) are concentrated and transferred to an environment which will conserve potency/activity. Removal of other critical contaminants may also be achieved by careful optimization of pH and elution conditions.

The focus is on capacity and speed in a capture step. It is advisable to compromise on the potential resolution that can be achieved by an IEX separation in order to maximize the capacity and/or speed of the separation in this first step.

IEX media for capture steps should offer high speed and high capacity. The choice of a suitable IEX medium depends on the sample properties and the scale of the purification (see also Chapter 5, Large-scale purification). Examples of IEX capture media include:

1. Sepharose Fast Flow (90 µm particle size) – good resolution for crude mixtures at any scale using flow velocities up to 300 cm/h and offering a wide range of selectivities.
2. Capto (90 µm particle size) – excellent pressure-flow properties for large-scale applications using flow velocities up to 700 cm/h.
3. Sepharose XL (90 µm particle size) – high capacity, good resolution for capture of selected proteins at laboratory and process scale using flow velocities up to 300 cm/h.
4. Sepharose Big Beads (200 µm particle size) – for viscous samples that preclude the use of IEX media with smaller particle size, using flows up to 300 cm/h, or for fast separations of very large sample volumes when resolution is of less importance, using flows up to 1000 cm/h.

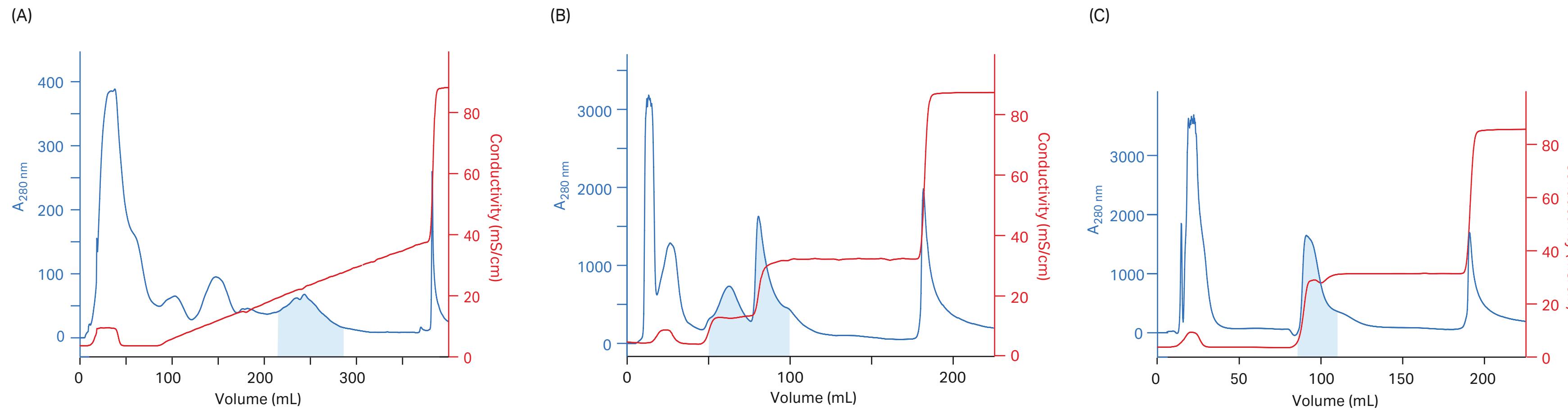
If only milligram quantities of product are needed and the capture step will not be scaled up, use high-performance media such as SOURCE or Sepharose High Performance according to the capacity required.

 Select start conditions that avoid adsorption of contaminants and so help to maximize the binding capacity for the target protein(s). This will facilitate a fast, simple step elution of the concentrated target protein(s).

## Capture using Sepharose Q XL

Figure 4.4 shows optimization of a capture step used for purification of a recombinant enzyme, deacetooxycephalosporin C synthase (DAOCS). Since this enzyme is oxygen-sensitive, it was important to rapidly remove the most harmful contaminants from the relatively unstable target protein. The isoelectric point of DAOCS ( $\text{pI} = 4.8$ ) made an anion exchanger the most suitable choice. Columns from the HiTrap IEX Selection Kit were screened to select the most suitable medium (results not shown) before optimizing the separation on a larger HiPrep Q XL 16/10 column. After a linear gradient elution (A), a multi-stepwise elution was tested (B). Since this caused a broader elution peak, it was decided to use a simple stepwise elution (C). In comparison with the gradient elution, the speed of the purification increased, buffer consumption decreased, and the target protein was eluted in a smaller volume (note that the x-axes differ between (A) and (C)).

Column: HiPrep Q XL 16/10  
Sample: Clarified *E. coli* extract  
Sample volume: 40 mL  
Start buffer: 50 mM Tris-HCl, 1 mM EDTA, pH 7.5; 2 mM DTT, 200 mM benzamidine-HCl, 0.2 mM PMSF  
Elution buffer: Start buffer + 1 M NaCl  
Flow rate (flow velocity): 10 mL/min (300 cm/h)  
System: ÄKTA system



**Fig 4.4.** Capture step using IEX and optimization of conditions. The elution position of DAOCS is shaded.

## Ion exchange for intermediate purification

When IEX is used for intermediate purification, the objective is to remove most of the significant impurities such as proteins, nucleic acids, endotoxins, and viruses.

In a typical intermediate purification step, speed is less critical since sample volume has been reduced and damaging contaminants have been removed during capture. Focus is on capacity and resolution in order to maintain productivity (amount of target protein processed per column in unit time) and to achieve as high selectivity (purity) as possible. Consequently, a gradient elution will usually be required.

- 👉 Use a technique with a selectivity that is complementary to that used in the capture step.

IEX media for intermediate purification should offer high capacity and high resolution with a range of complementary selectivities. The choice of a suitable IEX medium depends on the sample properties and the scale of the purification (see also Chapter 5, *Large-scale purification*). Examples of IEX media for intermediate purification:

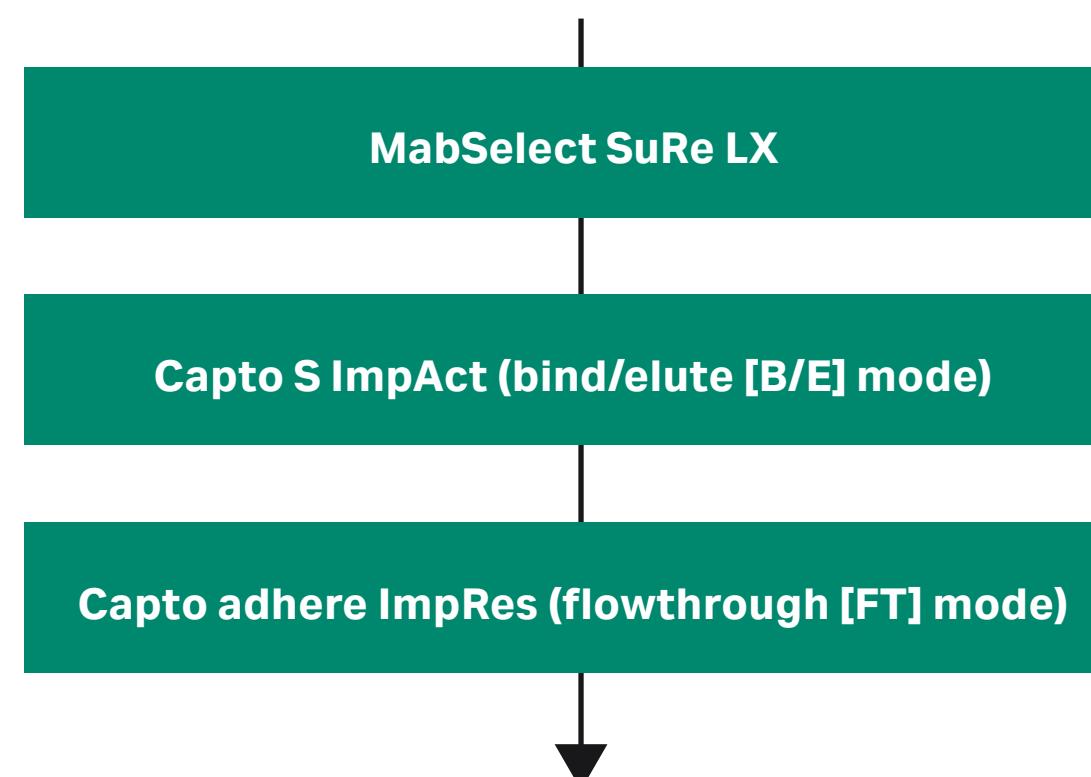
1. Sepharose High Performance (34 µm particle size) — high resolution in laboratory scale using flow velocities up to 150 cm/h.
2. Capto ImpAct and Capto ImpRes (50 µm and 40 µm particle size) — excellent pressure-flow properties for large-scale applications using flow velocities up to 200 cm/h.
3. SOURCE 15 (15 µm particle size) — high throughput, high resolution for laboratory or large-scale applications using flow velocities up to 1800 cm/h.
4. SOURCE 30 (30 µm particle size) — an alternative to SOURCE 15 for large-scale applications when flow velocities up to 2000 cm/h can be used.
5. Sepharose Fast Flow (90 µm particle size) — fast separations using flow velocities up to 300 cm/h, broad range of selectivities.

If only milligram quantities are required and the intermediate purification step will not be scaled-up, use MonoBeads or MiniBeads according to the capacity required.

- 👉 Optimize the selectivity of the medium to ensure high binding capacity and to maximize resolution. Use continuous gradient or multistep elution conditions.

## Intermediate purification using Capto S ImpAct

Capto S ImpAct was used for intermediate purification in a three-step MAb-purification process (Fig 4.5).

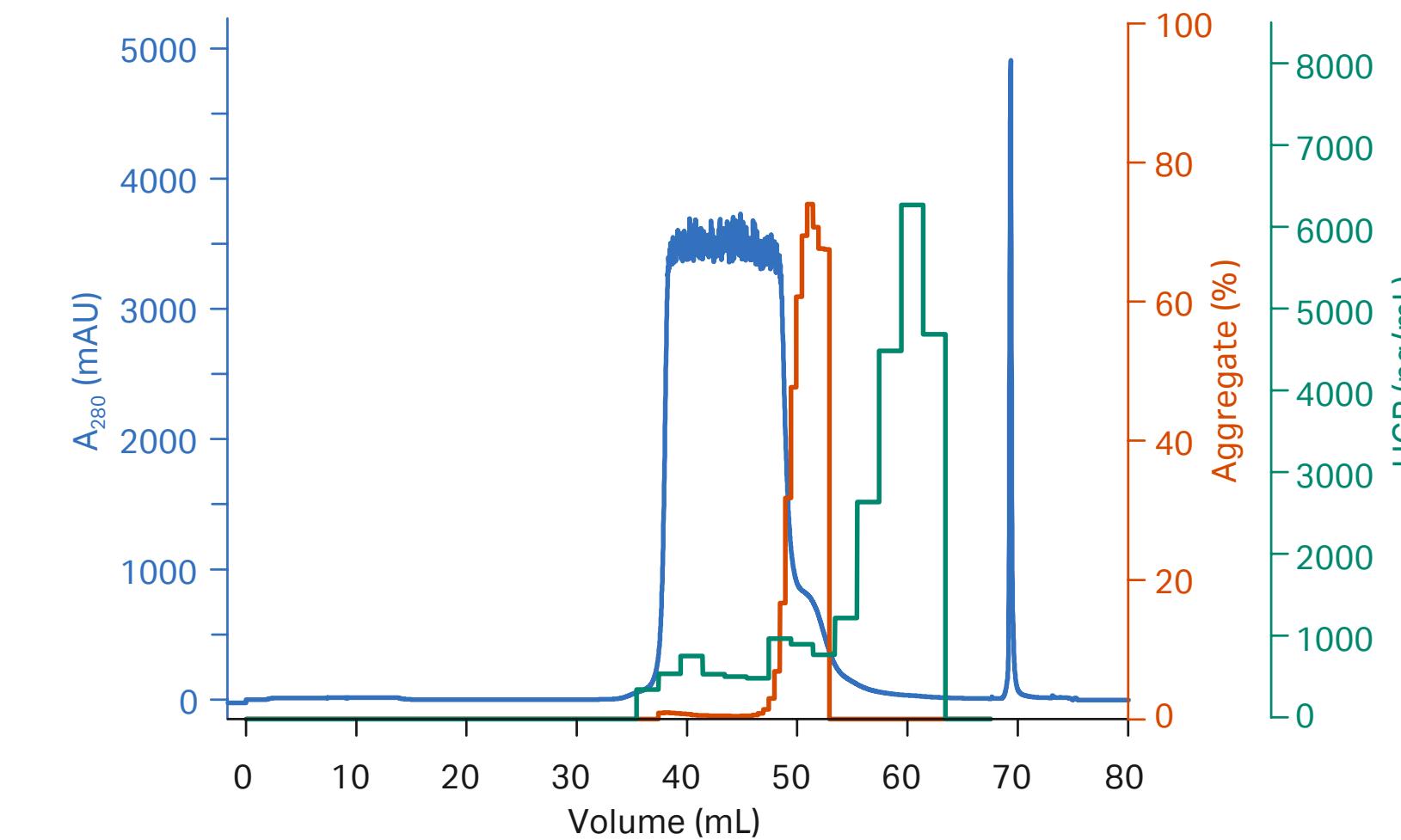


**Fig 4.5.** Three-step purification deploying MabSelect SuRe LX for capture, Capto S ImpAct for intermediate purification, and Capto Q for polishing.

The intermediate purification of MAb A resulted in reduction of aggregate concentration from 2% to 0.6% and host cell protein (HCP) concentration from 1800 ppm to 42 ppm. The yield of MAb A monomer in this step was 90%.

The high selectivity of Capto S ImpAct between MAb monomer, aggregates, and HCP can be seen from the chromatograms in Figure 4.6.

**Column:** Tricorn 5/100  
**Medium:** Capto S ImpAct (B/E mode)  
**Sample:** MAb A in 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 5.3 (6.8 mS/cm)  
**Load:** 64 g MAb/l medium (70% of  $Q_{B10}$ )  
**Residence time:** 5.4 min  
**Binding buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 5.3 (6.8 mS/cm)  
**Wash:** 5 CV of binding buffer  
**Elution buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 5.3, 0 to 350 mM NaCl in 20 CV  
**System:** ÄKTA system



**Fig 4.6.** Intermediate purification of MAb A using Capto S ImpAct. Aggregates eluted in the tail of the elution peak (red histogram), whereas most of the HCP (green histogram) eluted after the elution peak (blue UV trace).

## Ion exchange as a polishing step

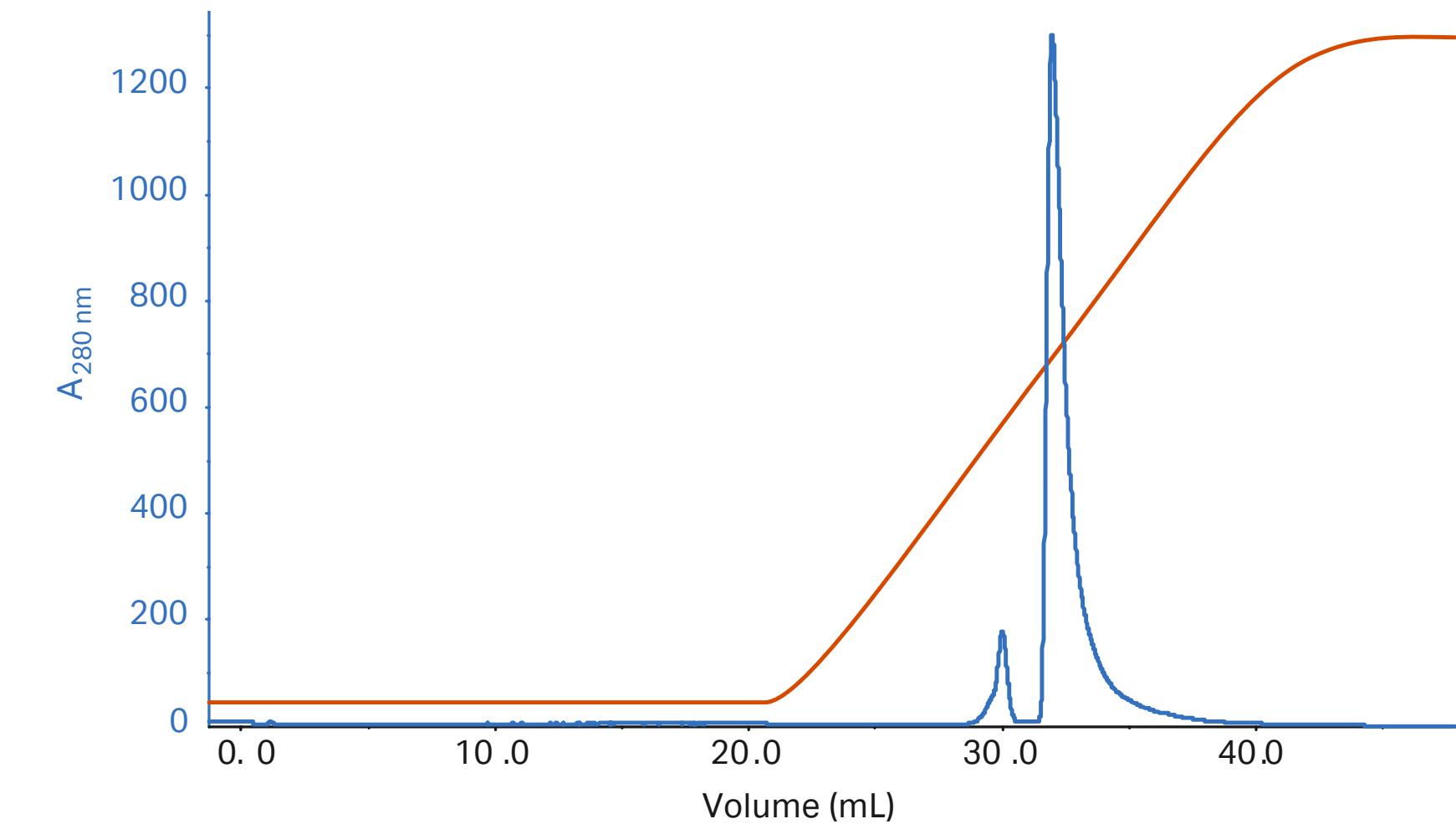
When IEX is used for polishing, most impurities have been removed except for trace amounts or closely related substances such as structural variants of the target protein, nucleic acids, viruses, or endotoxins. The purpose of the separation is to reduce these variants and trace contaminants to acceptable levels for the application. In contrast to capture steps where a fast, high capacity, step elution is most commonly used, a polishing step will therefore focus on achieving the highest possible resolution. An example of this approach is shown in Figure 4.7 in which Mono S 5/50 GL was used to separate a recombinant DNA binding protein, transposase TniA, from minor contaminants remaining after partial purification by anion exchange and heparin affinity chromatography.

IEX media for **polishing** steps should offer high resolution. The choice of a suitable IEX medium depends on the sample properties and the scale of the purification (see also Chapter 5, *Large-scale purification*). Examples of IEX polishing media:

1. MiniBeads (3 µm particle size) — polishing at microscale when highest resolution is essential.
2. MonoBeads (10 µm particle size) — polishing at laboratory scale when highest resolution is essential and a higher capacity than MiniBeads is required.
3. SOURCE 15 (15 µm particle size) — rapid, high resolution polishing for laboratory or large-scale applications using flow velocities up to 1800 cm/h.
4. SOURCE 30 (30 µm particle size) — an alternative to SOURCE 15 for large-scale applications when flow velocities up to 2000 cm/h can be used.
5. Sepharose High Performance (34 µm particle size) — high resolution at laboratory scale using flow velocities up to 150 cm/h.
6. Capto ImpAct and Capto ImpRes (50 µm and 40 µm particle size) — excellent pressure-flow properties for large-scale applications using flow velocities up to 200 cm/h.

 Optimize the gradient elution to maximize selectivity. Use high efficiency media with small bead sizes to improve resolution.

Column:	Mono S 5/50 GL
Sample:	14.5 mL from HiPrep 26/10 Desalting
Start buffer:	20 mM MES pH 6.5, 1 mM EDTA, 2 mM MgCl <sub>2</sub> , 1 mM DTT
Elution buffer:	20 mM MES pH 6.5, 1 mM EDTA, 2 mM MgCl <sub>2</sub> , 1 mM DTT, 1 M NaCl
Flow rate:	1 mL/min
Gradient:	0% to 100% elution buffer, 20 CV



**Fig 4.7.** High-resolution cation exchange chromatography on Mono S 5/50 GL. The desalted sample was applied to Mono S 5/50 GL, and TniA was eluted as a sharp peak at approximately 500 mM NaCl.

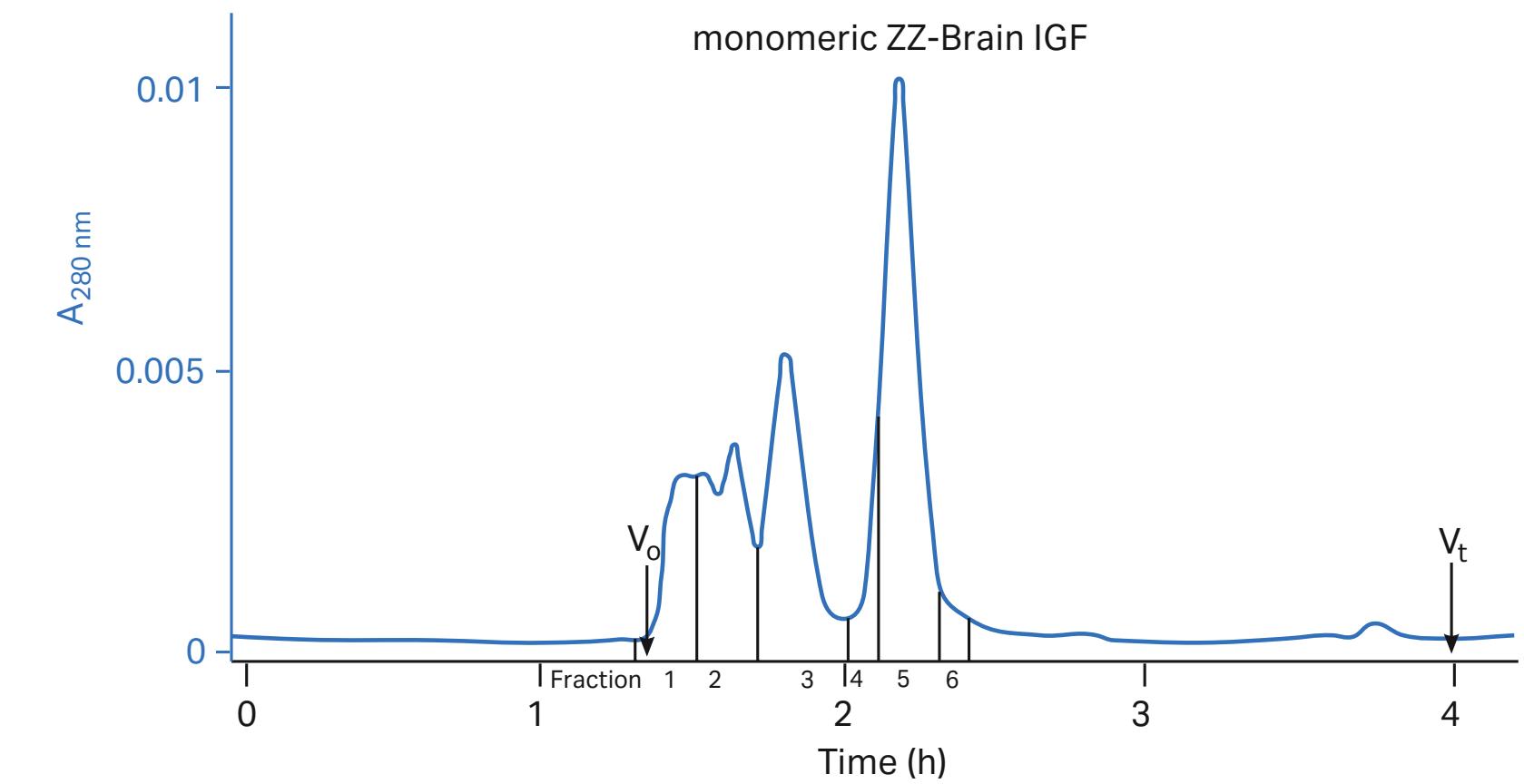
## Alternative techniques for polishing

Most commonly, separations by charge, hydrophobicity, or affinity will have been used in earlier stages of a purification strategy so that high-resolution SEC is ideal for the final polishing step. The product can be purified and transferred into the required buffer in one step and dimers and aggregates can be removed, as shown in Figure 4.6.

SEC is also the slowest of the chromatography techniques and the size of the column determines the volume of sample that can be applied. It is therefore most logical to use SEC after techniques that reduce sample volume so that smaller columns can be used. Media for polishing steps should offer the highest possible resolution. Superdex Increase is the first choice at laboratory scale and Superdex prep grade for large-scale applications.

RPC can also be considered for a polishing step, provided that the target protein can withstand the run conditions. RPC separates proteins and peptides on the basis of hydrophobicity and is a high selectivity (high resolution) technique, usually requiring the use of organic solvents. The technique is widely used for purity check analyses when recovery of activity and tertiary structure are not essential. Since many proteins are denatured by organic solvents, RPC is not generally recommended for protein purification because recovery of activity and return to a correct tertiary structure can be compromised. However, in the polishing phase, when the majority of protein impurities have been removed, RPC can be an excellent technique, particularly for small target proteins that are not often denatured by organic solvents.

*Column:*  
XK 16/60 packed with Superdex 75 prep grade  
*Sample:*  
Partly purified ZZ-brain IGF  
*Sample load:*  
1.0 mL  
*Buffer:*  
300 mM ammonium acetate, pH 6.0  
*Flow rate (flow velocity):*  
0.5 mL/min (15 cm/h)



**Fig 4.6.** Final polishing step: separation of dimers and multimers on Superdex 75 prep grade.

05

# Large-scale purification

The BioProcess chromatography media family includes media widely used by biopharmaceutical manufacturers. Support for these products comprises of validated manufacturing methods, secure long-term chromatography media supply, safe and easy handling, and regulatory support files (RSF) to assist process validation and submissions to regulatory authorities. In addition, the Fast Trak Training and Education team provides high-level hands-on training for all key aspects of bioprocess development and manufacturing.

All BioProcess media have high chemical stability to allow efficient cleaning/sanitization procedures and validated packing methods established for a wide range of large-scale columns.

## BioProcess media for IEX

BioProcess media for ion exchange chromatography are designed for large scale purification and use in industrial processes. Examples of BioProcess media for IEX purification are shown in Table 5.1 (the properties and handling of each medium are described in detail in Chapter 3).

Most of the media, except Sepharose Big Beads, are available in HiTrap and HiScreen formats for development of efficient and robust purification parameters before scaling up. Some of the media are also available in high-throughput process development (HTPD) formats, such as PreDictor 96-well filter plates for fast and easy parallel screening of running conditions and PreDictor RoboColumn (miniature columns for use with a robotic station) for testing of, for example, DBC. By using these small-scale formats in the early stages of process development, valuable time is saved and buffer and sample consumption reduced.

The range of BioProcess media includes capture media such as Capto, Sepharose Fast Flow, and Sepharose XL. These media can be used at high flow rates and have high dynamic binding capacities. Media with smaller beads, such as Capto ImpRes, Capto ImpAct, Sepharose High Performance, and SOURCE give high final resolution and are suitable for polishing purification (see also Chapter 4 for the principle of capture and polishing purification).

**Table 5.1.** Examples of BioProcess chromatography media for IEX

Medium	Chromatography method	Average particle size, $d_{50v}$ ( $\mu\text{m}$ )	Recommended flow rate <sup>1</sup>	Protein binding capacity <sup>1</sup>	Main usage
Q Sepharose Big Beads	Strong anion	200	High	low	Capture
SP Sepharose Big Beads	Strong cation	200	High	low	Capture
Capto Q	Strong anion	90	High	High	Capture
Capto DEAE	Weak anion	90	High	Medium	Capture
Capto S	Strong cation	90	High	High	Capture
Q Sepharose Fast Flow	Strong anion	90	Medium	Medium	Capture
DEAE Sepharose Fast Flow	Weak anion	90	Medium	Medium	Capture
ANX Sepharose 4 Fast Flow (high sub)	Weak anion	90	Medium	Medium	Capture
SP Sepharose Fast Flow	Strong cation	90	Medium	Medium	Capture
CM Sepharose Fast Flow	Weak cation	90	Medium	Medium	Capture
Q Sepharose XL	Strong anion	90	Medium	High	Capture
SP Sepharose XL	Strong cation	90	Medium	High	Capture
Capto Q ImpRes	Strong anion	40	Medium	Medium	Polishing
Capto SP ImpRes	Strong cation	40	Medium	Medium	Polishing
Capto S ImpAct	Strong cation	50	Medium	High	Polishing
SOURCE 30Q	Strong anion	30	High	Medium	Polishing
SOURCE 30S	Strong cation	30	High	Medium	Polishing
SOURCE 15Q	Strong anion	15	High	Medium	Polishing
SOURCE 15S	Strong cation	15	High	Medium	Polishing

<sup>1</sup> Recommended flow rate and protein binding capacity are expressed as high, medium, or low for easy comparison. The values for each medium can be found in Chapter 3.

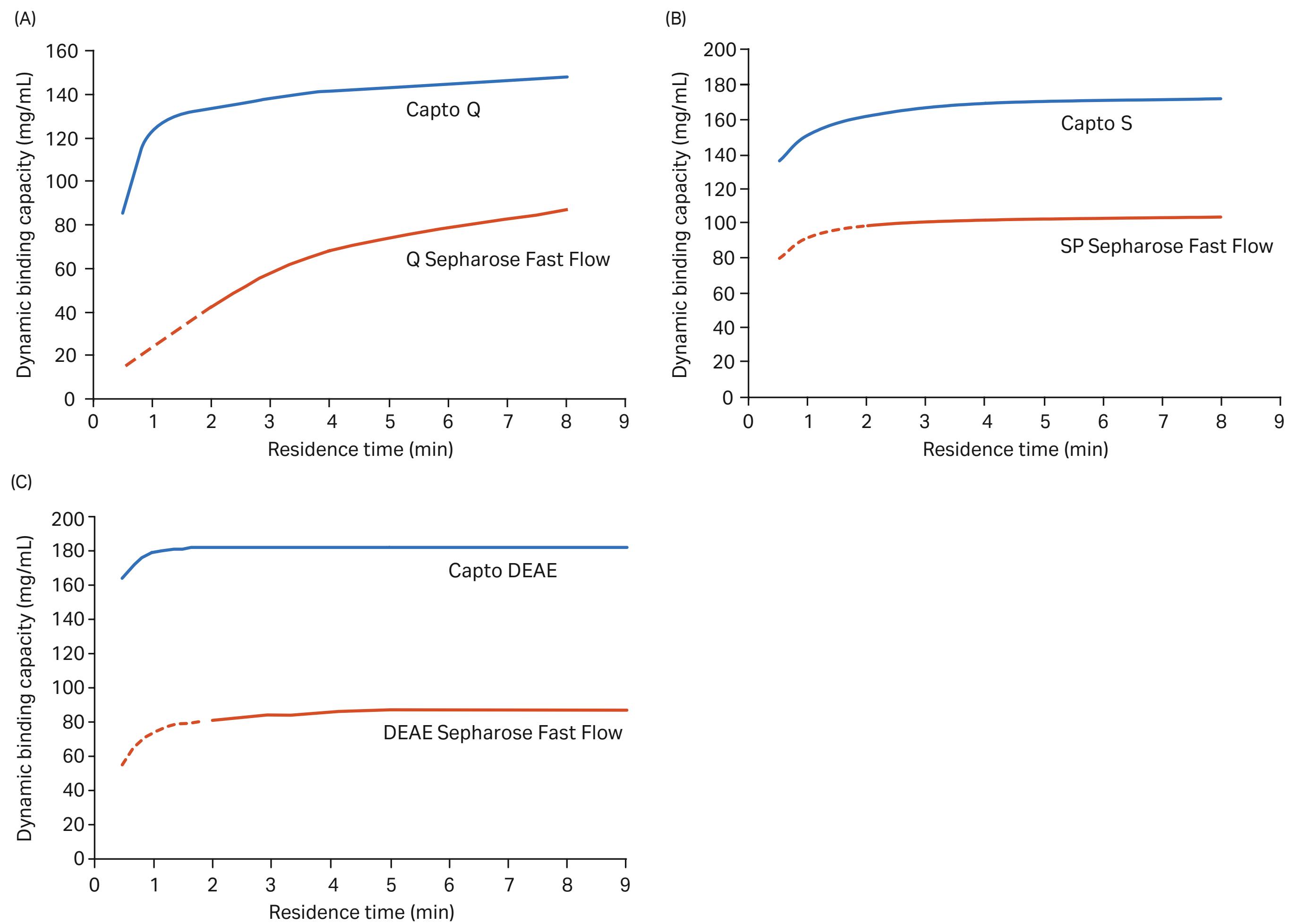
## Capture purification

General capture purification is performed using Capto and Sepharose Fast Flow. When IEX is used as a capture step, the objective is to quickly adsorb the protein of interest from the crude sample and remove critical contaminants such as proteases. For modern industrial applications, Capto media are usually the preferred option having benefits such as high rigidity and ability to run at high flow rates. Figure 5.1 shows a comparison of media properties. Capto media give increased DBC over a wide range of residence times due to excellent mass transfer properties. Further, a high DBC contributes to shortening the overall processing time as the total number of cycles can be reduced.

Sepharose Fast Flow media are available with a wide range of ion exchange groups and are still widely used in biopharmaceutical processes.

The capture media Q Sepharose XL and SP Sepharose XL have greater binding capacity compared with other Sepharose media. The high binding capacity has been obtained by binding the ionic group to long, flexible dextran chains coupled to the agarose matrix.

Sepharose Big Beads are designed for capture of large volumes of crude and/or viscous sample. Due to the large bead size of the Sepharose Big Beads matrix (200 µm average particle size), a lower resolution compared with other capture media can be expected.



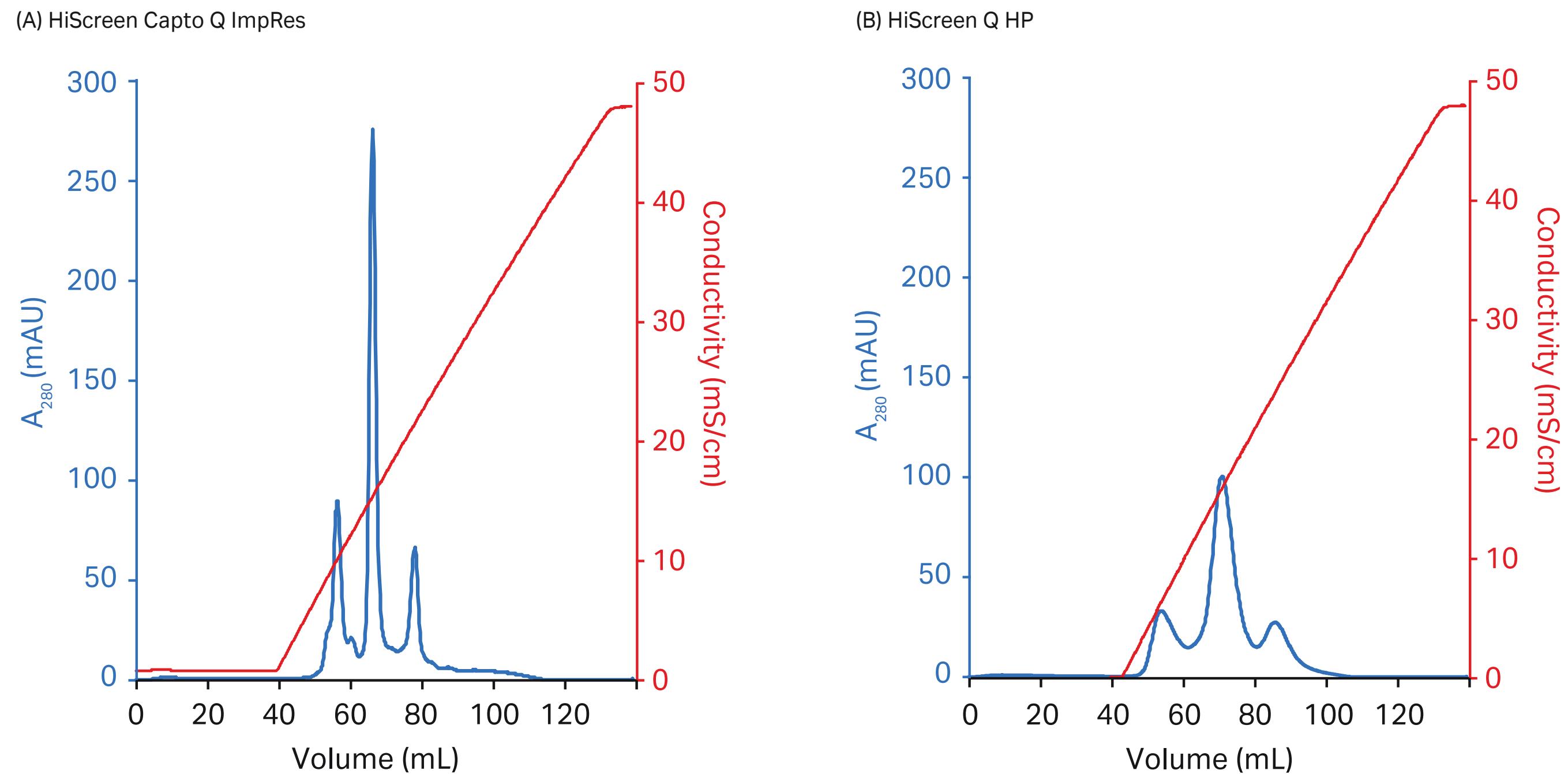
**Fig 5.1.** Dynamic binding capacity (DBC) as a function of residence time for Capto and corresponding Sepharose Fast Flow media. Proteins: (A) BSA; (B)  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin; (C) amyloglucosidase. Residence times below 2 min are not possible for Sepharose Fast Flow in large-scale columns due to lower pressure/flow properties than for Capto media.

## Polishing purification

The polishing purification is performed using chromatography media with smaller average bead size, such as Capto ImpRes, Capto ImpAct, and SOURCE media. In contrast to capture purification where a fast, high-capacity step elution is most commonly used, a polishing purification will focus on achieving the high resolution (resulting in high purity).

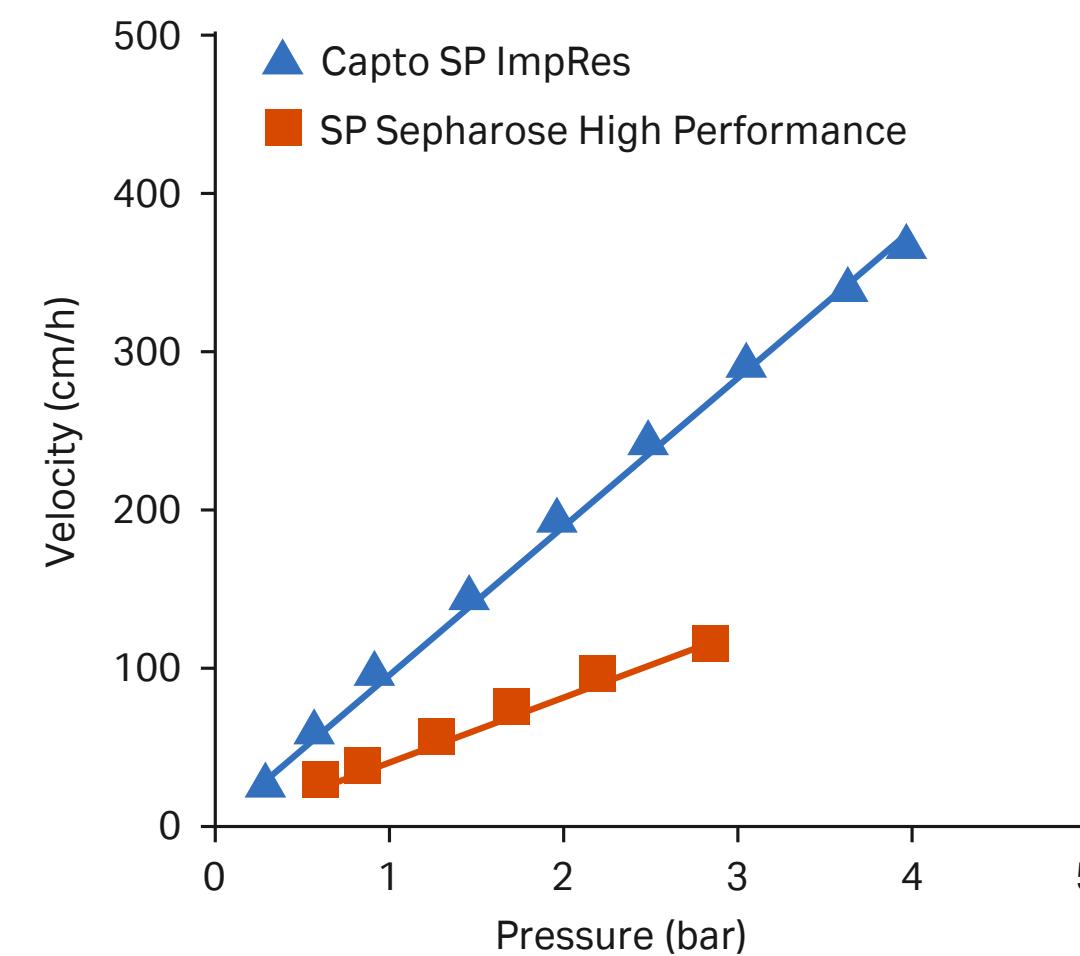
Although the charged groups of the S, SP, Q, and DEAE ligands are identical between different IEX media, minor differences in selectivity can occur due to differences in base matrix, ligand density, ligand composition, and surface extenders. Capto ImpRes media are designed for high resolution and high throughput during polishing steps. A comparison with Q Sepharose High Performance in HiScreen columns showed similar resolution results, although HiScreen Capto Q ImpRes was run at 300 cm/h – twice the flow velocity of HiScreen Q HP (Fig 5.2). Capto ImpRes media provide improved performance over Sepharose when scaling up due to their good pressure/flow properties, allowing high flow rates.

Columns:	HiScreen Capto Q ImpRes, HiScreen Q HP, 4.7 mL
Sample:	5 mL apo-transferrin (0.3 mg/mL), $\alpha$ -lactoalbumin (0.4 mg/mL), soybean trypsin inhibitor (0.6 mg/mL) in start buffer
Start buffer:	50 mM Tris, pH 7.4
Elution buffer:	50 mM Tris, 500 mM NaCl, pH 7.4
Flow rate (flow velocity):	HiScreen Capto Q ImpRes, 2.3 mL/min (300 cm/h); HiScreen Q HP, 1.2 mL/min (150 cm/h)
Gradient:	0% to 100% elution buffer in 20 CV
Residence time:	HiScreen Capto Q ImpRes, 2 min; HiScreen Q HP, 4 min



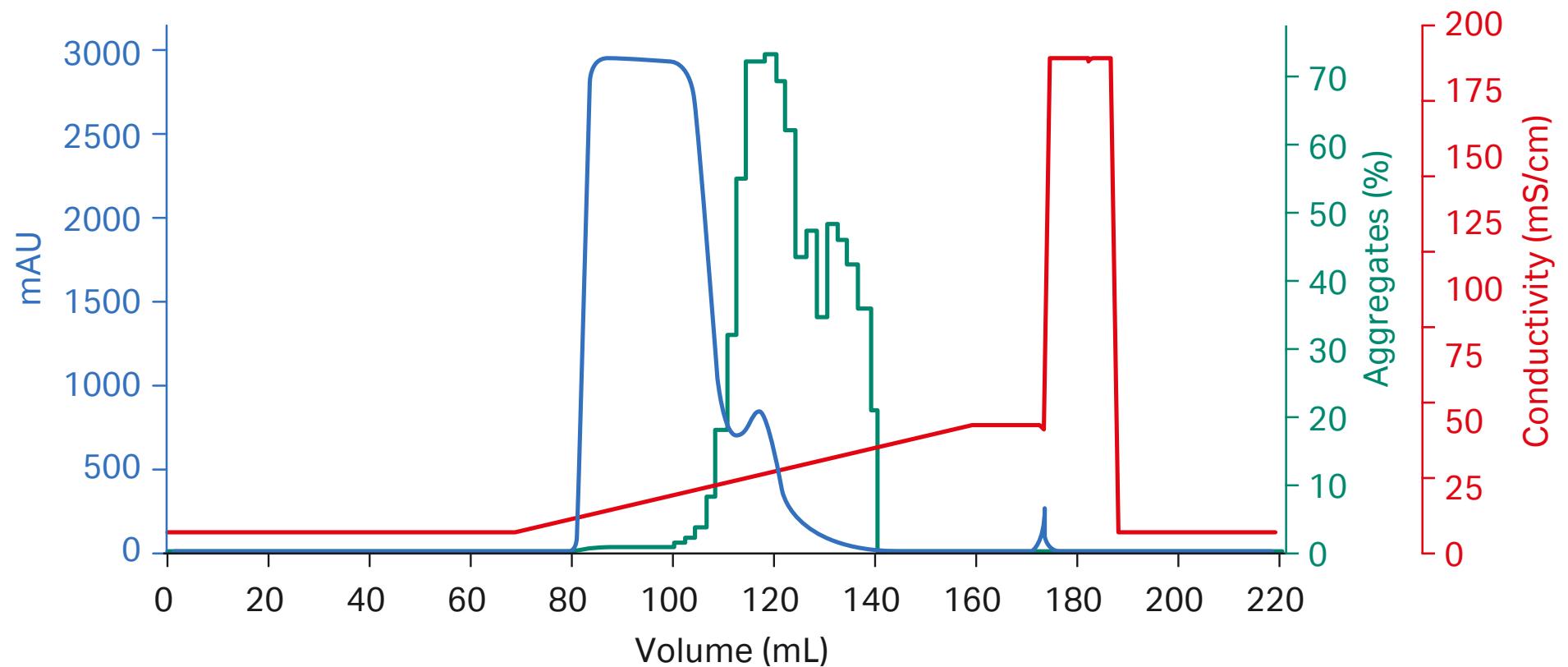
**Fig 5.2.** Chromatograms from resolution comparisons on two IEX media with the same Q charged group ligand. Peaks (left to right) are apo-transferrin,  $\alpha$ -lactoalbumin, and soybean trypsin inhibitor. The small bead size of (A) Capto Q ImpRes and (B) Q Sepharose High Performance gives high resolution in both cases. However, the higher flow velocity possible with Capto Q ImpRes makes it a good choice for large-scale intermediate purification or polishing.

The difference between Capto ImpRes and Sepharose High Performance media is also illustrated in Figure 5.3. Although the bead sizes of the media are similar, the pressure/flow properties of Capto ImpRes are significantly improved as a result of the greater mechanical stability of its high-flow base matrix.



**Fig 5.3.** The pressure-flow properties of Capto ImpRes are enhanced compared with Sepharose High Performance due to the improved mechanical stability of the base matrix. Running conditions: AxiChrom 300 column, 20 cm bed height with water at 20°C.

**Column:** HiScreen Capto S ImpAct, CV 4.7 mL  
**Sample:** ~ 10 mg/mL MAb A purified on MabSelect SuRe, buffer exchanged into start buffer  
**Sample load:** 80 mg/mL medium  
**Start buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 5.0 + 50 mM NaCl  
**Elution buffer:** 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 5.0 + 500 mM NaCl  
**Flow rate loading:** 1.1 mL/min, residence time 4 min  
**Flow rate elution:** 0.6 mL/min, residence time 8 min  
**Gradient:** Linear, 20 CV



**Fig 5.4.** Purification of MAb A at a high sample load (80 mg/mL medium). Histogram in green represents aggregates in fractions.

Capto S ImpAct chromatography medium is designed for the polishing steps of MAb and a wide range of other biomolecules. In this study, the binding capacity for MAb A and the efficiency in the clearance of impurities was evaluated. The content of aggregates in the sample was approximately 7% after the initial protein A capture step. A high load, 80 mg/mL medium, was applied to the Capto S ImpAct column and elution was performed using a linear gradient. The chromatogram illustrates that aggregates (green) elute at the tail of the elution peak (Fig 5.4). The purification resulted in 90% monomer recovery and reduction of aggregate content to 0.9%.

SOURCE 30Q and 30S are easy to pack at both laboratory and large scale and are suitable for industrial processes when large volumes of partially purified material need to be processed. The excellent scalability of SOURCE 30S was shown in a scale up from a 105-mL small scale-column to a 50-L custom-designed production column (Fig 5.5). The results show that performance was maintained despite high flow rates and an almost 500-fold scale-up factor.

**Columns:** SOURCE 30S: (A) FineLINE Pilot 35, 35 mm i.d. × 109 mm (105 mL)  
 SOURCE 30S: (B) FineLINE 100, 100 mm i.d. × 100 mm (0.78 L)  
 SOURCE 30S: (C) FineLINE 800, 800 mm i.d. × 100 mm (50 L)

**Sample:** Ribonuclease A, cytochrome C, and lysozyme (3.75:1)

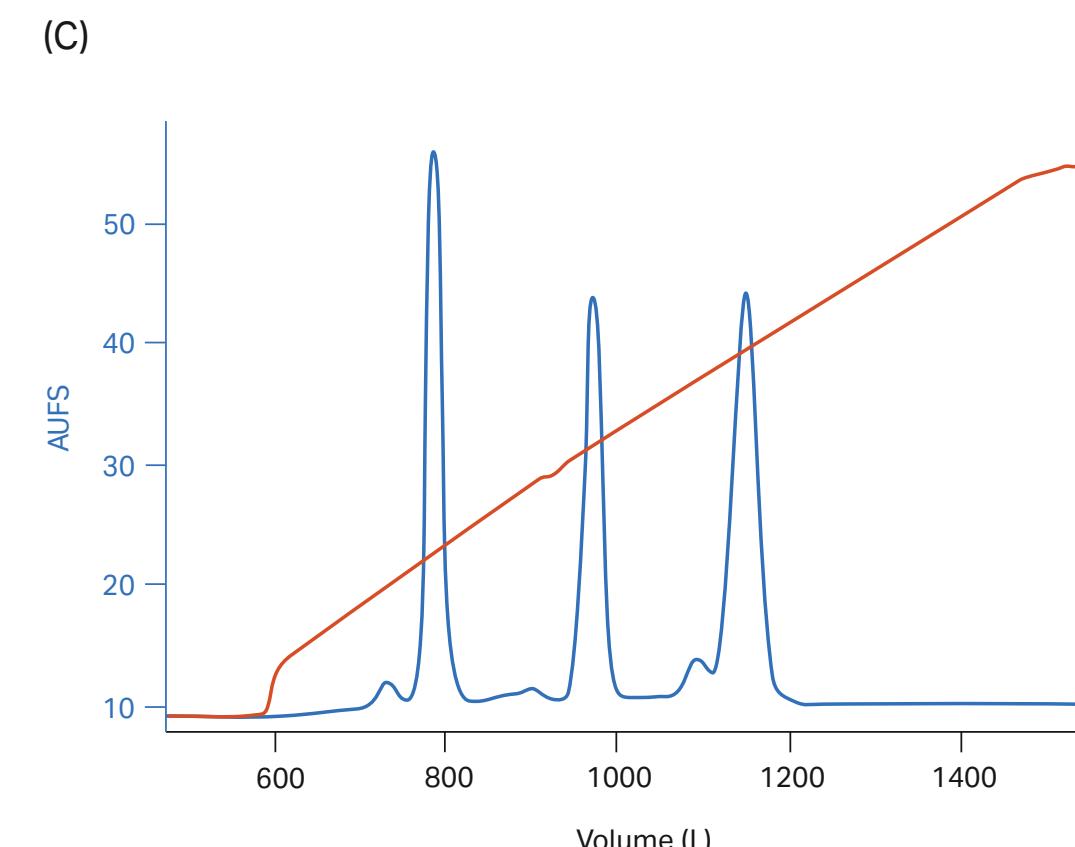
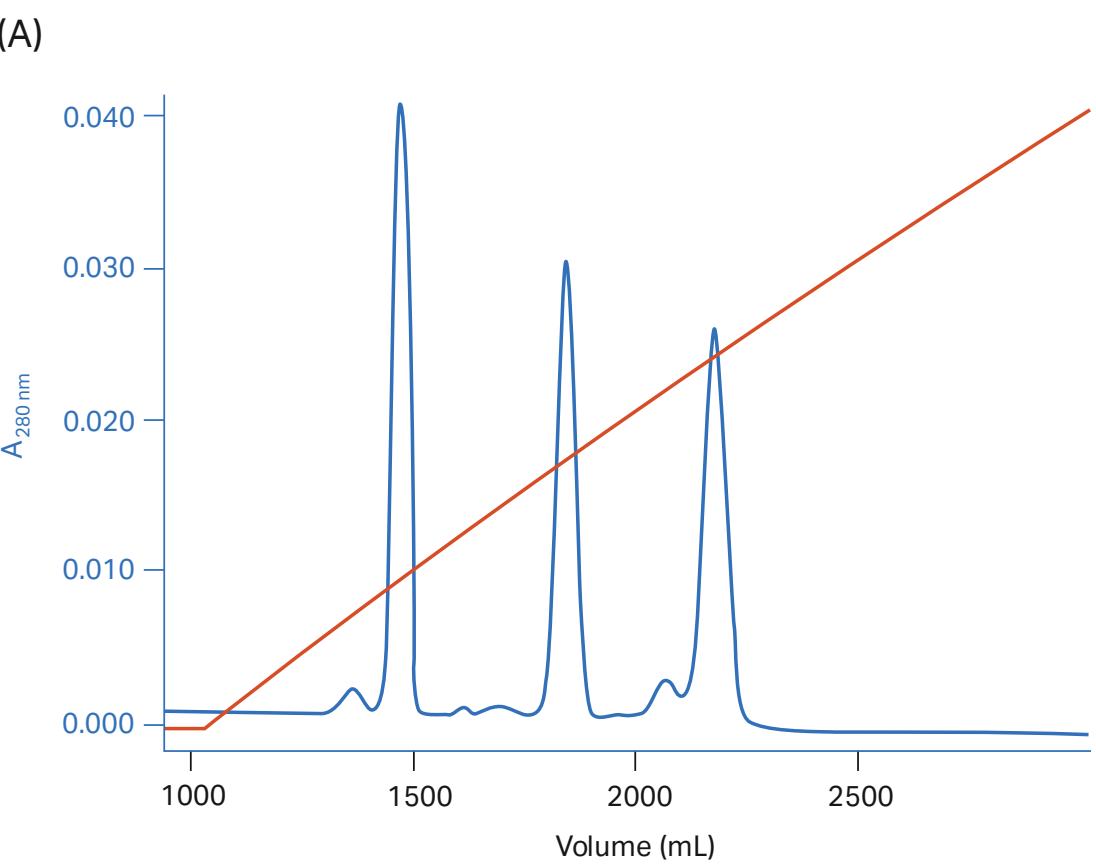
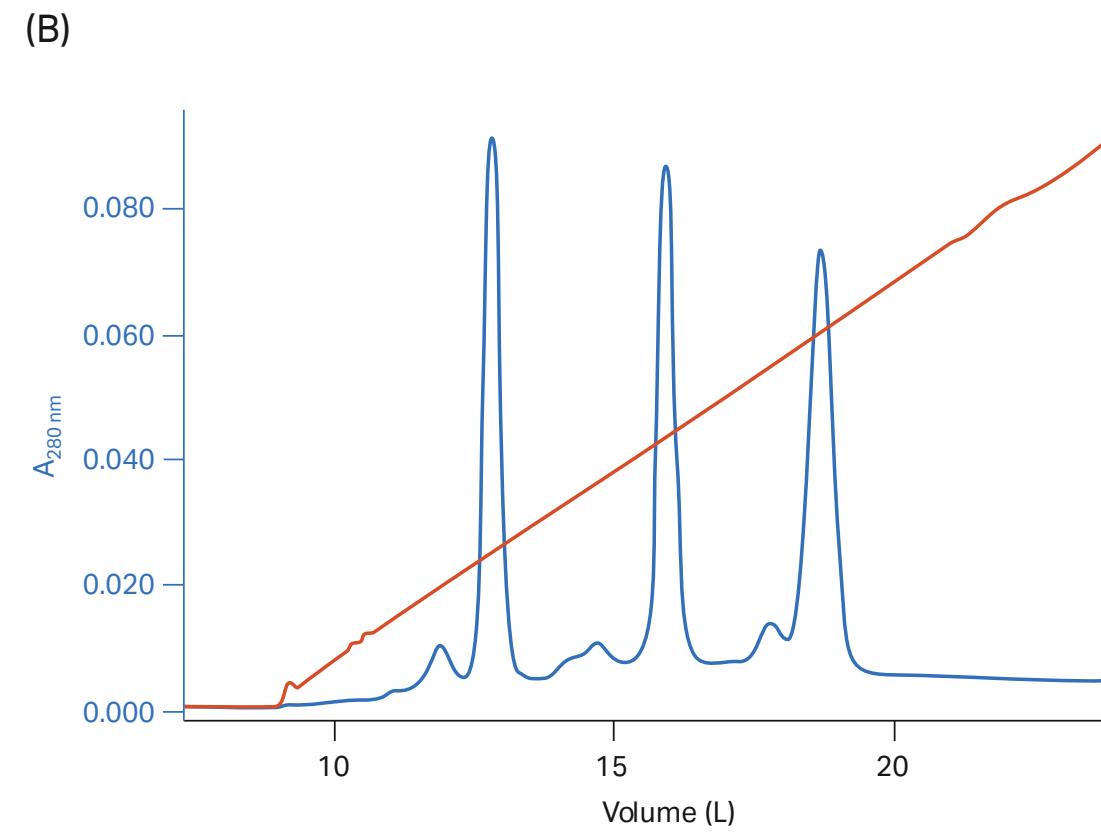
**Sample load:** 0.32 mg total protein/mL media

**Start buffer:** 20 mM sodium phosphate, pH 6.8

**Elution buffer:** 20 mM sodium phosphate + 400 mM NaCl, pH 6.8

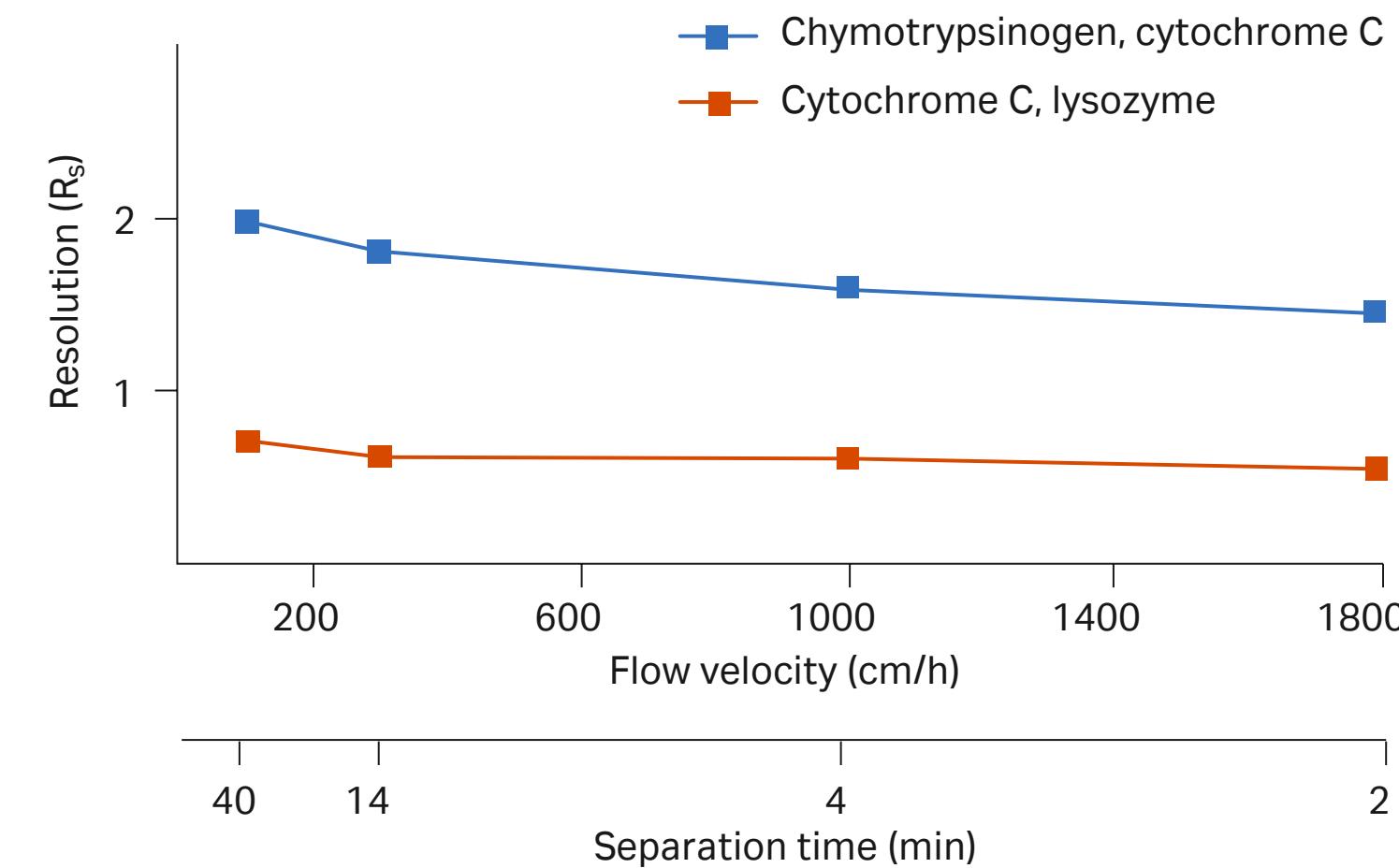
**Flow rate:** (A) 48 mL/min (B) 0.39 L/min, (C) 25 L/min

**Gradient:** 0% to 100% elution buffer, 20 CV



**Fig 5.5.** Scale-up from a FineLINE Pilot 35 column via FineLINE 100 column (7-fold) to FineLine 800 custom-designed column (64-fold). Total scale-up factor: 476-fold.

SOURCE 15Q and SOURCE 15S have a uniform, 15 µm diameter, spherical shape and are designed for high-resolution purification at lab scale and for scaling up. The beads give stable packed beds with low back pressure. Figure 5.6 illustrates the maintained performance of high-resolution separations also at very high flow rates.



**Fig 5.6.** Resolution vs flow velocity for model proteins. Column: RESOURCE S, 1 mL (6.4 mm diameter × 30 mm bed height). Sample: chymotrypsinogen, cytochrome C, lysozyme. Total load 16 mg.

## Prepacked, disposable solutions speed up the downstream process

In addition to a wide range of industrial-scale columns such as AxiChrom columns and bulk media for purification of proteins, Cytiva offers large-scale, disposable ReadyToProcess columns. These columns are prepacked, prequalified, and presanitized process chromatography columns available with a range of BioProcess media — including Capto, Capto ImpAct, Capto ImpRes, Sepharose Fast Flow, and Sepharose High Performance product families. ReadyToProcess columns are available in several different sizes (Fig 5.7) and are designed for purification of biopharmaceuticals (e.g., proteins and antibodies, vaccines, plasmids, and viruses) for clinical phase I and II studies. Depending on the scale of operations, the columns can also be used for manufacturing, as well as preclinical studies. ReadyToProcess columns make column packing, qualification, and sanitization redundant in the purification process allowing significant time savings.

## Custom Designed Media

Custom Designed Media (CDM) can be produced for specific industrial process separations when suitable media are not available from the standard range. The Custom Designed Media group (CDM group) works in close collaboration with the user to design, manufacture, test, and deliver media for specialized purification requirements.

 See also *Handbook of Process Chromatography: Optimization, Scale-up, and Validation*, 18112156.



**Fig 5.7.** ReadyToProcess columns are easily connected to the system and can be disposed after completed production.

06

# Appendix

## Appendix 1

### Sample preparation

Samples for chromatographic purification should be clear and free from particulate matter. Simple steps to clarify a sample before beginning purification will avoid clogging the column, reduce the need for stringent washing procedures, and extend the life of the chromatographic medium.

Sample extraction procedures and the selection of buffers, additives, and detergents are determined largely by the source of the material, the stability of the target molecule, the chromatographic techniques that will be employed and the intended use of the product. These subjects are dealt with in general terms in the *Strategies for Protein Purification Handbook* and more specifically according to target molecule in the *Recombinant Protein Purification Handbook*, and *Antibody Purification Handbook*, available from Cytiva.

### Sample stability

In the majority of cases, biological activity needs to be retained after purification. Retaining the activity of the target molecule is also an advantage when following the progress of the purification, since detection of the target molecule often relies on its biological activity. Denaturation of sample components often leads to precipitation or enhanced nonspecific adsorption, both of which will impair column function. Hence there are many advantages to checking the stability limits of the sample and working within these limits during purification.

Proteins generally contain a high degree of tertiary structure, kept together by van der Waals' forces, ionic and hydrophobic interactions, and hydrogen bonding. Any conditions capable of destabilizing these forces may cause denaturation and/or precipitation. By contrast, peptides contain a low degree of tertiary structure. Their native state is dominated by secondary structures, stabilized mainly by hydrogen bonding. For this reason, peptides tolerate a much wider range of conditions than proteins. This basic difference in native structures is also reflected in that proteins are not easily renatured, while peptides often renature spontaneously.

 It is advisable to perform some stability tests before beginning to develop a purification protocol. The list below shows examples of such testing:

- Test pH stability in steps of one pH unit between pH 2.0 and pH 9.0
- Test salt stability with 0 to 2 M NaCl and 0 to 2 M  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$  in steps of 0.5 M
- Test the stability towards acetonitrile and methanol in 10% steps between 0% and 50%
- Test the temperature stability in 10°C steps from 4°C to 40°C
- Test the stability and occurrence of proteolytic activity by leaving an aliquot of the sample at room temperature overnight. Centrifuge each sample and measure activity and UV absorbance at 280 nm in the supernatant

## Sample clarification

Centrifugation and filtration are standard laboratory techniques for sample clarification and are used routinely when handling small samples.

 It is highly recommended to centrifuge and filter samples immediately before chromatographic purification.

### Centrifugation

Centrifugation removes lipids and particulate matter, such as cell debris. If the sample is still not clear after centrifugation, use filter paper or a 5 µm filter as a first step and one of the filters below as a second-step filter.

- For small sample volumes or proteins that adsorb to filters, centrifuge at  $10\,000 \times g$  for 15 min
- For cell lysates, centrifuge at 40 000 to 50 000  $\times g$  for 30 min
- Serum samples can be filtered through glass wool after centrifugation to remove remaining lipids

### Filtration

Filtration removes particulate matter. Whatman™ syringe filters, which give the least amount of nonspecific binding of proteins, are composed of cellulose acetate (CA), regenerated cellulose (RA), or polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) (Table A1.1).

**Table A1.1.** Whatman syringe filters for filtration of samples

Filter pore size (µm)	Up to sample volume (mL)	Whatman syringe filter <sup>1</sup>	Membrane
0.8	100	Puradisc FP 30	CA
0.45	1	Puradisc 4	PVDF
0.45	10	Puradisc 13	PVDF
0.45	100	Puradisc 25	PVDF
0.45	10	SPARTAN™ 13	RC
0.45	100	SPARTAN 30	RC
0.45	100	Puradisc FP 30	CA
0.2	1	Puradisc 4	PVDF
0.2	10	Puradisc 13	PVDF
0.2	100	Puradisc 25	PVDF
0.2	10	SPARTAN 13	RC
0.2	100	SPARTAN 30	RC
0.2	100	Puradisc FP 30	CA

<sup>1</sup> The number indicates the diameter (mm) of the syringe filter.

For sample preparation before chromatography, select a filter pore size in relation to the bead size of the chromatographic medium (Table A1.2).

 Check the recovery of the target protein in a test run. Some proteins adsorb nonspecifically to filter surfaces.

## Desalting

Desalting columns are suitable for any sample volume and will rapidly remove low molecular weight contaminants in a single step at the same time as transferring the sample into the correct buffer conditions. Centrifugation and/or filtration of the sample before desalting is still recommended. Detailed procedures for buffer exchange and desalting are given in the section *Buffer exchange and desalting* later in this appendix.

At laboratory scale, when samples are reasonably clean after filtration or centrifugation, the buffer exchange and desalting step can be avoided. For affinity chromatography or hydrophobic interaction chromatography, it might be sufficient to adjust the pH of the sample. For IEX, it might be sufficient to dilute the sample to reduce the ionic strength.

**Table A1.2.** Selecting a sample filter based on the bead size of the chromatographic medium used

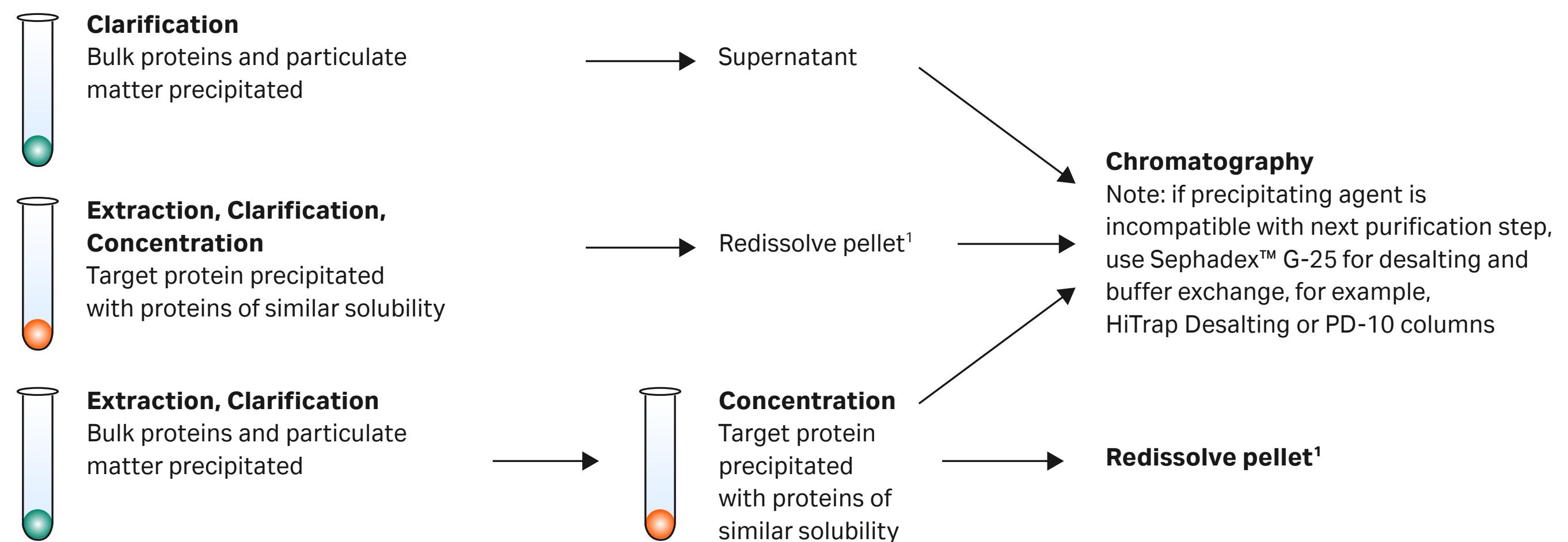
Nominal pore size of filter ( $\mu\text{m}$ )	Particle size of chromatographic medium ( $\mu\text{m}$ )
1.0	90 and upwards
0.45	30 or 34
0.22	3, 10, 15 or when extra clean samples or sterile filtration is required

## Specific sample preparation steps

Specific sample preparation steps might be required if the crude sample is known to contain contaminants such as lipids, lipoproteins, or phenol red that might build up on a column. Gross impurities, such as bulk protein, should be removed before any chromatographic step.

### Fractional precipitation

Fractional precipitation is occasionally used at laboratory scale to remove gross impurities from the sample. Precipitation techniques separate fractions by the principle of differential solubility. Because proteins differ in their degree of hydrophobicity, increased salt concentrations can enhance hydrophobic interactions between the proteins and cause precipitation. Fractional precipitation can be applied to remove gross impurities in three different ways, as shown in Figure A1.1.



<sup>1</sup> Remember: not all proteins are easy to redissolve, yield can be reduced

**Fig A1.1.** Three ways to use precipitation.

Precipitation techniques can be affected by temperature, pH, and sample concentration. These parameters should be controlled to ensure reproducible results.

Examples of precipitation agents are reviewed in Table A1.3. The most common precipitation method using ammonium sulfate is described in more detail.

**Table A1.3.** Examples of precipitation techniques

Precipitation agent	Typical conditions for use	Sample type	Comment
Ammonium sulfate	As described below.	> 1 mg/mL proteins especially immunoglobulins.	Stabilizes proteins, no denaturation, supernatant can go directly to HIC. Helps to reduce lipid content.
Dextran sulfate	Add 0.04 mL 10% dextran sulfate and 1 mL of 1 M $\text{CaCl}_2$ , per mL sample, mix 15 min, centrifuge 10 000 $\times g$ , discard pellet.	Samples with high levels of lipoprotein, e.g., ascites.	Precipitates lipoprotein.
Polyvinylpyrrolidine	Add 3% (w/v), stir 4 h, centrifuge 17 000 $\times g$ , discard pellet.	Samples with high levels of lipoprotein, e.g., ascites.	Alternative to dextran sulfate.
Polyethylene glycol (PEG, $M_r > 4000$ )	Up to 20% w/v.	Plasma proteins.	No denaturation, supernatant goes directly to IEX or AC, complete removal might be difficult. Stabilizes proteins.
Acetone (cold)	Up to 80% v/v at $\pm 0^\circ\text{C}$ . Collect pellet after centrifugation at full speed in a microcentrifuge.		Can denature protein irreversibly. Useful for peptide precipitation or concentration of sample for electrophoresis.
Polyethyleneimine	0.1% w/v.		Precipitates aggregated nucleoproteins.
Protamine sulfate	1% w/v.		Precipitates aggregated nucleoproteins.
Streptomycin sulfate	1% w/v.		Precipitation of nucleic acids.
Caprylic acid	(X/15) g where X = volume of sample.	Antibody concentration should be > 1 mg/mL.	Precipitates bulk of proteins from sera or ascites, leaving immunoglobulins in solution.

Details taken from: Scopes R. K., *Protein Purification, Principles and Practice*, Springer, (1994); J. C. Janson and L. Rydén, *Protein Purification, Principles, High Resolution Methods and Applications*, second ed. Wiley Inc, (1998). Personal communications.

## Ammonium sulfate precipitation

-  Some proteins can be damaged by ammonium sulfate. Take care when adding crystalline ammonium sulfate; high local concentrations can cause contamination of the precipitate with unwanted proteins.
-  For routine, reproducible purification, precipitation with ammonium sulfate should be avoided in favor of chromatography.
-  In general, precipitation is rarely effective for protein concentrations below 1 mg/mL.

Solutions needed for precipitation:

Saturated ammonium sulfate solution (add 100 g ammonium sulfate to 100 mL distilled water, stir to dissolve).

1 M Tris-HCl, pH 8.0.

Buffer for first purification step.

1. Filter (0.45 µm) or centrifuge the sample (10 000 × g at 4°C).
2. Add 1 part 1 M Tris-HCl, pH 8.0 to 10 parts sample volume to maintain pH.
3. Stir gently. Add ammonium sulfate solution, drop by drop. Add up to 50% saturation<sup>1</sup>. Stir for 1 h.
4. Centrifuge 20 min at 10 000 × g.
5. Remove supernatant. Wash the pellet twice by resuspension in an equal volume of ammonium sulfate solution of the same concentration (i.e., a solution that will not redissolve the precipitated protein or cause further precipitation). Centrifuge again.
6. Dissolve pellet in a small volume of the buffer to be used for the next step.
7. Ammonium sulfate is removed during clarification/buffer exchange steps with Sephadex G-25, using desalting columns (see *Buffer exchange and desalting* later in this appendix).

<sup>1</sup> The percent saturation can be adjusted either to precipitate a target molecule or to precipitate contaminants.

The quantity of ammonium sulfate required to reach a given degree of saturation varies according to temperature. Table A1.4 shows the quantities required at 20°C.

**Table A1.4.** Quantities of ammonium sulfate required to reach given degrees of saturation at 20°C

Starting percent saturation	Final percent saturation to be obtained																
	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95	100
0	113	144	176	208	242	277	314	351	390	430	472	516	561	608	657	708	761
5	85	115	146	179	212	246	282	319	358	397	439	481	526	572	621	671	723
10	57	86	117	149	182	216	251	287	325	364	405	447	491	537	584	634	685
15	28	58	88	119	151	185	219	255	293	331	371	413	456	501	548	596	647
20	0	29	59	89	121	154	188	223	260	298	337	378	421	465	511	559	609
25	0	29	60	91	123	157	191	228	265	304	344	386	429	475	522	571	
30	0	30	61	92	125	160	195	232	270	309	351	393	438	485	533		
35	0	30	62	94	128	163	199	236	275	316	358	402	447	495			
40	0	31	63	96	130	166	202	241	281	322	365	410	457				
45	0	31	64	98	132	169	206	245	286	329	373	419					
50	0	32	65	99	135	172	210	250	292	335	381						
55	0	33	66	101	138	175	215	256	298	343							
60	0	33	67	103	140	179	219	261	305								
65	0	34	69	105	143	183	224	267									
70	0	34	70	107	146	186	228										
75	0	35	72	110	149	190											
80	0	36	73	112	152												
85	0	37	75	114													
90	0	37	76														
95	0	38															

## Resolubilization of protein precipitates

Many proteins are easily resolubilized in a small amount of the buffer to be used in the next chromatographic step. However, a denaturing agent may be required for less soluble proteins. Specific conditions will depend upon the specific protein. These agents must always be removed to allow complete refolding of the protein and to maximize recovery of mass and activity. A chromatographic step often removes a denaturant during purification. Table A1.5 gives examples of common denaturing agents.

**Table A1.5.** Denaturing agents used for resolubilization of relatively insoluble proteins

Denaturing agent	Typical conditions for use (molar, M)	Removal/comment
Urea	2 to 8	Remove using Sephadex G-25
Guanidine hydrochloride	3 to 6	Remove using Sephadex G-25

Details taken from: Scopes R. K., *Protein Purification, Principles and Practice*, Springer, (1994), J. C. Janson and L. Rydén, *Protein Purification, Principles, High Resolution Methods and Applications*, second ed. Wiley Inc, (1998) and other sources.

## Buffer exchange and desalting

Dialysis is frequently mentioned in the literature as a technique to remove salt or other small molecules and to exchange the buffer composition of a sample. However, dialysis is generally a very slow technique, requiring large volumes of buffer. There is also a risk of losing material during handling or as a result of proteolytic breakdown or nonspecific binding to the dialysis membranes. A simpler and much faster technique is to use a desalting column, packed with Sephadex G-25, to perform a group separation between high and low molecular weight substances. Proteins are separated from salts and other small molecules.

In a fast, single step, the sample is desalted, transferred into a new buffer and low molecular weight materials are removed.

Desalting columns are used not only to remove low molecular weight contaminants, such as salt, but also for buffer exchange before or after different chromatographic steps and for the rapid removal of reagents to terminate a reaction.

Sample volumes up to 30% of the total volume of the desalting column can be processed. Sample concentration does not influence the separation as long as the concentration of proteins does not exceed 70 mg/mL when using normal aqueous buffers. The sample should be fully dissolved. Centrifuge or filter to remove particulate material.

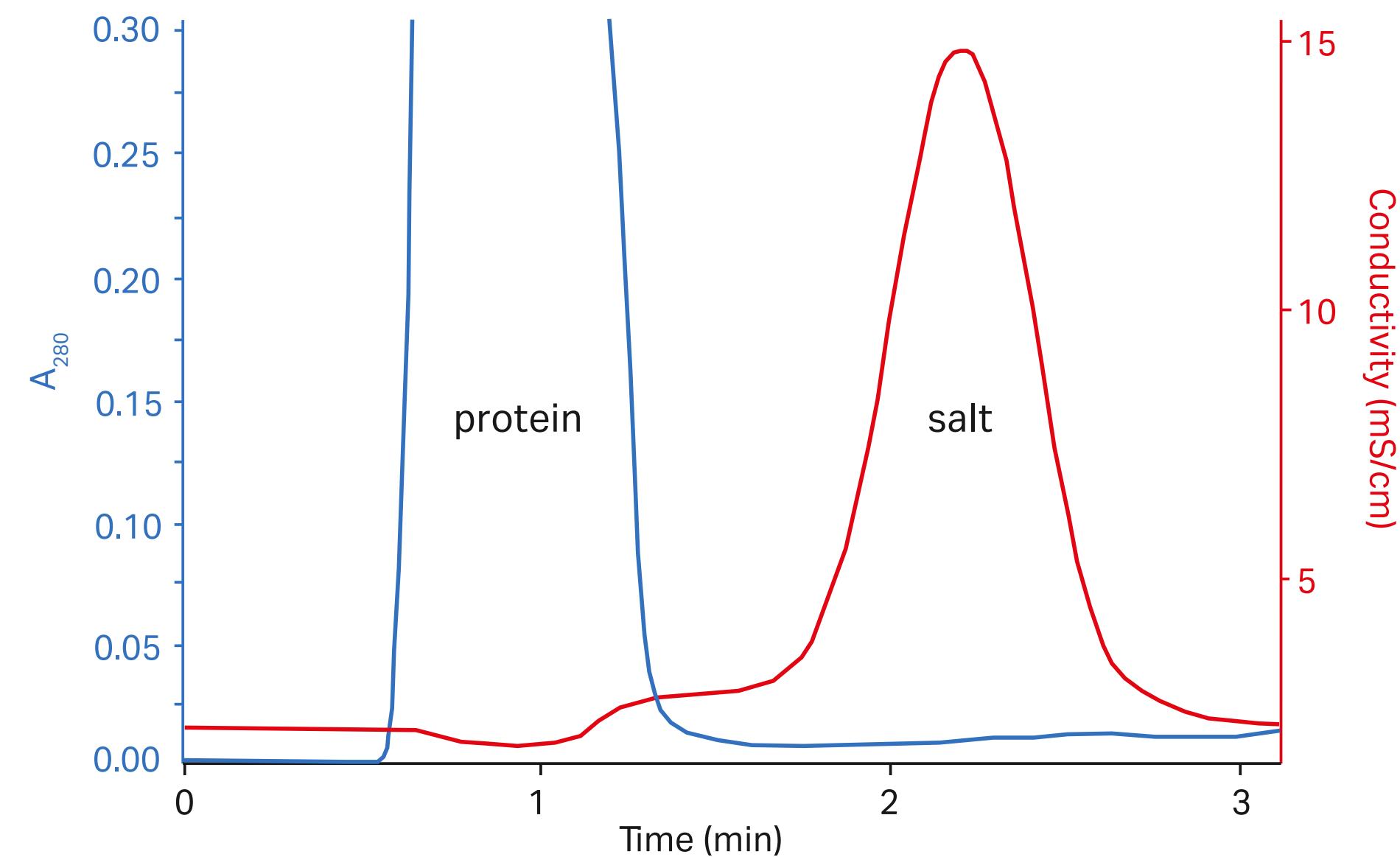
- 👉 For small sample volumes, it is possible to dilute the sample with the start buffer that is to be used for chromatographic purification, but cell debris and particulate matter must still be removed.
- 👉 Volatile buffers such as 100 mM ammonium acetate or 100 mM ammonium hydrogen carbonate can be used if it is necessary to avoid the presence of NaCl.

Figure A1.2 shows a typical buffer exchange and desalting separation. The process can be monitored by following changes in UV absorption and conductivity.

For laboratory-scale operations, Table A1.6 shows examples of prepacked, ready-to-use desalting and buffer exchange columns (see *Size Exclusion Chromatography Handbook*, 18102218, for additional formats).

**Table A1.6.** Examples of desalting and buffer exchange columns

Column	Sample volume (mL)	Sample elution volume (mL)
PD MiniTrap™ G-25	0.2 to 0.5	0.1 to 0.5
PD-10 (gravity feed column)	1.5 to 2.5	2.5 to 3.5
HiTrap Desalting, 5 mL	0.25 to 1.5	1.0 to 2.0
HiPrep 26/10 Desalting	2.5 to 15	7.5 to 20



**Fig A1.2.** Buffer exchange of mouse plasma (10 mL) on HiPrep 26/10 Desalting.

To desalt larger sample volumes:

- Connect up to five HiTrap Desalting 5 mL columns in series to increase the sample volume capacity, for example, two columns: sample volume 3 mL, five columns: sample volume 7.5 mL.
- Connect up to four HiPrep 26/10 Desalting columns in series to increase the sample volume capacity, for example two columns: sample volume 30 mL, four columns: sample volume 60 mL. Even with four columns in series, the sample can be processed in 20 to 30 min, at room temperature, in aqueous buffers.

Instructions are supplied with each column. Desalting and buffer exchange can take less than 5 min per sample with greater than 95% recovery for most proteins.

## Manual desalting with HiTrap Desalting 5 mL using a syringe

1. Fill the syringe with buffer. Remove the stop plug. To avoid introducing air into the column, connect the column "drop to drop" to the syringe (via the adapter provided).
2. Remove the snap-off end.
3. Wash the column with 25 mL buffer at 5 mL/min to remove completely the 20% ethanol (supplied as storage buffer). If air is trapped in the column, wash with degassed buffer until the air disappears. Air bubbles introduced onto the column by accident during sample application do not influence the separation.
4. Apply the sample (0.25 to 1.5 mL) using a 2 to 5 mL syringe at a flow rate between 1 to 10 mL/min. Discard the liquid eluted from the column.
5. If the sample volume is less than 1.5 mL, change to buffer and proceed with the injection until a total of 1.5 mL has been eluted. Discard the eluted liquid.
6. Elute the protein with the appropriate volume selected from Table A1.7 and collect the desalted protein.

Note: 5 mL/min corresponds to approximately 120 drops/min when using a HiTrap 5 mL column. A simple peristaltic pump or a chromatography system can also be used for the desalting procedure.

 The maximum recommended sample volume is 1.5 mL. See Table A1.7 for the effect of reducing the sample volume applied to the column.

**Table A1.7.** Recommended sample and elution volumes using a syringe

Sample load (mL)	Add buffer (mL)	Elute and collect (mL)	Yield (%)	Remaining salt (%)	Dilution factor
0.25	1.25	1.0	> 95	0.0	4.0
0.50	1.0	1.5	> 95	< 0.1	3.0
1.00	0.5	2.0	> 95	< 0.2	2.0
1.50	0	2.0	> 95	< 0.2	1.3

## Removal of lipoproteins

Lipoproteins and other lipid material can rapidly clog chromatography columns and it is advisable to remove them before beginning purification. Precipitation agents such as dextran sulfate and polyvinylpyrrolidine, described under *Fractional precipitation* earlier in this appendix, are recommended to remove high levels of lipoproteins from samples such as ascitic fluid.

 Centrifuge samples when performing precipitation to avoid the risk of nonspecific binding of the target molecule to a filter.

 Samples such as serum can be filtered through glass wool to remove remaining lipids.

## Removal of phenol red

Phenol red is frequently used at laboratory scale as a pH indicator in cell culture. Although not directly interfering with purification, phenol red binds to certain purification media and should be removed as early as possible to avoid the risk of contamination. It is known to bind to anion exchange media at pH > 7.0.

- 👉 Use a desalting column to simultaneously remove phenol red (a low molecular weight molecule) and transfer sample to the correct buffer conditions for further purification, as described under *Buffer exchange and desalting* earlier in this appendix.

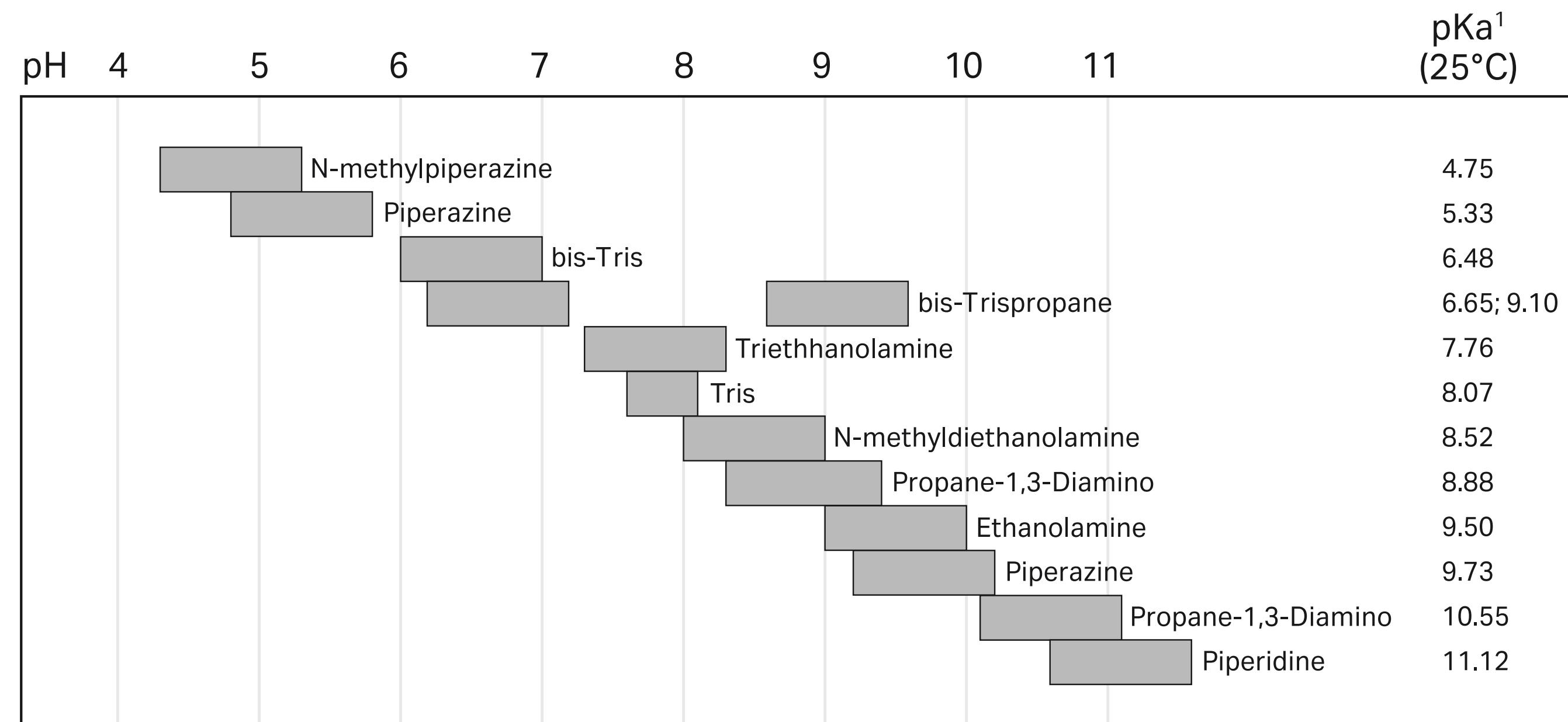
## Removal of low molecular weight contaminants

- 👉 If samples contain a high level of low molecular weight contaminants, use a desalting column before the first chromatographic purification step, as described under *Buffer exchange and desalting* earlier in this appendix.

## Appendix 2

### Nonvolatile and volatile buffer systems

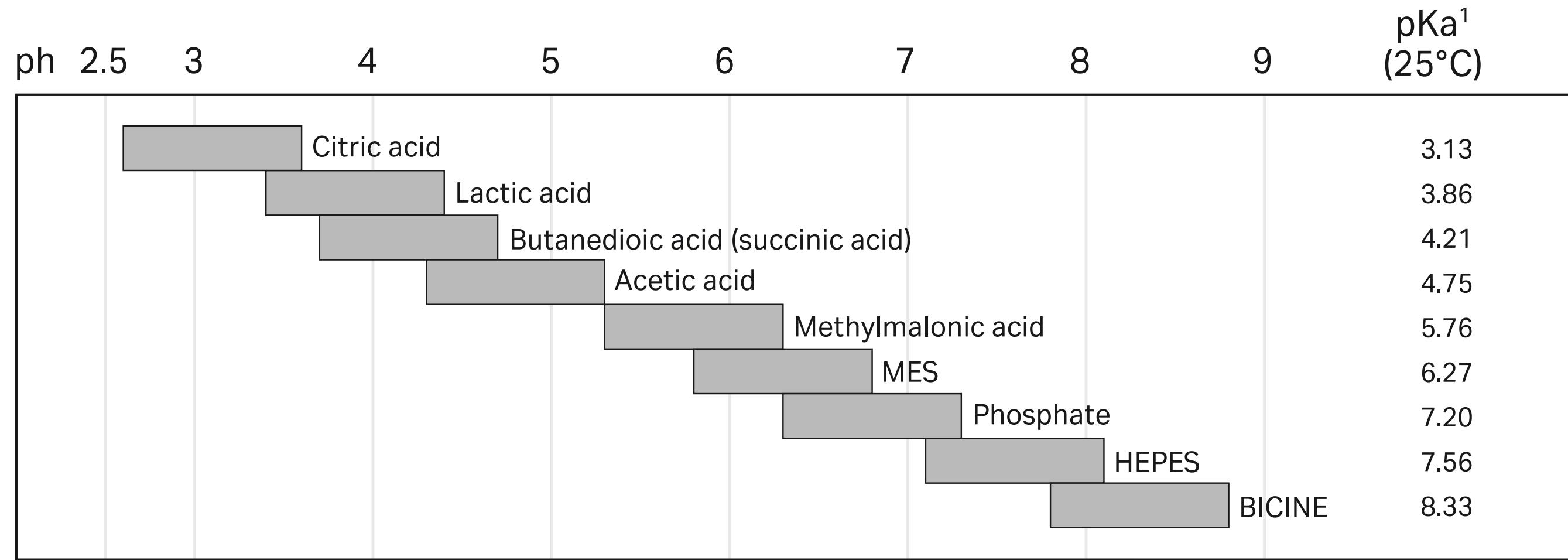
#### Nonvolatile buffers for anion exchange chromatography



pH interval	Substance	Conc. (mM)	Counterion	pKa (25°C) <sup>1</sup>	d(pKa)/dT (°C)
4.3 to 5.3	N-Methylpiperazine	20	Cl <sup>-</sup>	4.75	-0.015
4.8 to 5.8	Piperazine	20	Cl <sup>-</sup> or HCOO <sup>-</sup>	5.33	-0.015
5.5 to 6.5	L-Histidine	20	Cl <sup>-</sup>	6.04	
6.0 to 7.0	bis-Tris	20	Cl <sup>-</sup>	6.48	-0.017
6.2 to 7.2; 8.6 to 9.6	bis-Tris propane	20	Cl <sup>-</sup>	6.65; 9.10	
7.3 to 8.3	Triethanolamine	20	Cl <sup>-</sup> or CH <sub>3</sub> COO <sup>-</sup>	7.76	-0.020
7.6 to 8.6	Tris	20	Cl <sup>-</sup>	8.07	-0.028
8.0 to 9.0	N-Methyldiethanolamine	20	SO <sub>4</sub> <sup>2-</sup>	8.52	-0.028
8.0 to 9.0	N-Methyldiethanolamine	50	Cl <sup>-</sup> or CH <sub>3</sub> COO <sup>-</sup>	8.52	-0.028
8.4 to 9.4	Diethanolamine	20 at pH 8.4 50 at pH 8.8	Cl <sup>-</sup>	8.88	-0.025
8.4 to 9.4	Propane 1,3-Diamino	20	Cl <sup>-</sup>	8.88	-0.031
9.0 to 10.0	Ethanolamine	20	Cl <sup>-</sup>	9.50	-0.029
9.2 to 10.2	Piperazine	20	Cl <sup>-</sup>	9.73	-0.026
10.0 to 11.0	Propane 1,3-Diamino	20	Cl <sup>-</sup>	10.55	-0.026
10.6 to 11.6	Piperidine	20	Cl <sup>-</sup>	11.12	-0.031

<sup>1</sup> Ref: *Handbook of chemistry and physics, 83rd edition, CRC, 2002 to 2003.*

## Nonvolatile buffers for cation exchange chromatography



pH interval	Substance	Conc. (mM)	Counterion	pKa (25°C) <sup>1</sup>	d(pKa)/dT (°C)
1.4 to 2.4	Maleic acid	20	Na <sup>+</sup>	1.92	
2.6 to 3.6	Methylmalonic acid	20	Na <sup>+</sup> or Li <sup>+</sup>	3.07	
2.6 to 3.6	Citric acid	20	Na <sup>+</sup>	3.13	-0.0024
3.3 to 4.3	Lactic acid	50	Na <sup>+</sup>	3.86	
3.3 to 4.3	Formic acid	50	Na <sup>+</sup> or Li <sup>+</sup>	3.75	+0.0002
3.7 to 4.7; 5.1 to 6.1	Succinic acid	50	Na <sup>+</sup>	4.21; 5.64	-0.0018
4.3 to 5.3	Acetic acid	50	Na <sup>+</sup> or Li <sup>+</sup>	4.75	+0.0002
5.2 to 6.2	Methylmalonic acid	50	Na <sup>+</sup> or Li <sup>+</sup>	5.76	
5.6 to 6.6	MES	50	Na <sup>+</sup> or Li <sup>+</sup>	6.27	-0.0110
6.7 to 7.7	Phosphate	50	Na <sup>+</sup>	7.20	-0.0028
7.0 to 8.0	HEPES	50	Na <sup>+</sup> or Li <sup>+</sup>	7.56	-0.0140
7.8 to 8.8	BICINE	50	Na <sup>+</sup>	8.33	-0.0180

<sup>1</sup> Ref: *Handbook of chemistry and physics, 83<sup>rd</sup> edition, CRC, 2002 to 2003.*

## Volatile buffer systems

pH range	Buffer system	Counterion	pKa-values for buffering ions <sup>1</sup>
3.3 to 4.3	Formic acid	H <sup>+</sup>	3.75
3.3 to 4.3; 4.8 to 5.8	Pyridine/formic acid	HCOO <sup>-</sup>	3.75; 5.25
3.3 to 4.3; 9.3 to 10.3	Trimethylamine/formic acid	HCOO <sup>-</sup>	4.75; 9.81
4.3 to 5.8	Pyridine/acetic acid	CH <sub>3</sub> COO <sup>-</sup>	4.75; 5.25
4.3 to 5.3; 9.3 to 10.3	Trimethylamine/acetic acid	CH <sub>3</sub> COO <sup>-</sup>	4.75; 9.81
3.3 to 4.3; 8.8 to 9.8	Ammonia/formic acid	HCOO <sup>-</sup>	3.75; 9.25
4.3 to 5.3; 8.8 to 9.8	Ammonia/acetic acid	CH <sub>3</sub> COO <sup>-</sup>	4.75; 9.25
5.9 to 6.9; 9.3 to 10.3	Trimethylamine/carbonate	CO <sub>3</sub> <sup>2-</sup>	6.35; 9.81
5.9 to 6.9; 8.8 to 9.8	Ammonium bicarbonate	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	6.35; 9.25
5.9 to 6.9; 8.8 to 9.8	Ammonium carbonate/ammonia	CO <sub>3</sub> <sup>2-</sup>	6.35; 9.25
5.9 to 6.9; 8.8 to 9.8	Ammonium carbonate	CO <sub>3</sub> <sup>2-</sup>	6.35; 9.25
4.3 to 5.3; 7.2 to 8.2	N-Ethylmorpholine/acetate	HCOO <sup>-</sup>	4.75; 7.72

<sup>1</sup> Ref: *Handbook of chemistry and physics, 83<sup>rd</sup> edition, CRC, 2002 to 2003.*

## Appendix 3

### Column packing and preparation

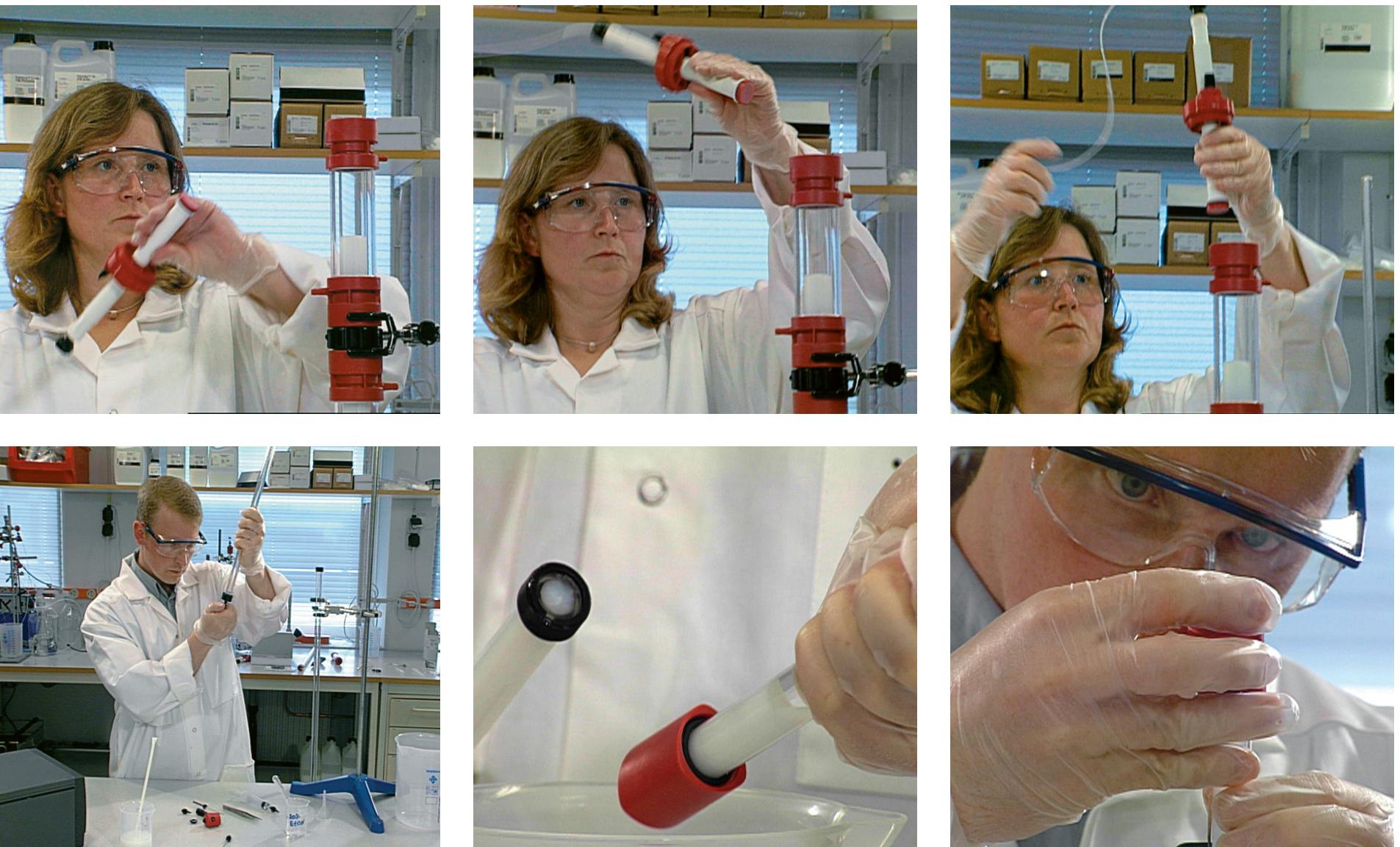
Prepacked columns from Cytiva will ensure reproducible results and the highest performance.

- ☞ Use small prepacked columns for media scouting and method optimization, to increase efficiency in method development, for example, HiTrap IEX Selection Kit.

Efficient column packing is essential for IEX separation, especially when using gradient elution. A poorly packed column gives rise to poor and uneven flow, band broadening, and loss of resolution. If column packing is required, the following guidelines will apply at all scales of operation:

- With a high binding capacity medium, use short, wide columns (typically 5 to 15 cm bed height) for rapid purification, even at low flow velocity
- The amount of IEX medium required will depend on the binding capacity of the medium and the amount of sample. Binding capacities for each medium are given in this handbook and supplied with the product instructions. Estimate the amount of medium required to bind the sample of interest and use five times this amount to pack the column. The amount of medium required can be reduced if resolution is satisfactory
- Once separation parameters have been determined, scale up a purification by increasing the diameter of the column to increase column volume. Avoid increasing the length of the column, if possible, as this will alter separation conditions

IEX media can be packed in either Tricorn, XK, or HiScale columns available from Cytiva (Fig A3.1).



**Fig A3.1.** Column packing in progress.

1. Equilibrate all materials to the temperature at which the separation will be performed.
2. Eliminate air by flushing column end pieces with the recommended buffer. Ensure no air is trapped under the column net. Close column outlet leaving 1 to 2 cm of buffer in the column.
3. Gently resuspend the medium.

Note that IEX media from Cytiva are supplied ready to use. Decanting of fines that could clog the column is unnecessary.

 Avoid using magnetic stirrers since they can damage the matrix.

4. Estimate the amount of slurry (resuspended medium) required on the basis of the recommendations supplied.
5. Pour the required volume of slurry into the column. Pouring down a glass rod held against the wall of the column will minimize the introduction of air bubbles.
6. Immediately fill the column with buffer.
7. Mount the column top piece and connect to a pump.
8. Open the column outlet and set the pump to the desired flow rate.

 When slurry volume is greater than the total volume of the column, connect a second glass column to act as a reservoir (see *Ordering information* for details). This ensures that the slurry has a constant diameter during packing, minimizing turbulence and improving column packing conditions.

 If the recommended flow rate cannot be obtained, use the maximum flow rate the pump can deliver.

9. Maintain the packing flow rate for at least 3 CV after a constant bed height is obtained. Mark the bed height on the column.

 Do not exceed 75% of the packing flow rate during any purification.

10. Stop the pump and close the column outlet. Remove the top piece and carefully fill the rest of the column with buffer to form an upward meniscus at the top.
11. Insert the adapter into the column at an angle, ensuring that no air is trapped under the net.
12. Slide the adapter slowly down the column (the outlet of the adaptor should be open) until the mark is reached. Lock the adapter in position.
13. Connect the column to the pump and begin equilibration. Reposition the adapter if necessary.

 The medium must be thoroughly washed to remove the storage solution, usually 20% ethanol. Residual ethanol can interfere with subsequent procedures.

 Many media equilibrated with sterile phosphate-buffered saline containing an antimicrobial agent may be stored at 4°C for up to 1 mo, but always follow the specific storage instructions supplied with the product.

## Column selection

Tricorn, XK, and HiScale columns are fully compatible with the high flow rates achievable with modern media and a broad range of column dimensions are available. Columns most suitable for packing IEX media are listed under the column packing section for each IEX medium (Chapter 3). In most cases the capacity of the IEX medium and the amount of sample to be purified will determine the column size required.

## Column packing and efficiency

Column efficiency is expressed as the number of theoretical plates per meter chromatography bed ( $N$ ) or as  $H$  (height equivalent to a theoretical plate, HETP), which is the bed length ( $L$ ) divided by the plate number. Column efficiency is related to the band broadening that can occur on a column and can be calculated from the expression:

$$N = 5.54 \times \left( \frac{V_R}{w_h} \right)^2$$

$V_R$  = volume eluted from the start of sample application to the peak maximum

$w_h$  = peak width measured as the width of the recorded peak at half of the peak height

$H$  is calculated from the expression:

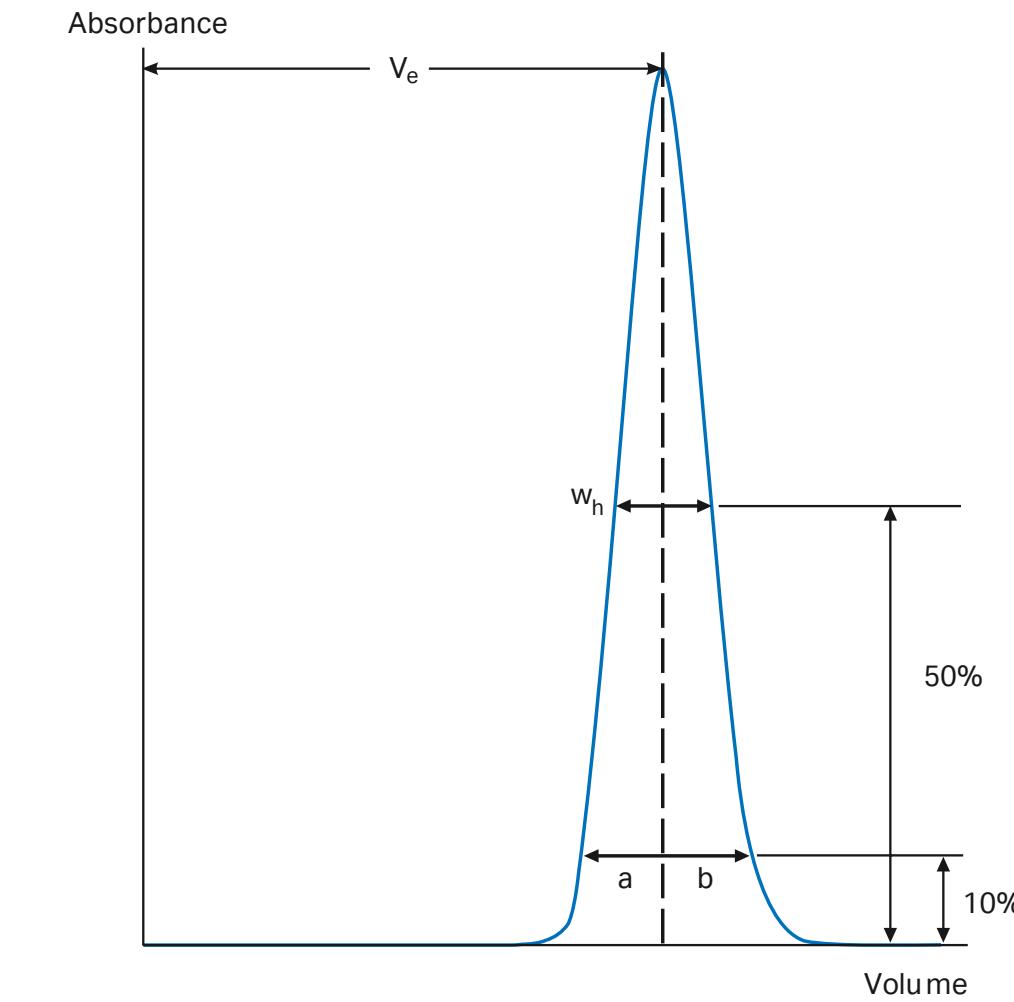
$$H = \frac{L}{N}$$

$L$  = height of packed bed.

 Measurements of  $V_R$  and  $w_h$  can be made in distance (mm) or volume (mL) but both parameters must be expressed in the same unit.

Column performance should be checked at regular intervals by injecting acetone to determine column efficiency ( $N$ ) and peak symmetry (asymmetry factor,  $A_s$ ). Since the observed value for  $N$  depends on experimental factors such as flow rate and sample loading, comparisons must be made under identical conditions. In IEX, efficiency is measured under isocratic conditions by injecting acetone (which does not interact with the medium) and measuring the eluted peak as shown in Figure A3.2.

As a general rule, a good  $H$  value is about two to three times the average particle diameter of the medium being packed. For a 90 µm particle, this means an  $H$  value of 0.018 to 0.027 cm.



**Fig A3.2.** Measurements taken to calculate column efficiency.

The asymmetry factor ( $A_s$ ) is expressed as:

$$A_s = \frac{b}{a}$$

where

$a$  = 1st half peak width at 10% of peak height

$b$  = 2nd half peak width at 10% of peak height

$A_s$  should be as close as possible to 1.0. A reasonable  $A_s$  value for a short column as used in IEX is 0.80 to 1.80.

 An extensive leading edge is usually a sign that the medium is packed too tightly and extensive tailing is usually a sign that the medium is packed too loosely.

 Run at least two column volumes of buffer through a newly packed column to ensure that the medium is equilibrated with start buffer. Use pH monitoring to check the pH of the eluent.

## Appendix 4

### Selection of purification equipment

Simple IEX, such as elution by a step-gradient, can be performed using a syringe or peristaltic pump with prepacked HiTrap columns. A chromatography system is required when reproducible results are important and when manual purification becomes too time-consuming and inefficient. This can be the case when large sample volumes are handled, or when there are many different samples to be purified. The progress of the purification can be monitored automatically and high-resolution separations with accurately controlled linear-gradient elution can be performed.

Table A4.1 lists the standard ÄKTA system configurations for currently available systems, see also *ÄKTA Laboratory-scale Systems: Instrument Management Handbook*, 29010831. Table 4.2 on the next page provides a summary of prepacked IEX columns for use with ÄKTA systems.

**Table A4.1.** Ways of working with standard ÄKTA chromatography systems

	ÄKTA start	ÄKTAprime plus	ÄKTAxpress	ÄKTA pure	ÄKTA avant
<b>Way of working</b>					
Simple, one-step desalting, buffer exchange	•	•	•	•	•
Automated and reproducible protein purification using all common techniques including support for gradient elution	•	•	•	•	•
Software compatible with regulatory requirements, e.g., good laboratory practice (GLP)			•	•	•
Method development and optimization using design of experiments (DoE)	○	•			•
Automatic buffer preparation including pH scouting		•	○	○	•
Automatic chromatography medium or column scouting	○	•	○	○	•
Automatic, multistep purification	○	•	○	○	○
Scale-up, process development	○	○	○	○	•
Flow rate (mL/min)	0.5 to 5.0	0.1 to 50.0	0.1 to 65.0	0.001 to 25.0 (ÄKTA pure 25)/ 0.01 to 150 (ÄKTA pure 150)	0.001 to 25/0.01 to 150
Max. operating pressure (MPa)	0.5	1	3	20/5	20/5
Software <sup>1</sup> for system control and data handling	UNICORN™ start	PrimeView™ <sup>2</sup>	UNICORN 5	UNICORN 6 or later	UNICORN 6 or later

<sup>1</sup> A specific software version might be needed for the chosen system. See the web page for each respective system at [www.cytiva.com/AKTA](http://www.cytiva.com/AKTA).

<sup>2</sup> With PrimeView, you can monitor results and evaluate data but not create methods nor control the system.

• = included

○ = optional

**Table A4.2.** Summary of prepacked columns for IEX using ÄKTA systems

Chromatography technique	Base matrix	HiTrap	HiScreen	HiPrep	RESOURCE	Tricorn (GL/PE)	Precision Columns (PC) <sup>7</sup>
		Easy to use with a syringe, peristaltic pump, or chromatography system	Optimized for method and process development	Convenient scale-up Preparative size exclusion chromatography	Fast with good resolution	High quality and high resolution	Micro-purification and analysis
Ion exchange	Sepharose HP, Sephadex FF	✓	✓	✓			
	Capto, Capto ImpRes	✓	✓				
	Capto ImpAct	✓	✓				
	MonoBeads					✓	✓
	MiniBeads					✓	✓
	SOURCE				✓	✓	
System compatibility	ÄKTA pure ÄKTA start ÄKTAXpress ÄKTAprime plus ÄKTApurifier <sup>2</sup> ÄKTAexplorer <sup>3</sup> ÄKTA <sub>FPLC</sub> <sup>4</sup>	ÄKTA avant ÄKTA pure 150 ÄKTApurifier 100 <sup>2</sup> ÄKTAexplorer 100 <sup>3</sup>	ÄKTA pure ÄKTA start <sup>5</sup> ÄKTA avant ÄKTAXpress ÄKTAprime plus ÄKTApurifier <sup>2</sup> ÄKTAexplorer <sup>3</sup> ÄKTA <sub>FPLC</sub> <sup>4</sup>	ÄKTA pure ÄKTA start <sup>5</sup> ÄKTA avant ÄKTAXpress ÄKTAexplorer 10 <sup>3</sup> ÄKTA <sub>FPLC</sub> <sup>4</sup>	ÄKTA pure ÄKTAmicro <sup>6</sup> ÄKTApurifier 10 <sup>2</sup> ÄKTAexplorer 10 <sup>3</sup> ÄKTA <sub>FPLC</sub> <sup>4</sup>	ÄKTA pure 25 ÄKTAXpress ÄKTAmicro <sup>6</sup> ÄKTApurifier 10 <sup>2</sup> ÄKTAexplorer 10 <sup>3</sup> ÄKTA <sub>FPLC</sub> <sup>4</sup>	ÄKTAmicro <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sample volume.

<sup>2</sup> ÄKTApurifier has been discontinued and replaced by ÄKTA pure.

<sup>3</sup> ÄKTAexplorer has been discontinued and replaced by ÄKTA avant.

<sup>4</sup> ÄKTA<sub>FPLC</sub> has been discontinued and replaced by ÄKTA pure 25.

<sup>5</sup> HiPrep 26/60 can be used but is not optimal.

<sup>6</sup> ÄKTAmicro has been discontinued and replaced by ÄKTA pure 25 with microgram-scale purification flow path.

<sup>7</sup> Precision Columns (PC) provide excellent results when used in combination with HPLC systems.

## Appendix 5

### Converting from flow velocity to volumetric flow rates

It is convenient when comparing results for columns of different sizes to express flow as flow velocity (cm/h). However, flow is usually measured in volumetric flow rate (mL/min). To convert between flow velocity and volumetric flow rate use one of the formulae below.

#### From flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rate (mL/min)

$$\text{Volumetric flow rate (mL/min)} = \frac{\text{Flow velocity (cm/h)}}{60} \times \text{column cross sectional area (cm}^2\text{)}$$
$$= \frac{Y}{60} \times \frac{\pi \times d^2}{4}$$

where

Y = flow velocity in cm/h

d = column inner diameter in cm

*Example:*

What is the volumetric flow rate in an XK 16/70 column (i.d. 1.6 cm) when the flow velocity is 150 cm/h?

Y = flow velocity = 150 cm/h

d = inner diameter of the column = 1.6 cm

$$\text{Volumetric flow rate} = \frac{150 \times \pi \times 1.6 \times 1.6}{60 \times 4} \text{ mL/min}$$
$$= 5.03 \text{ mL/min}$$

#### From volumetric flow rate (mL/min) to flow velocity (cm/h)

$$\text{Flow velocity (cm/h)} = \frac{\text{Volumetric flow rate (mL/min)} \times 60}{\text{column cross sectional area (cm}^2\text{)}}$$
$$= Z \times 60 \times \frac{4}{\pi \times d^2}$$

where

Z = volumetric flow rate in mL/min

d = column inner diameter in cm

*Example:*

What is the linear flow in a Tricorn 5/50 column (i.d. 0.5 cm) when the volumetric flow rate is 1 mL/min?

Z = volumetric flow rate = 1 mL/min

d = column inner diameter = 0.5 cm

$$\text{Flow velocity} = 1 \times 60 \times \frac{4}{\pi \times 0.5 \times 0.5} \text{ cm/h}$$

#### From volumetric flow rate (mL/min) to using a syringe

1 mL/min = approximately 30 drops/min on a HiTrap 1 mL column

5 mL/min = approximately 120 drops/min on a HiTrap 5 mL column

## Appendix 6

### Conversion data: proteins, column pressures

#### Proteins

Mass (g/mol)	1 µg	1 nmol	Protein	A <sub>280</sub> for 1 mg/mL
10 000	100 pmol; $6 \times 10^{13}$ molecules	10 µg	IgG	1.35
50 000	20 pmol; $1.2 \times 10^{13}$ molecules	50 µg	IgM	1.20
100 000	10 pmol; $6.0 \times 10^{12}$ molecules	100 µg	IgA	1.30
150 000	6.7 pmol; $4.0 \times 10^{12}$ molecules	150 µg	Protein A	0.17
			Avidin	1.50
			Streptavidin	3.40
			Bovine Serum Albumin	0.70
1 kb of DNA	= 333 amino acids of coding capacity = 37 000 g/mol			
270 bp DNA	= 10 000 g/mol			
1.35 kb DNA	= 50 000 g/mol			
2.70 kb DNA	= 100 000 g/mol			

Average molecular weight of an amino acid = 120 g/mol.

#### Column pressures

The maximum pressure drop over the packed bed refers to the pressure above which the column contents might begin to compress.

Pressure units may be expressed in megaPascal (MPa), bar, or pounds per square inch (psi) and can be converted as follows: 1 MPa = 10 bar = 145 psi

## Appendix 7

### Table of amino acids

Amino acid	Three-letter code	Single-letter code	Structure	Amino acid	Three-letter code	Single-letter code	Structure	Middle unit residue (-H <sub>2</sub> O)		Charge at pH 6.0 to 7.0	Hydrophobic (nonpolar)	Uncharged (polar)	Hydrophilic (polar)
								Formula	M <sub>r</sub>				
Alanine	Ala	A		Methionine	Met	M		C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>	89.1	C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>5</sub> NO	71.1	Neutral	•
Arginine	Arg	R		Phenylalanine	Phe	F		C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>14</sub> N <sub>4</sub> O <sub>2</sub>	174.2	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>12</sub> N <sub>4</sub> O	156.2	Basic (+ve)	•
Asparagine	Asn	N		Proline	Pro	P		C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>8</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub>	132.1	C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>6</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub>	114.1	Neutral	•
Aspartic acid	Asp	D		Serine	Ser	S		C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>4</sub>	133.1	C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>5</sub> NO <sub>3</sub>	115.1	Acidic (-ve)	•
Cysteine	Cys	C		Threonine	Thr	T		C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>2</sub> S	121.2	C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>5</sub> NOS	103.2	Neutral	•
Glutamic acid	Glu	E		Tryptophan	Trp	W		C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>9</sub> NO <sub>4</sub>	147.1	C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>3</sub>	129.1	Acidic (-ve)	•
Glutamine	Gln	Q		Tyrosine	Tyr	Y		C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>10</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub>	146.1	C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>8</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub>	128.1	Neutral	•
Glycine	Gly	G		Valine	Val	V		C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>	75.1	C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>3</sub> NO	57.1	Neutral	•
Histidine	His	H						C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>9</sub> N <sub>3</sub> O <sub>2</sub>	155.2	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>7</sub> N <sub>3</sub> O	137.2	Basic (+ve)	•
Isoleucine	Ile	I						C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>13</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>	131.2	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO	113.2	Neutral	•
Leucine	Leu	L						C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>13</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>	131.2	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO	113.2	Neutral	•
Lysine	Lys	K						C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>14</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub>	146.2	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>12</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O	128.2	Basic (+ve)	•
								C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO <sub>2</sub> S	149.2	C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>9</sub> NOS	131.2	Neutral	•
								C <sub>9</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>	165.2	C <sub>9</sub> H <sub>9</sub> NO	147.2	Neutral	•
								C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>9</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>	115.1	C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO	97.1	Neutral	•
								C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>3</sub>	105.1	C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>5</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>	87.1	Neutral	•
								C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> NO <sub>3</sub>	119.1	C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>	101.1	Neutral	•
								C <sub>11</sub> H <sub>12</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub>	204.2	C <sub>11</sub> H <sub>10</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O	186.2	Neutral	•
								C <sub>9</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO <sub>3</sub>	181.2	C <sub>9</sub> H <sub>9</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>	163.2	Neutral	•
								C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>	117.1	C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>9</sub> NO	99.1	Neutral	•

## Appendix 8

### Analytical assays during purification

Analytical assays are essential to follow the progress of purification. They are used to assess the effectiveness of each step in terms of yield, biological activity, and recovery as well as to help during optimization of experimental conditions. The importance of a reliable assay for the target molecule cannot be overemphasized.

 When testing chromatographic fractions, ensure that the buffers used for purification do not interfere with the assay.

#### Total protein determination

Lowry or Bradford assays are used most frequently to determine the total protein content. The Bradford assay is particularly suited to samples where there is a high lipid content that can interfere with the Lowry assay.

#### Purity determination

Purity is most often estimated by SDS-PAGE. Alternatively, isoelectric focusing, capillary electrophoresis, reversed phase chromatography, or mass spectrometry may be used.

#### SDS-PAGE analysis

The general steps involved in SDS-PAGE analysis are summarized below.

1. Prepare samples by mixing with equal volume of 2 × SDS loading buffer
2. Vortex briefly and heat for 5 min at 90°C to 100°C.
3. Load the samples and, optionally, a MW marker onto a SDS-polyacrylamide gel.
4. Run the gel.
5. Stain the gel with Coomassie Blue (Coomassie Blue Tablets, PhastGel Blue R-350) or silver (PlusOne Silver Staining Kit, Protein).

 The percentage of acrylamide in the SDS gel should be selected according to the expected molecular weight of the protein of interest (see Table A8.1).

**Table A8.1.** Percentage of acrylamide used in SDS gels for proteins of different molecular weights

Acrylamide in resolving gel (%)	Mol. weight range
Homogeneous:	5
	7.5
	10
	12.5
	15
Gradient:	36 000 to 200 000
	24 000 to 200 000
	14 000 to 200 000
	14 000 to 100 000
10 to 20	14 000 to 60 000 <sup>1</sup>
	14 000 to 200 000
	10 000 to 200 000
5 to 15	10 000 to 150 000

<sup>1</sup> The larger proteins fail to move significantly into the gel.

The gel is usually stained after electrophoresis in order to make the protein bands visible by, for example, Coomassie Blue or silver staining. A more recent way of making protein visible is by prelabeling the proteins by fluorescent dye (Amersham™ WB Cy™5 dye reagent) before loading the sample in the gel. By doing in this way the gel image can be acquired directly after finished electrophoresis by laser scanner or CCD camera and the result is obtained much faster. This workflow is outlined below.

## Protein prelabeling with CyDye™

1. Prepare samples by prelabeling with Amersham WB Cy5 dye reagent.
2. Vortex briefly and heat for 5 min at 90°C to 100°C.
3. Load the samples and, optionally, a MW marker onto a SDS-polyacrylamide gel.
4. Run the gel and proceed directly to image capture.

 For information and advice on electrophoresis techniques, refer to the handbook *2-D Electrophoresis, Principles and Methods*, 80642960. For information on the Amersham WB system and accessories including Amersham WB Cy5 prelabeling reagents, visit [www.cytiva.com/westernblotting](http://www.cytiva.com/westernblotting).

## Functional assays

Immunospecific interactions have enabled the development of many alternative assay systems for the assessment of active concentration of target molecules.

- Western blot analysis is used to confirm protein identity and quantitate the level of target molecule

1. Separate the protein samples by SDS-PAGE.
2. Transfer the separated proteins from the gel to an appropriate membrane, depending on the choice of detection reagents. Amersham Protran™ (NC) or Amersham Hybond™ P (PVDF) membranes are recommended for chemiluminescent detection using Amersham ECL™ start, Amersham ECL, Amersham ECL Prime, or Amersham ECL Select™ Western blotting detection reagents. Amersham Protran Premium (NC) or Amersham Hybond LFP (PVDF) membranes are recommended for fluorescent detection with Amersham ECL Plex™ Western blotting detection system.
3. Develop the membrane with the appropriate specified reagents.

 Electrophoresis, protein transfer, and probing may be accomplished using a variety of equipment and reagents. The Amersham WB system is an automated system that can be used for all these steps including software evaluation. For more information, visit [www.cytiva.com/westernblotting](http://www.cytiva.com/westernblotting). For further information on the basic principles and methods used in Western blotting, refer to the *Western Blotting Handbook*, 28999897 and the instruction manuals supplied with the detection kits.

- ELISAs are most commonly used as activity assays
- Functional assays using the phenomenon of surface plasmon resonance (SPR) to detect immunospecific interactions (e.g., using Biacore™ systems) enable the determination of active concentration, epitope mapping, and studies of interaction kinetics

 The *Biacore Assay Handbook*, 29019400 gives a general overview of the different types of SPR-based applications. The handbook also provides advice on sample preparation, design, and optimization of different assays.

## Detection and assay of tagged proteins

SDS-PAGE, Western blotting, and ELISA can also be applied to the detection and assay of genetically engineered molecules to which a specific tag has been attached. In some cases, an assay based on the properties associated with the tag itself can be developed, for example, the GST Detection Module for enzymatic detection and quantitation of GST-tagged proteins. Further details on the detection and quantitation of GST and (his)<sub>6</sub>-tagged proteins are available in the *Recombinant Protein Purification Handbook*, 18114275 and the *GST Gene Fusion System Handbook*, 18115758 from Cytiva.

## Appendix 9

### Storage of biological samples

 The advice given here is of a general nature and cannot be applied to every biological sample. Always consider the properties of the specific sample and its intended use before following any of these recommendations.

#### General recommendations

- Add stabilizing agents, when necessary. Stabilizing agents are often required for storage of purified proteins
- Serum, culture supernatants, and ascitic fluid should be kept frozen at -20°C or -70°C, in small aliquots
- Avoid repeated freeze/thawing or freeze drying/redissolving that can reduce biological activity
- Avoid conditions close to stability limits for example pH or salt concentrations, reducing or chelating agents
- Keep refrigerated at 4°C in a closed vessel to minimize bacterial growth and protease activity. Above 24 h at 4°C, add a preserving agent if possible (e.g., merthiolate 0.01%)

 Sodium azide can interfere with many coupling methods and some biological assays and can be a health hazard. It can be removed by using a desalting column (see Appendix 1, *Sample preparation*).

#### Specific recommendations for purified proteins

- Store as a precipitate in high concentration of ammonium sulfate, for example 4.0 M
- Freeze in 50% glycerol, especially suitable for enzymes
- Avoid the use of preserving agents if the product is to be used for a biological assay. Preserving agents should not be added if *in vivo* experiments are to be performed. Store samples in small aliquots and keep frozen
- Sterile filter to prolong storage time
- Add stabilizing agents such as glycerol (5% to 20%) or serum albumin (10 mg/mL) to help maintain biological activity. Remember that any additive will reduce the purity of the protein and might need to be removed at a later stage
- Avoid repeated freeze/thawing or freeze drying/redissolving that can reduce biological activity

 Certain proteins, including some mouse antibodies of the IgG<sub>3</sub> subclass, should not be stored at 4°C as they precipitate at this temperature. Keep at room temperature in the presence of a preserving agent.

## Appendix 10

### Column cleaning

Correct preparation of samples and buffers and application of a high salt wash (1 M NaCl) at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing back pressure, or complete blockage are all indications that the medium needs to be cleaned using more stringent procedures in order to remove contaminants.

 Reverse the direction of flow during column cleaning so that contaminants do not need to pass through the entire length of the column. The number of column volumes and time required for each cleaning step varies according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure to remove common contaminants does not restore column performance, change the top filter (when possible) before trying alternative cleaning methods. Care should be taken when changing a filter as this can affect the column packing and interfere with performance. The cleaning procedure to remove common contaminants is included with each of the media described in Chapter 3.

#### Removing precipitated proteins, lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins

##### To remove precipitated proteins

Use the recommended flow rate for cleaning of the media and column, see Chapter 3. When guanidine hydrochloride is used, the flow rate should be lowered to half of this flow rate to avoid overpressure.

1. Wash with 2 CV of 6 M guanidine hydrochloride.
2. Wash immediately with at least 5 CV of buffer at pH 7.0 to 8.0.
3. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water until the UV-baseline and eluent pH are stable.
4. Wash with at least 4 CV of start buffer or storage buffer until pH and conductivity values have reached the required values.

Alternatively,

1. Inject 1 CV of pepsin (1 mg/mL in 500 mM NaCl, 100 mM acetic acid). Leave overnight at room temperature or for 1 h at 37°C.
2. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water until the UV-baseline and the eluent pH are stable.
3. Wash with at least 4 CV of start buffer or storage buffer, until eluent pH and conductivity have reached the required values.

## To remove lipids, hydrophobically bound proteins, or lipoproteins

Organic solvents or detergents might be required to completely remove contaminants of this type.

 Before using organic solvents, wash the medium with at least 4 CV of distilled water to avoid salts precipitating on the column.

 When applying organic solvents or solutions it might be necessary to reduce the flow rate considerably to avoid overpressuring the column.

Use cleaning solutions such as up to 30% isopropanol, up to 100% methanol, up to 100% acetonitrile, up to 2 M NaOH, up to 75% acetic acid, up to 100% ethanol, ionic or nonionic detergents.

 When cleaning larger columns, allow a contact time of 1 to 2 h for any solution that is used as an initial cleaning step.

 Always check for solvent compatibility in the instructions supplied with the medium or column.

 Avoid anionic detergents with Q, DEAE, and ANX charged groups. Avoid cationic detergents with S, SP, and CM charged groups.

1. Wash with 4 CV of up to 70% ethanol or 30% isopropanol.
2. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water until the UV-baseline and eluent pH are stable.
3. Wash immediately with 3 CV of start buffer.  
Alternatively,
  1. Wash with 2 CV of detergent in a basic or acidic solution, for example, 0.1% to 0.5% nonionic detergent in 100 mM acetic acid.
  2. Rinse with 5 CV 70% ethanol to remove residual detergent.
  3. Rinse with at least 2 CV of distilled water until the UV-baseline and the eluent pH are stable.
  4. Wash with 3 CV of start buffer.

## Extended cleaning procedures

Use the recommended flow rate and cleaning procedure for the media and column, see Chapter 3. If this is not sufficient, extended cleaning procedures can be tested. When organic solvents, such as 30% isopropanol or 70% ethanol are used, the flow rate should be lowered to half of this flow rate to avoid overpressure.

## Appendix 11

### Media selection

Using prepacked small columns such as HiTrap during the early stages of development saves time, solvents and sample. HiTrap IEX Selection Kit allows quick and efficient screening for the most suitable charge group and enables development of the basic method. The following are descriptions of different screening methods for selection of media and optimal conditions.

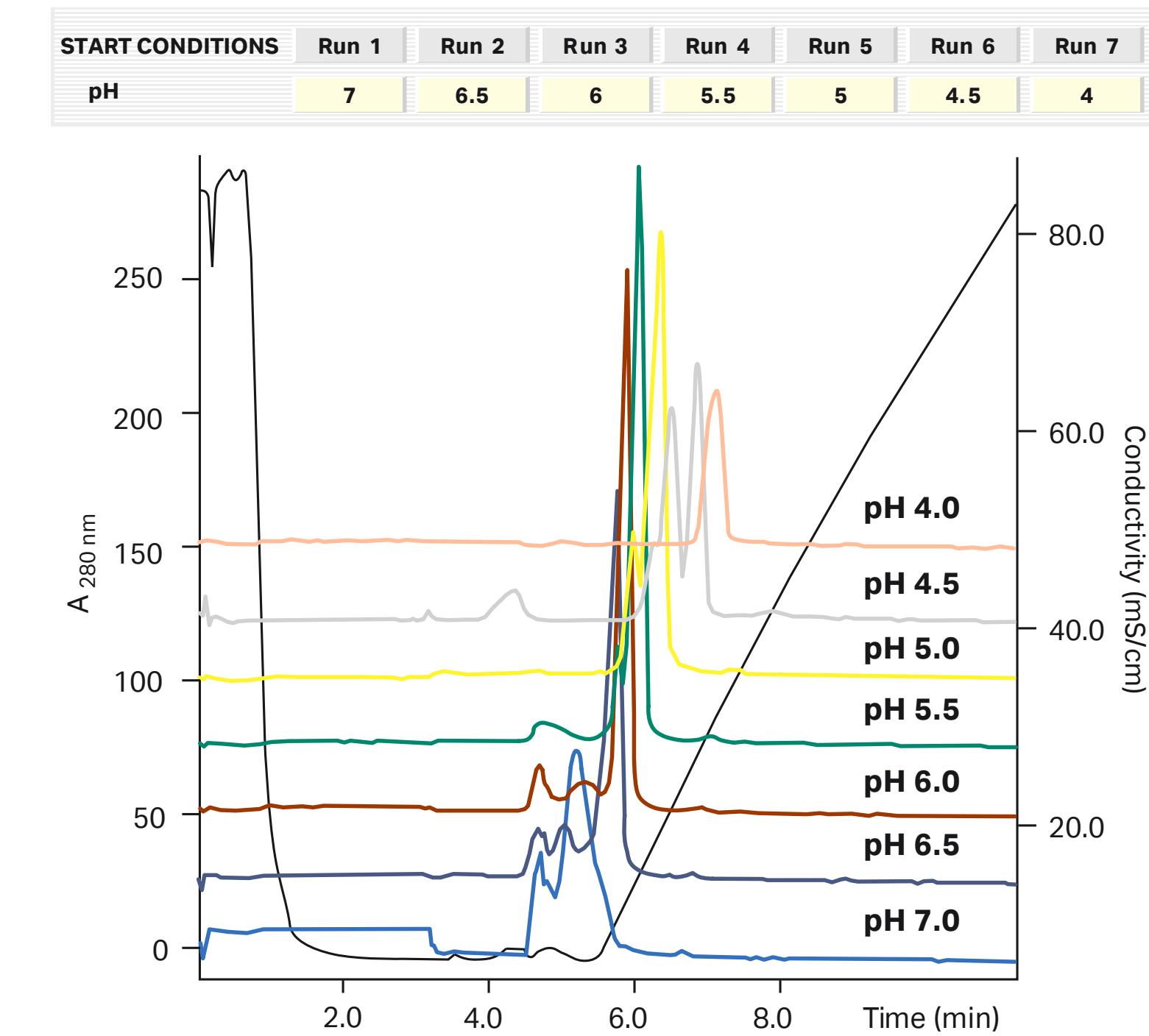
#### Selection of media for automated purification

Users of ÄKTA systems with automatic buffer preparation functionality can select from a range of buffer recipes to test different media over a range of pH values and other elution conditions. See *ÄKTA Laboratory-scale Chromatography Systems: Instrument Management Handbook*, 29010831 for details of how to vary flow rate and gradient slope in order to optimize the separation.

 Note that the condition of the sample is very important in order to achieve the most effective separations. Samples should preferably have the same conditions as the start buffer (see *Buffer exchange and desalting* in Appendix 1 for details). When working with small volumes during screening and scouting, it might be sufficient to dilute the sample in start buffer in order to lower the ionic strength and adjust the pH to a value similar to that of the start buffer.

1. Scout for optimum pH by testing a range of pH values within which the proteins of interest are known to be stable. If the pI of the target protein is known, then begin with a narrower pH range, for example, 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit away from the pI. Typical results from an automatic pH scouting run are shown in Figure A11.1.
2. If required, scout for optimum selectivity (testing strong or weak exchangers) using automatic media scouting.
3. Scout for the steepest gradient that gives acceptable resolution at the selected pH.
4. Scout for the highest flow rate that maintains resolution and minimizes separation time. Check recommended flow rates for the specific medium.
5. Scout for the maximum sample load that can be applied while maintaining satisfactory resolution. In general, loading 20% to 30% of the total binding capacity of the column gives optimal resolution with gradient elution.

 Reduce separation time and buffer consumption by transferring to a step elution when optimized separation conditions have been established. Sample loads can often be increased when using a step elution.



Column: RESOURCE S, 6 mL  
Sample: Fab fraction from HIC separation, 20 mL  
Eluents: Automatic BufferPrep with 60 mM sodium acetate, 30 mM sodium phosphate, 30 mM sodium formate 100 mM HCl and 2 M NaCl  
Gradient: 20 column volumes, to 1 M NaCl  
Flow rate: 60 mL/min  
Curves: A<sub>280nm</sub>, from top: pH 4.0; 4.5; 5.0; 5.5; 6.0; 6.5; 7.0

**Fig A11.1.** Automatic pH scouting on an ÄKTA system.

## Selection of media for manual purification

HiTrap columns are well-suited to manual media screening, method development, and method optimization since they can be used with a syringe or peristaltic pump as well as an automated chromatography system.

-  Note that the condition of the sample is very important to achieve the most effective separations. Samples should preferably have the same conditions as the start buffer (see Appendix 1, *Sample preparation* for details). When working with small volumes during screening it might be sufficient to dilute the sample in start buffer in order to lower the ionic strength and adjust the pH to a value similar to that of the start buffer.
-  Scout for optimum pH by testing a range of pH values within which the proteins of interest are known to be stable. If the pI of the target protein is known, then begin with a narrower pH range, for example, 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit away from the pI. The methods here are optimized for use with 1 mL HiTrap columns and should be adjusted if other column volumes are used.

## Screening for IEX medium and pH conditions

1. Start buffers: set up a series of buffers with pH values in the range 4.0 to 8.0 (SP, CM) or 5.0 to 9.0 (Q, DEAE, ANX) and with 0.5 to 1.0 pH unit intervals between each buffer. See Appendix 2 for recommended buffers.
2. Elution buffers: set up a second series of buffers with the same pH values, but including 1 M NaCl.
3. Equilibrate the column(s) with 5 mL start buffer at 1 mL/min. Wash with 5 mL elution buffer.
4. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 mL start buffer.
5. Adjust the sample to the pH of the start buffer and apply a known amount of the sample at 1 mL/min. Collect eluate.
6. Wash with at least 5 mL of start buffer or until no material appears in eluent. Collect eluate.
7. Elute bound material with elution buffer (3 to 5 mL is usually sufficient, but other volumes might be required dependent on the exact experimental conditions). Collect eluate.
8. Analyze all eluates (for example by an activity assay) and determine purity and the amount bound to the column.
9. Perform steps 3 to 8 for the next buffer pH.
10. Select medium and pH: the most suitable pH should allow the protein(s) of interest to bind, but should be as close to their point of release as possible.

## Screening for ionic strength conditions

1. Using the selected medium, start buffer and pH from the previous protocol, set up a series of elution buffers at the same pH, but vary the salt concentration from 0 to 500 mM with intervals of 50 to 100 mM salt between each buffer.
2. Repeat steps 3 to 8 from the previous protocol for each salt concentration.
3. Determine the maximum ionic strength which permits binding of the protein(s) of interest and the minimum ionic strength required for complete elution.

## Further optimization

1. If gradient making equipment is available, determine the steepest gradient that gives acceptable resolution at the selected pH. Begin with a gradient of 10 CV over an ionic strength range based on the maximum and minimum values determined when screening. Alternatively, begin with a gradient of 0% to 50% elution buffer that contains 1 M NaCl and a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV.
2. Determine the highest flow rate that maintains resolution and minimizes separation time. Check recommended flow rates for the specific medium.
3. Determine the maximum sample load that can be applied while maintaining satisfactory resolution. In general, loading 20% to 30% of the total binding capacity of the column gives optimal resolution with gradient elution. Sample loads can often be increased if resolution is satisfactory or when using a step elution.

## Using PD-10 columns for media selection and method development

If an assay is available to detect the target protein(s), PD-10 columns can be packed with various media and used to find the most suitable separation conditions. With basic information on the requirements for pH and ionic strength, a suitable column can be packed in order to begin optimization.

-  Note that the condition of the sample is very important in order to achieve the most effective separations. Samples should preferably have the same conditions as the start buffer (see Appendix 1, *Sample preparation* for details). When working with small volumes during screening and scouting, it might be sufficient to dilute the sample in start buffer in order to lower the ionic strength and adjust the pH to a value similar to that of the start buffer.

### pH selection

1. Set up a series of 10 × PD-10 columns for each medium to be tested and thoroughly resuspend the medium in its storage solution.
2. Pour medium slurry containing 5 mL medium into the PD-10 column, allowing the medium to settle as the column fills. Do not allow the column to dry out.
3. Equilibrate each column to a different pH by washing (5 × 5 mL) with buffer (500 mM) using buffers between pH 5.0 to 9.0 for anion exchangers or pH 4.0 to 8.0 for cation exchangers and with 0.5 pH unit intervals between columns (see Appendix 2 for buffer recommendations).
4. Equilibrate each column at a lower ionic strength: wash with 5 × 5 mL of buffer (20 to 50 mM) at the same pH.
5. Load a known constant amount of sample to each column while collecting the eluent.
6. Assay the eluent for the protein of interest. The most suitable medium and pH should allow the protein to bind (protein is absent from the eluent), but should be as close to the point of release as possible (the first pH at which the protein appears in the eluent).

### Ionic strength selection

1. Set up a series of 10 × PD-10 columns, each containing 5 mL of the chosen IEX medium.
2. Equilibrate the column by washing (5 × 5 mL) with buffer (500 mM) at the selected starting pH.
3. Equilibrate the columns at different ionic strengths, but constant pH, ranging from 10 to 300 mM NaCl by washing (5 × 5 mL). Intervals of 50 mM NaCl are sufficient.
4. Apply sample while collecting the eluent.
5. Assay the eluent to determine the maximum ionic strength which permits binding of the target protein and the minimum ionic strength required for complete elution. The highest ionic strength which permits binding and the lowest ionic strength for elution are used as start and elution buffers, respectively, during subsequent gradient elution.

# Product index

<b>A</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>
ÄKTA avant	Capto DEAE	HiScreen Capto SP ImpRes	Mini S PC 3.2/3
ÄKTAexplorer	Capto Q	HiTrap ANX FF (high sub)	Mono Q 10/100 GL
ÄKTA <sub>F</sub> PLC	Capto Q ImpRes	HiTrap Capto DEAE	Mono Q 4.6/100 PE
ÄKTAprime plus	Capto S	HiTrap Capto Q	Mono Q 5/50 GL
ÄKTApurifier	Capto S ImpAct	HiTrap Capto S ImpRes	Mono Q HR 16/10
ÄKTA pure	Capto SP ImpRes	HiTrap Capto S	Mono S 10/100 GL
ÄKTA start	CM Sepharose Fast Flow	HiTrap Capto S ImpAct	Mono S 4.6/100 PE
ÄKTAxpress	<b>D</b>	HiTrap CM FF	Mono S 5/50 GL
Amersham ECL	DEAE Sepharose Fast Flow	HiTrap DEAE FF	Mono S HR 16/10
Amersham ECL Plex	<b>F</b>	HiTrap Desalting	<b>P</b>
Amersham ECL Prime	FineLINE 100 column	HiTrap Heparin HP	PD MiniTrap G-25
Amersham ECL Select	FineLINE 800 column	HiTrap IEX Selection Kit	PD-10 Desalting column
Amersham Hybond LFP	FineLine Pilot 35 column	HiTrap Q FF	PhastGel
Amersham Hybond P	<b>H</b>	HiTrap Q HP	Homogeneous – 12.5
Amersham Protran Premium	HiPrep CM FF 16/10	HiTrap Q XL	PhastSystem
Amersham WB (Western blotting) Cy5	HiPrep DEAE FF 16/10	HiTrap SP FF	electrophoresis unit
Amersham WB system	HiPrep Q FF 16/10	HiTrap SP HP	PlusOne Coomassie Tablets,
ANX Sepharose 4 Fast Flow (high sub)	HiPrep Q XL 16/10	HiTrap SP XL	PhastGel Blue R-350
Axichrom 1000 column	HiPrep SP FF 16/10	<b>I</b>	PlusOne Silver Staining Kit,
<b>B</b>	HiPrep SP HP 16/10	INdEX 70 column	Protein
Benzamidine Sepharose 4 Fast Flow (high sub)	HiPrep SP XL 16/10	<b>L</b>	PrimeView software
PG 300 column	HiPrep 26/10 Desalting	LMW-SDS Marker Kit	Puradisc 4 Syringe Filter,
PG 450 column	HiScreen Capto DEAE	<b>M</b>	0.2 µm, PVDF
	HiScreen Capto Q	Mini Q 4.6/50 PE	Puradisc 13 Syringe Filter,
	HiScreen Capto Q ImpRes	Mini Q PC 3.2/3	0.2 µm, PVDF
	HiScreen Capto S	Mini S 4.6/50 PE	Puradisc 25 Syringe Filter,
	HiScreen Capto S ImpAct	49-50	0.2 µm, PVDF
		49-51	Puradisc 4 Syringe Filter,
			0.45 µm, PVDF
			Puradisc 13 Syringe Filter,
			0.45 µm, PVDF

Puradisc 25 Syringe Filter, 0.45 µm, PVDF 130

Puradisc FP 30 Syringe Filter, 0.2 µm, CA 130

Puradisc FP 30 Syringe Filter, 0.45 µm, CA 130

## **Q**

Q Sepharose Big Beads 95, 97, 122

Q Sepharose Fast Flow 13, 18, 23, 77-79, 83, 122-123

Q Sepharose High Performance 23, 70-71, 76, 124

Q Sepharose XL 23, 87-88, 90, 93, 122-123

## **R**

RESOURCE Q 23, 61, 63-66

RESOURCE S 63-65, 126, 154

## **S**

Sephadex G-25 134-136

SOURCE 15Q 57, 62-63, 66, 122, 126

SOURCE 15Q 4.6/100 PE 57, 63, 66

SOURCE 15S 62-64, 122, 126

SOURCE 15S 4.6/100 PE 63

SOURCE 30Q 23, 30, 62-63, 65, 122, 126

SOURCE 30S 33, 62-63, 66, 122, 126

SP Sepharose Big Beads 94-95, 97, 122

SP Sepharose Fast Flow 18, 78, 80, 86, 122-123

SP Sepharose High Performance 23, 70-71, 76, 98, 125

SP Sepharose XL 87-88, 93, 122-123

SPARTAN 13 mm HPLC-Certified Syringe Filter, RC, 0.2 µm 130

SPARTAN 13 mm HPLC-Certified Syringe Filter, RC, 0.45 µm 130

SPARTAN 30 mm HPLC-Certified Syringe Filter, RA, 0.2 µm 130

SPARTAN 30 mm HPLC-Certified Syringe Filter, RA, 0.45 µm 130

Superdex 75 prep grade 119

Superdex 200 Increase 104  
10/300 GL

## **T**

Tricorn 10/100 63, 72, 81, 88

Tricorn 10/150 63, 72, 81, 88

Tricorn 10/200 63, 72, 81, 88

Tricorn 5/100 102, 104, 117

Tricorn 5/50 103, 146

## **U**

UNICORN start software 144

UNICORN 5 software 144

UNICORN 6 software 144

## **X**

XK 16/20 column 63, 72, 81, 88, 90, 95, 144

XK 16/40 column 102

XK 16/60 column 119

XK 16/70 column 146

XK 26/20 column 63, 72, 81, 88, 95

XK 26/40 column 63, 72, 81, 88, 95

XK 50/20 column 81, 88, 95

XK 50/30 column 81, 88, 95

# Related literature

	<b>Code number</b>
<b>Purification handbooks</b>	
Affinity Chromatography	18102229
Antibody Purification	18103746
Hydrophobic Interaction and Reversed Phase Chromatography	11001269
Multimodal Chromatography	29054808
Protein Sample Preparation	28988741
Purifying Challenging Proteins	28909531
Recombinant Protein Purification	18114275
Size Exclusion Chromatography	18102218
Strategies for Protein Purification	28983331
ÄKTA Laboratory-scale Chromatography Systems	29010831
<b>Protein analysis handbooks</b>	
Biacore Assay	29019400
Biacore Sensor Surface	BR100571
Western Blotting	28999897
<b>Selection guides and multimedia</b>	
Ion exchange columns and media, Selection guide	18112731
Prepacked chromatography columns for ÄKTA systems, Selection guide	28931778

# Ordering information

## Ion exchange

<b>Product</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Code number</b>	<b>Product</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Code number</b>	<b>Product</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Code number</b>			
<b>MiniBeads</b>											
<b>Prepacked columns</b>											
Mini Q PC 3.2/3	1 × 0.24 mL	17068601	RESOURCE Q	1 × 1 mL	17117701	HiTrap SP HP	1 × 1 mL	29051324			
Mini S PC 3.2/3	1 × 0.24 mL	17068701	RESOURCE Q	1 × 6 mL	17117901	HiTrap SP HP	5 × 1 mL	17115101			
Mini Q 4.6/50 PE	1 × 0.8 mL	17517701	SOURCE 15Q 4.6/100 PE	1 × 1.7 mL	17518101	HiTrap SP HP	5 × 5 mL	17115201			
Mini S 4.6/50 PE	1 × 0.8 mL	17517801	RESOURCE S	1 × 1 mL	17117801	HiScreen SP HP	1 × 4.7 mL	28950515			
<b>MonoBeads</b>											
<b>Prepacked columns</b>											
Mono Q 5/50 GL	1 × 1 mL	17516601	RESOURCES	1 × 6 mL	17118001	HiPrep SP HP 16/10	1 × 20 mL	29018183			
Mono Q 10/100 GL	1 × 8 mL	17516701	SOURCE 15S 4.6/100 PE	1 × 1.7 mL	17518201						
Mono Q 4.6/100 PE	1 × 1.7 mL	17517901	<b>SOURCE 30</b>								
Mono Q HR 16/10	1 × 20 mL	17050601	<b>Chromatography media packs</b>								
Mono S 5/50 GL	1 × 1 mL	17516801	SOURCE 30Q	10 mL	17127510	Q Sepharose Fast Flow	25 mL	17051010			
Mono S 10/100 GL	1 × 8 mL	17516901	SOURCE 30Q	50 mL	17127501	Q Sepharose Fast Flow	300 mL	17051001			
Mono S 4.6/100 PE	1 × 1.7 mL	17518001	SOURCE 30Q	200 mL	17127505	SP Sepharose Fast Flow	25 mL	17072910			
Mono S HR 16/10	1 × 20 mL	17050701	SOURCE 30S	10 mL	17127320	SP Sepharose Fast Flow	300 mL	17072901			
<b>SOURCE 15</b>											
<b>Chromatography media packs</b>											
SOURCE 15Q	10 mL	17094720	SP Sepharose High Performance	75 mL	17108701	DEAE Sepharose Fast Flow	25 mL	17070910			
SOURCE 15Q	50 mL	17094701	Q Sepharose High Performance	75 mL	17101401	DEAE Sepharose Fast Flow	500 mL	17070901			
SOURCE 15Q	200 mL	17094705	<b>Prepacked columns</b>								
SOURCE 15S	10 mL	17094410	HiTrap Q HP	1 × 1 mL	29051325	CM Sepharose Fast Flow	25 mL	17071910			
SOURCE 15S	50 mL	17094401	HiTrap Q HP	5 × 1 mL	17115301	CM Sepharose Fast Flow	500 mL	17071901			
SOURCE 15S	200 mL	17094405	HiTrap Q HP	5 × 5 mL	17115401	ANX Sepharose 4 Fast Flow (high sub)	25 mL	17128710			
<b>Separase Fast Flow</b>											
<b>Chromatography media packs</b>											
Kit contains seven HiTrap columns prepacked with Fast Flow (FF) media: Q Sepharose FF, DEAE Sepharose FF, SP Sepharose FF, CM Sepharose FF, ANX Sepharose FF(high sub), Q Sepharose XL, and SP Sepharose XL											
<b>Prepacked columns</b>											
HiTrap IEX Selection Kit											
7 × 1 mL											
17600233											

<b>Product</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Code number</b>	<b>Product</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Code number</b>	<b>Product</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Code number</b>
HiTrap SP FF	5 × 1 mL	17505401	<b>Capto</b>			<b>Prepacked columns</b>		
HiTrap SP FF	5 × 5 mL	17515701	<b>Chromatography media packs</b>			HiTrap Capto Q ImpRes	5 × 1 mL	17547051
HiPrep SP FF 16/10	1 × 20 mL	28936544	Capto Q	25 mL	17531610	HiTrap Capto Q ImpRes	5 × 5 mL	17547055
HiTrap DEAE FF	5 × 1 mL	17505501	Capto Q	100 mL	17531602	HiScreen Capto Q ImpRes	1 × 4.7 mL	17547015
HiTrap DEAE FF	5 × 5 mL	17515401	Capto S	25 mL	17544110	HiTrap Capto SP ImpRes	5 × 1 mL	17546851
HiPrep DEAE FF 16/10	1 × 20 mL	28936544	Capto S	100 mL	17544101	HiTrap Capto SP ImpRes	5 × 5 mL	17546855
HiTrap CM FF	5 × 1 mL	17505601	Capto DEAE	25 mL	17544310	HiScreen Capto SP ImpRes	4.7 mL	17546815
HiTrap CM FF	5 × 5 mL	17515501	Capto DEAE	100 mL	17544301	<b>Capto ImpAct</b>		
HiPrep CM FF 16/10	1 × 20 mL	28936542	<b>Prepacked columns</b>			<b>Chromatography media packs</b>		
HiTrap ANX FF (high sub)	5 × 1 mL	17516201	HiTrap Capto IEX Selection Kit	5 × 1 mL	28934388	Capto S ImpAct	25 mL	17371701
HiTrap ANX FF (high sub)	5 × 5 mL	17516301	Contains five HiTrap columns prepacked with: Capto Q, Capto S, Capto DEAE, Capto MMC, Capto adhere			Capto S ImpAct	100 mL	17371702
<b>Sepharose XL</b>			HiTrap Capto Q	5 × 1 mL	11001302	<b>Prepacked columns</b>		
<b>Chromatography media packs</b>			HiTrap Capto Q	5 × 5 mL	11001303	HiTrap Capto S ImpAct	5 × 1 mL	17371751
Q Sepharose XL	300 mL	17507201	HiScreen Capto Q	1 × 4.7 mL	28926978	HiTrap Capto S ImpAct	5 × 5 mL	17371755
SP Sepharose XL	300 mL	17507301	HiTrap Capto S	5 × 1 mL	17544122	HiScreen Capto S ImpAct	1 × 4.7 mL	17371747
<b>Prepacked columns</b>			HiTrap Capto S	5 × 5 mL	17544123	SOURCE, Sepharose High Performance, Sepharose Fast Flow, Sepharose XL, Sepharose Big Beads, and Capto are all available as BioProcess media for large-scale production. Visit <a href="http://www.cytiva.com/bioprocess">www.cytiva.com/bioprocess</a>		
HiTrap Q XL	5 × 1 mL	17515801	HiScreen Capto S	1 × 4.7 mL	28926979	<b>Prepacked desalting columns</b>		
HiTrap Q XL	5 × 5 mL	17515901	HiTrap Capto DEAE	5 × 1 mL	28916537	HiTrap Desalting	1 × 5 mL	29048684
HiPrep Q XL 16/10	1 × 20 mL	28936538	HiTrap Capto DEAE	5 × 5 mL	28916540	HiTrap Desalting	5 × 5 mL	17140801
HiTrap SP XL	5 × 1 mL	17516001	HiScreen Capto DEAE	1 × 4.7 mL	28926982	HiPrep 26/10 Desalting	1 × 53 mL	17508701
HiTrap SP XL	5 × 5 mL	17516101	<b>Capto ImpRes</b>			HiPrep 26/10 Desalting	4 × 53 mL	17508702
HiPrep SP XL 16/10	1 × 20 mL	28936540	<b>Chromatography media packs</b>			PD-10 Desalting Column	30	17085101
<b>Sepharose Big Beads</b>			Capto Q ImpRes	25 mL	17547010	<b>Empty columns</b>		
<b>Chromatography media packs</b>			Capto Q ImpRes	100 mL	17547002	Tricorn 10/100	1	18116315
Q Sepharose Big Beads	1 L	17098903	Capto SP ImpRes	25 mL	17546810	XK 16/20	1	18877301
SP Sepharose Big Beads	1 L	17065703	Capto SP ImpRes	100 mL	17546802	XK 26/20	1	18100072

<b>Product</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Code number</b>
XK 50/20	1	18100071
Empty Disposable PD-10 Desalting columns	50/pk	17043501
LabMate PD-10 Buffer Reservoir	1	18321603

### ***Accessories and spare parts***

Packing Connector XK 16	1	18115344
Packing Connector XK 26	1	18115345
Packing equipment 10/100 (Tricorn)	1	18115325
Packing Connector 10-10	1	18115323

## **cytiva.com**

Cytiva and the Drop logo are trademarks of Global Life Sciences IP Holdco LLC or an affiliate. Amersham, ÄKTA, AxiChrom, Biacore, BioProcess, Capto, Cy, CyDye, ECL, ECL Plex, ECL Select, FineLINE, HiPrep, HiScale, HiScreen, HiTrap, Hybond, MabSelect SuRe, MiniBeads, Mini Q, Mini S, MiniTrap, MonoBeads, Mono Q, Mono S, PhastGel, PhastSystem, PreDictor, PrimeView, Protran, ReadyToProcess, RESOURCE, Sephadex, Sepharose, SOURCE, SPARTAN, Superdex, Tricorn, UNICORN, and Whatman are trademarks of Global Life Sciences Solutions USA LLC or an affiliate doing business as Cytiva.

Coomassie is a trademark of Thermo Fisher Scientific LLC, Gyrolab is a trademark of Gyros AB. RoboColumn is a trademark of Repligen GmbH. Triton is a trademark of Union Carbide Chemicals and Plastic Company Inc. Tween is a trademark of Croda Group of Companies. All other third-party trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

The purchase of CyDye products includes a limited license to use the CyDye products for internal research and development but not for any commercial purposes. Cy and CyDye are trademarks of Global Life Sciences Solutions USA LLC or an affiliate doing business as Cytiva. A license to use the Cy and CyDye trademarks for commercial purposes is subject to a separate license agreement with Cytiva. Commercial use shall include:

1. Sale, lease, license or other transfer of the material or any material derived or produced from it.
2. Sale, lease, license or other grant of rights to use this material or any material derived or produced from it.
3. Use of this material to perform services for a fee for third parties, including contract research and drug screening.

**If you require a commercial license to use the Cy and CyDye trademarks  
please contact: LSlicensing@cytiva.com.**

© 2021 Cytiva

All goods and services are sold subject to the terms and conditions of sale of the supplying company operating within the Cytiva business. A copy of those terms and conditions is available on request. Contact your local Cytiva representative for the most current information.

For local office contact information, visit [cytiva.com/contact](http://cytiva.com/contact)

CY13983-08Feb21-HB

